RULES
OF
ENGAGEMENT
(ROE)
HANDBOOK
FOR
JUDGE
ADVOCATES

1 MAY 2000

CENTER FOR LAW AND MILITARY OPERATIONS
(CLAMO)
600 MASSIE ROAD
CHARLOTTESVILLE, VIRGINIA 22903-1781
CLAMO@HQDA.ARMY.MIL
CLAMO@HQDA-S.ARMY.SMIL.MIL
WWW.JAGCNET.ARMY.MIL/CLAMO
Director
COL David E. Graham

Deputy Director
LTC Sharon E. Riley

Director, Domestic Operational Law
LTC Gordon W. Schukei

Director, Training & Support
MAJ Tyler L. Randolph

Marine Representative
MAJOR William H. Ferrell, USMC

Automation Technician
Mr. Ben R. Morgan

Training Centers
LTC William (Renn) Gade (BCTP)¹
CPT Matthew P. Ruzicka (BCTP)
CPT Eric T. Jensen (CMTC)²
MAJ Paul S. Wilson (JRTC)³
CPT Mark A. Blevins (JRTC)
CPT Rodney R. LeMay (JRTC)
SSG Roderick (Rod) Celestaine (JRTC)
CPT Nicholas S. King (NTC)⁴
CPT Stephen L. Harms (NTC)

Contact the Center
Visit the CLAMO web page and databases via the JAG Corps home page at www.jagcnet.army.mil/clamo. E-mail CLAMO@hqda.army.mil or CLAMO@hqda-s.army.smil.mil, call or write to request or submit materials. The Center invites contributions of operational law materials, ideas from the field, and comments about its products. You may send documents directly to the Center.

¹Battle Command Training Program (BCTP), Fort Leavenworth, KS
GadeW@leav-emh1.army.mil
RuzickaM@leav-emh1.army.mil

²Combat Maneuver Training Center (CMTC), Hohenfels, GE
JensenE@cmtc.7atc.army.mil

³Joint Readiness Training Center (JRTC), Fort Polk, LA
WilsonPS@polk-emh2.army.mil
LeMayRR@polk-emh2.army.mil
BlevinMA@polk-emh2.army.mil
CelestR@polk-emh2.army.mil

⁴National Training Center (NTC), Fort Irwin, CA
Mustang03@irwin.army.mil
Bronco70@Irwin.army.mil
RULES OF ENGAGEMENT (ROE) HANDBOOK

FOR

JUDGE ADVOCATES

1 MAY 2000
PREFACE

The Rules of Engagement (ROE) Handbook is a product of the Center for Law and Military Operations (CLAMO). It is designed to assist operational lawyers in planning and conducting comprehensive ROE training programs for their affiliated units. The contents of this book are based on lessons learned by judge advocates and on examples and training vignettes used successfully in the field. All ROE training programs must be tailored to the particular unit's mission. Vignette solutions must be based on the mission-specific ROE applicable to the unit.

The information in this Handbook pertains to rules of engagement in foreign operations, not to use of force in domestic operations. The information contained in this handbook is not doctrine (with the exception of footnoted doctrinal material regarding the military decision-making process). There is little US Army or US Marine Corps doctrine on how to train ROE at this time. However, one source Judge Advocates should consult is Department of the Army Field Manual (FM) 27-100, Legal Support to Operations.

This Handbook also does not represent the official position of the US Army, the US Marine Corps, the Office of the Judge Advocate General, the Staff Judge Advocate to the Commandant of the Marine Corps, or the Judge Advocate General's School. The information and samples provided in this book are advisory only.

This is the first ROE Handbook produced by the Center. It was produced in response to frequent requests for ROE vignettes that could be used in ROE briefings or tailored to CTT and STX events. Publication of this book would not have been possible without the creativity and tireless efforts of countless judge advocates, who train soldiers, Marines, units, and commanders on ROE every day. This book is a compilation of their ideas and experience.

The Center welcomes your suggestions, comments, and work products for incorporation into the next edition of the ROE Handbook. You may contact us at (804) 972-6448/6339, via email, at CLAMO@hqda.army.mil or CLAMO@hqdas.army.smil.mil, or at 600 Massie Road, Charlottesville, Virginia 22902-1781.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

**ROE DEVELOPMENT**...........................................................................................................1-1

1. ROE DEVELOPMENT ...........................................................................................................1-1

2. THE JOINT PLANNING PROCESS ..................................................................................1-3
   a. Joint Planning ...............................................................................................................1-3
      (1) Campaign Planning ..............................................................................................1-3
      (2) Deliberate Planning ...............................................................................................1-3
      (3) Crisis Action Planning .........................................................................................1-4
   b. The Joint Planning Group .........................................................................................1-6
   c. Staff and JA Roles and Actions ..............................................................................1-7
      (1) Mission Analysis ..................................................................................................1-7
      (2) Planning Guidance ..............................................................................................1-8
      (3) Course of Action (COA) Development ................................................................1-8
      (4) COA Analysis ......................................................................................................1-9
      (5) COA Comparison ..................................................................................................1-9
      (6) COA Selection .......................................................................................................1-10
      (7) Order Preparation ................................................................................................1-10

3. THE MARINE CORPS PLANNING PROCESS .................................................................1-12
   a. Marine Corps Planning: The MCPP ........................................................................1-12
   b. Staff and JA Roles and Actions ..............................................................................1-14
      (1) Mission Analysis ..................................................................................................1-14
      (2) Course of Action (COA) Development ................................................................1-15
      (3) COA War Game ....................................................................................................1-16
      (4) COA Comparison and Decision .........................................................................1-17
      (5) Orders Development ............................................................................................1-17
      (6) Transition .............................................................................................................1-18

4. THE ARMY’S MILITARY DECISION-MAKING PROCESS ............................................1-20
   a. Army Planning: The MDMP ..................................................................................1-20
   b. Staff and JA Roles and Actions ..............................................................................1-22
      (1) Receipt of Mission ..............................................................................................1-22
      (2) Mission Analysis ................................................................................................1-23
      (3) Course Of Action (COA) Development ...............................................................1-24
      (4) COA Analysis (War Game) ................................................................................1-25
      (5) COA Comparison ................................................................................................1-26
      (6) Commander’s Decision Briefing ........................................................................1-27
      (7) COA Approval .....................................................................................................1-27
      (8) Orders Production ...............................................................................................1-28
   c. The MDMP in a Time Constrained Environment ....................................................1-29

5. THE ROE PLANNING CELL ..............................................................................................1-31

6. REMEMBER THE INHERENT RIGHT OF SELF-DEFENSE ...........................................1-32
ROE TRAINING............................................................................................................2-1

1. INTRODUCTION......................................................................................................2-1
2. GENERAL ROE TRAINING ....................................................................................2-2
   a. Principles .........................................................................................................2-2
   b. Tactics, Techniques and Procedures (TTPs) ......................................................2-4
      (1) R-A-M-P ......................................................................................................2-4
      (2) V-E-W-P-R-I-K and the 5 S’s .................................................................2-6
      (3) Hand S-A-L-U-T-E ....................................................................................2-7
      (4) Warn ‘Em, Scare ‘Em, Force ‘Em............................................................2-8
      (5) Vignette and Common Task Training (CTT) ..............................................2-8
      (6) Situational Training Exercise (STX) Training ............................................2-9
      (7) Leader/Commander Training ..................................................................2-10
3. MISSION-SPECIFIC ROE TRAINING .................................................................2-10
4. NATO AND MULTINATIONAL ROE .................................................................2-11
5. CONCLUSION........................................................................................................2-12

ROE “MINEFIELDS”................................................................................................3-1

1. INTRODUCTION......................................................................................................3-1
2. RIOT CONTROL AGENTS....................................................................................3-2
   a. Discussion of Riot Control Agents (RCAs) .....................................................3-2
   b. When can RCAs be used? .............................................................................3-4
      (1) War and Armed Conflict .........................................................................3-4
      (2) Peacetime and Operations Other Than War (OOTW) ................................3-5
   c. How should troops be trained with RCAs? ................................................3-6
3. OTHER NON-LETHAL WEAPONS (NLWs) .......................................................3-8
   a. Discussion of NLWs .....................................................................................3-8
   b. When can NLWs be used? ...........................................................................3-10
   c. How should troops be trained with NLWs? ................................................3-12
4. LAND MINES .......................................................................................................3-15
   a. The Law .......................................................................................................3-15
      (1) Convention on Conventional Weapons (UNCCW) ..............................3-15
      (2) Amended Protocol II to the UNCCW ....................................................3-16
      (3) Ottawa Convention ................................................................................3-18
   b. US Policy.....................................................................................................3-18
5. CIVIL DISORDER ..................................................................................................3-20
6. PROTECTED PERSONS AND PROPERTY ........................................................3-21
7. ROE VERSUS LOW, FIRE CONTROL MEASURES, AND TACTICS ..................3-22
8. ROE IN CONTEXT ................................................................................................3-22
9. KNOWLEDGE OF WEAPONS ............................................................................3-23
10. “OBSERVED” AND “UNOBSERVED” FIRES .......................................................3-23
    a. Introduction ..................................................................................................3-23
    b. What is “Observed” – Who or what can “observe” ? .................................3-23
    c. An Alternative?: “Clearly Identified” .......................................................3-24
    d. Time: “Stale” Targets ...............................................................................3-25
11. THE INHERENT RIGHT OF SELF-DEFENSE ....................................................3-25
APPENDIX A: JCS SROE (UNCLASSIFIED) ................................................................. A-1

APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES ................................................................... B

ANNEX F (RULES OF ENGAGEMENT) TO XVIII AIRBORNE CORPS FSOP .. B-1-1
82d AIRBORNE DIVISION WARFIGHTER EXERCISE ROE ......................... B-2-1
1ST INFANTRY DIVISION ROE ANNEX TEMPLATE ........................................ B-3-1
1ST INFANTRY DIVISION EXERCISE ROE ....................................................... B-4-1
1ST ARMORED DIVISION HIGH INTENSITY CONFLICT EXERCISE ROE ...... B-5-1
1ST ARMORED DIVISION EXERCISE ROE ......................................................... B-6-1
1ST CAVALRY DIVISION STANDING ROE (6 APR 98) ..................................... B-7-1
101ST AIRBORNE (AIR ASSAULT) DIVISION MINI-EXERCISE ROE .......... B-8-1
26TH MEU(SOC) STANDING OPERATIONS ORDER ROE ANNEX ................ B-9-1
JTF-160 (OPERATION SEA SIGNAL) ROE ANNEX ......................................... B-10-1
OPERATION PROVIDE COMFORT ROE ANNEX ........................................... B-11-1
SAMPLE ROE AUTHORIZATION SERIAL ......................................................... B-12-1
MULTINATIONAL FORCE OBSERVER MISSION ROE (SINAI) ....................... B-13-1
BOSNIA—UNPROFOR ROE (PRE-DAYTON PEACE ACCORD ROE) .............. B-14-1
NTC SAMPLE TRAINING ROE: ANNEX E (RULES OF ENGAGEMENT (ROE)) TO 52 ID (M) OPLAN 99-09-01 .......................................................... B-15-1
JRTC SAMPLE TRAINING ROE: ANNEX E (RULES OF ENGAGEMENT) TO OPERATION ORDER 00----21ST ID (L) ..................................................... B-16-1

APPENDIX C: SAMPLE ROE CARDS ................................................................. C-1

SHINING HOPE—ALBANIA ............................................................................... C-2
OPERATION ALLIED HARBOR ...................................................................... C-4
OPERATION ALLIED HARBOR ...................................................................... C-6
BOSNIA—IFOR ............................................................................................... C-8
BOSNIA—SFOR .............................................................................................. C-10
BOSNIA—OPERATION JOINT FORGE ......................................................... C-12
OPERATION ALLIED FORCE: CSAR/TRAP ROE FOR AIRCREW ............... C-14
OPERATION ALLIED FORCE: CSAR/TRAP ................................................... C-16
DESERT SHIELD (PEACETIME) ................................................................. C-18
DESERT STORM ......................................................................................... C-19
SPECIAL OPERATIONS ROE FOR OPERATIONS IN IRAQ ....................... C-20
HAITI-NEO OR EMBASSY REINFORCEMENT ......................................... C-21
HAITI-SOLDIER CARD FOR NONPERMISSIVE ENTRY (VERSION 1) ............ C-22
HAITI-SOLDIER CARD FOR NONPERMISSIVE ENTRY (VERSION 2) .......... C-24
HAITI—COMBINED JTF HAITI ROE CARD 1 ............................................. C-26
HAITI—COMBINED JTF HAITI ROE CARD 2: PEACETIME ROE IN EFFECT DURING CIVIL MILITARY OPERATIONS ................................................. C-27
HAITI—PEACETIME ROE IN EFFECT UNTIL H-2 ....................................... C-29
HAITI—ROE DURING CMO EFFECTIVE BEGINNING PHASE III .............. C-30
HAITI—AIR ROE ......................................................................................... C-31
OPERATION JOINT ENDEAVOR—HUNGARY .............................................. C-33
JOINT TASK FORCE L.A .............................................................................. C-34
PACIFIC HAVEN ......................................................................................... C-36
CHAPTER 1

ROE DEVELOPMENT

"Everything is simple in war, but the simplest thing is difficult."

Karl von Clausewitz, On War

1. ROE DEVELOPMENT

Effective rules of engagement (ROE) are critical to mission accomplishment. Effective ROE can only result from a successful ROE development process that is integrated throughout all phases of mission planning. ROE development and mission planning must be collaborative processes and will require significant staff integration. While ROE should never drive the mission, the political, military and legal forces that may impact the mission and inhibit the use of force must be considered and planned for throughout the planning process.

Figure 1-1. Basis of Rules of Engagement.
ROE DEVELOPMENT

ROE are commanders’ rules, not lawyers’ rules. One of the most important responsibilities of a Judge Advocate (JA)\(^1\) is to advise and assist commanders and staffs in the development and implementation of ROE. In most cases, the JA will assume the role of principal assistant to the commander and staff in developing and integrating ROE into mission planning. Based on the JA’s unique expertise, the JA is often tasked with taking the lead on ROE development.

Integration is the key factor for the JA’s success in this role. The JA must integrate with the staff, and ROE development must be integrated into all phases of mission planning. Keen knowledge of the staff planning process is critical to the JA during ROE development. The commander, staff and JA must establish clear roles and responsibilities for developing and controlling ROE. If a ROE planning cell will be utilized, the JA will participate in and may even lead this cell on behalf of the commander.

The JA will be called upon to interpret existing ROE and assist in developing supplemental ROE, if necessary, to support mission accomplishment. During mission execution, the JA will likely review and request additional supplemental ROE as the situation on the ground develops. In addition, the JA may also be responsible for disseminating ROE to the components and developing and monitoring a ROE training program for the force.

The planning process varies between the services and at the joint level. Therefore, the process for each is discussed separately. A closer look, however, shows that while terminology may differ slightly, the concepts and the order in which the decision-making flows are the same.

The following sections highlight the JA role in ROE development during each step of the planning process. Keep in mind that the JA is also responsible for ensuring law of war (LOW) compliance throughout the process.

\(^1\) Wherever the term Judge Advocate (JA) is used, it is intended to generically refer to an operational judge advocate, operational law attorney, a Marine Expeditionary Unit (MEU) Staff Judge Advocate (SJA), a Joint Legal Advisor, a Brigade Operational Law Team (BOLT) attorney, etc., interchangeably, unless otherwise noted.
2. The Joint Planning Process

The joint planning process is a part of the Joint Operation Planning and Execution System, or JOPES. Joint operational planning is a coordinated process used by a commander to determine the best method of accomplishing the mission. In peacetime, the process is called deliberate planning. In crisis situations, it is called crisis action planning. Joint planning is conducted under JOPES policy, procedures, and automated data processing (ADP) support. JOPES is applicable (as directed) across the operational continuum of peace, conflict, and war.

a. Joint Planning

There are three types of operation planning at the joint level: campaign planning, deliberate planning, and crisis action planning. Campaign planning uses both deliberate planning and crisis action planning to develop campaign plans. Deliberate planning and crisis action planning each have distinct processes.

(1) Campaign Planning

Campaign planning is the combatant commander's translation of national and theater strategy into strategic and operational concepts. The campaign plan embodies the combatant commander's strategic vision regarding the arrangement of related operations necessary to obtain theater strategic objectives.

(2) Deliberate Planning

Deliberate planning prepares for a possible contingency based upon the best available information and using forces and resources apportioned for deliberate planning by the Joint Strategic Capabilities Plan (JSCP).

See Joint Pub.5-0, Doctrine for Planning Joint Operations.


The Joint Strategic Capabilities Plan (JSCP) provides guidance to the combatant commanders and the Joint Chiefs of Staff to accomplish tasks and missions based on current military capabilities. It apportions resources to combatant commanders, based on military capabilities resulting from completed program and budget actions and intelligence.
It relies heavily on assumptions regarding the political and military circumstances that will exist when the plan is implemented. Deliberate planning is conducted principally in peacetime to develop joint operations for contingencies identified in strategic planning documents. Because most operational contexts, by their nature, involve Crisis Action Planning, deliberate planning will not be discussed in detail.\(^5\)

(3) Crisis Action Planning

Crisis action planning (CAP) is based on current events and conducted in time-sensitive situations and emergencies using assigned, attached, and allocated forces and resources. Crisis action planners base their plan on the actual circumstances that exist at the time planning occurs. They follow prescribed CAP procedures that parallel deliberate planning, but are more flexible and responsive to changing events. Crisis action planning for joint operations consists of six phases:

1. Situation development;
2. Crisis assessment;
3. Course of Action (COA) development;
4. COA selection;
5. Execution planning; and

The steps in Joint Task Force (JTF) crisis action planning, as reflected in Figure 1-2, vary slightly from the steps in joint crisis action planning as discussed above. Joint Pub 5-00.2, Joint Task Force Planning Guidance and Procedures, recommends the following seven step process for CAP for a JTF:

1. Mission analysis;
2. Planning Guidance;
3. COA development;
4. COA analysis;
5. COA comparison;
6. COA selection;
7. Execution.

assessments. The JSCP provides a coherent framework for capabilities-based military advice provided to the National Command Authorities. The JSCP is a classified document.

\(^5\) See Joint Pub.5-0, Doctrine for Planning Joint Operations, for more information on the deliberate planning process.
(7) Order preparation.

Because JAs are most likely to face joint crisis action planning as part of a JTF, the JTF CAP process will be discussed in detail.

Figure 1-2. JTF Crisis Action Planning Process.
b. The Joint Planning Group

JAs working as part of a JTF must be familiar with the Joint Planning Group (JPG) concept. Joint Publication (JP) 5-00.2 recommends the formation of a JPG to enhance the JTF CAP process. The ultimate decision on whether to form a JPG rests with the Commander, JTF (CJTF). The purposes of the JPG are to conduct CAP, be the focal point of operations order (OPORD) development, to perform future planning, and such other tasks as the CJTF directs. The composition of the JPG will vary depending on the planning activities being conducted, but will normally contain representatives of the JTF principal and special sections, and joint force components. Additional cells may be formed to support the JPG in its functions. Such cells may include an information operations (IO) cell, a deployment cell, or a ROE planning cell (see Paragraph 5. the ROE Planning Cell, below). Figure 1-3 depicts a typical JPG.

![Figure 1-3. Typical Joint Planning Group](image-url)
c. Staff and JA Roles and Actions

This section provides a general overview of the roles and actions of the JTF staff during each step of CAP and the JA’s role and actions in ROE development during each step.

(1) Mission Analysis

During mission analysis, the staff will examine the mission and intent issued from higher headquarters. Express and implied tasks, as well as assumptions and limitations, will be identified. The staff will then analyze initial force structure requirements, determine a military end-state, and develop a mission statement. A mission analysis brief will then be held and the commander will issue his planning guidance.

During the mission analysis phase, the JA should begin by reviewing the Joint Chiefs of Staff Standing Rules of Engagement (JCS SROE) and the Commander in Chief (CINC) theater-specific ROE. Next, the JA should review the initial planning documents for any political, military, or legal considerations that affect ROE and identify the supplemental ROE already approved. The JA should pay particular attention to any limitations on the use of force imposed by the initial planning documents, international law (including the United Nations (UN) Charter and UN Security Council Resolutions), US domestic law and policy, host nation law and any bilateral agreements between the US and the host nation. If involved with multinational or coalition operations, the JA should check North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) ROE (if applicable), foreign forces ROE, or other use of force policies.

The JA should next assess the ROE requirements through the pre-conflict, deterrence, conflict, and post-conflict phases of the operation. The JA must ensure that the ROE supports the achievement of the desired military end-state. As a final action during mission analysis, the JA should assist in establishing the ROE planning cell (see Paragraph 5. the ROE Planning Cell, below).

---

6 The new CHAIRMAN, JOINT CHIEFS OF STAFF INSTRUCTION ON STANDING RULES OF ENGAGEMENT FOR US FORCES, CJCSI 3121.01A (15 January 2000), is now in effect (unclassified portions are at Appendix A of this book.)
(2) Planning Guidance

The commander’s planning guidance focuses the staff and component planning efforts. The amount of detail provided in the planning guidance will vary depending on the amount of time available, the proficiency and familiarity of the staff, and the amount of flexibility provided by higher headquarters. The JA should review the commander’s planning guidance for any considerations that may affect ROE development. The JA must also ensure that ROE considerations derived from the commander’s planning guidance are consistent with those derived from the planning documents issued by higher headquarters. Once this is done, the JA should establish contact with higher, lower, and adjacent counterparts to establish a basis for concurrent planning.

(3) Course of Action (COA) Development

The staff will take the commander’s planning guidance and develop distinct courses of action (normally three). All courses of action should be suitable, feasible, acceptable and complete. Each course of action should address the tasks to be accomplished, who will execute the tasks, when and where the tasks will occur, why each force will conduct its part of the operation, and how the forces will be employed to accomplish its tasks.

During the COA process, the JA must determine the ROE requirements to support the operational concept for each proposed COA. If the current ROE do not support a proposed COA, the JA must assess the supplemental measures required to support the proposed COA, and then determine the likelihood that higher headquarters will approve the required supplemental measures. Close coordination with the higher headquarters JA is helpful in making this determination. If approval is unlikely, this must be quickly communicated to the COA planning group so they can modify or abandon the proposed COA.

The JA must also keep in mind that each course of action may be developed simultaneously. If this occurs, the JA should consider assigning a ROE representative to each COA planning group to ensure ROE issues are identified and resolved as early as possible. At the completion of the COA development process, the JA must ensure that each proposed
COA is supported by the current ROE, or will be supported by supplemental ROE likely to be approved by higher headquarters.

(4) COA Analysis

Once the staff develops the requisite number of courses of action, they will analyze each COA, compare the results of that analysis, and determine a set of selection criteria to assist the commander in choosing a COA to forward to higher headquarters. COA analysis normally involves a war gaming process where each COA is assessed through initial deployment, employment of forces, potential enemy reactions and actions, environmental influences, mission accomplishment and redeployment. The threats most likely to be faced, and those most dangerous to a particular COA, will be used to assess a particular COA. This war gaming process is also used to establish and synchronize the actions and reactions of the different force components.

The primary role for the JA during COA analysis is to continue to refine ROE requirements in order to support synchronizing each phase of each proposed COA. The JA must assess each COA to identify any ROE normally retained at a higher headquarters that must be delegated to subordinate commanders. Finally, the JA must prepare his estimate of supportability for each COA from a ROE perspective.

(5) COA Comparison

COA comparison criteria will be determined from higher headquarters’ intent, the commander’s planning guidance, the elements of operational art, the principles of war, and significant factors relating to the operation (speed, security, etc.). Each friendly COA will be compared to the enemy’s most likely COA in accordance with the set comparison criteria.

During the COA comparison/selection process, the JA must continue to assess the supportability of each COA from a ROE perspective. The JA must identify specific National Command Authority (NCA)- or CINC-level supplemental ROE required to support the selected COA. If supplemental ROE are necessary for a COA, the JA should begin drafting the supplemental ROE request message as soon as possible. Supplemental ROE request messages must follow the format in
Appendix F (Message Formats and Examples) to Enclosure J (Supplemental Measures) of the JCS SROE.

(6) COA Selection

At the end of COA comparison, a COA will be selected and briefed to the commander as the recommended COA. This brief will address the known threat situation, current friendly situation, higher headquarters mission and intent, commander’s mission and intent, any changes in assumptions or limitations, COA statements, war game results, COA comparison and the recommended COA. Once the commander approves a COA, the commander’s estimate will be prepared and forwarded to higher headquarters for approval.

If supplemental ROE are necessary for the selected COA, the supplemental ROE request message must be drafted and submitted at this time in the planning process.

(7) Order Preparation

Responsibility for drafting the base plan and all of the annexes to the plan will be determined at this stage. The various staff sections will write the OPORD and develop the Time-Phased Force Deployment Data (TPFDD). Preparation of the order is not a sequential process. Whenever possible, it is done concurrently with the components.

Upon approval of the OPORD, the staff will publish the final draft OPORD and brief the OPORD to the staff and components. The staff will obtain the components’ supporting plans, crosswalk the plans to ensure consistency, and back brief as necessary to synchronize final planning. The final draft OPORD will be modified as necessary, and then published and transmitted to higher, lower, and adjacent headquarters.

The JA will be responsible for preparing the ROE appendix in accordance with CJCSI 3122.03, JOPES Volume II: Planning Formats and Guidance. During this phase, the JA will also submit requests for supplemental ROE. While the OPORD will contain any ROE and supplemental measures currently in force, the OPORD should not be used to request supplemental ROE. The ROE appendix should provide guidance.

If a ROE cell is in use within the JTF, it will perform most of the ROE tasks outlined in this section. See JP 5-00.2.
on the definition of terms (such as hostile act, hostile intent, and other key terms), procedures for requesting, modifying, and approving ROE, procedural guidance for the development of supplemental ROE, ROE training requirements, and guidelines for disseminating and tracking ROE. When issuing guidance for disseminating approved ROE, the JA should consider developing plain language ROE, creating ROE cards, issuing special instructions (SPINS), distribution to multinational/coalition forces (if applicable), and issuing ROE translations for multinational forces/coalitions (if applicable).

The JA should ensure that the most current ROE serial is being used throughout the force. All supplemental ROE requests and approvals should be cataloged and centrally located for ease of reference. ROE training throughout the force must be monitored for accuracy and consistency. During mission execution, commanders and staffs must continuously analyze ROE and recommend modifications as the operational environment changes. The JA should spearhead this effort by monitoring the operational situation as it develops, identifying deficiencies in the current ROE, and recommending changes to the staff to better support the mission.
3. The Marine Corps Planning Process

a. Marine Corps Planning: The MCPP

The Marine Corps Planning Process (MCPP), reflected in Figure 1-4, is a six-step process that supports the Marine Corps warfighting philosophy of maneuver warfare and applies across the range of military operations. The MCPP applies to both deliberate and crisis action planning, and can be used by any echelon of command. The level of detail of the MCPP may vary depending on the situation, staff resources and experience, and time.

The tenets of the Marine Corps Planning Process are top-down planning, the single-battle concept, and integrated planning. The MCPP recognizes the commander's central role as decision-maker and helps formulate the thought processes of the commander and staff throughout the planning and execution of military operations. It focuses on the mission and the threat and capitalizes on the unity of effort of the commander and staff.

The Marine Corps Planning Process is an internal process used by Marine Corps operating forces. However, the MCPP aligns with and complements the joint deliberate and crisis action planning processes found in Joint Pub 5-0, Doctrine for Planning Joint Operations and Joint Pub 5-00.2, Joint Task Force Planning Guidance and Procedures. When designated as a Joint Force Commander or when preparing a supporting campaign plan, the Marine commander and staff will use joint planning procedures and the Joint Operations Planning and Execution System (JOPES) found in the Joint Publication 5 series.

---

The six steps in the Marine Corps Planning Process are:

1. Mission analysis;
2. COA development;
3. COA war game;
4. COA comparison and decision;
5. Orders development; and
6. Transition.

Figure 1-4. Marine Corps Planning Process.
b. Staff and JA Roles and Actions

This section provides a general overview of the roles and actions of the staff during each step of Crisis Action Planning (CAP) under the Marine Corps Planning Process and the JA’s role and actions in ROE development during each step.

(1) Mission Analysis

The purpose of mission analysis is to review orders, guidance, and other information that is provided by higher headquarters in order to produce a unit mission statement. Mission analysis begins with inputs, which consist of the commander’s orientation (includes the commander’s battlespace area evaluation and initial guidance), higher headquarters’ warning order or operation order, restraints and/or constraints, and higher headquarters’ intelligence. Based on these inputs, the staff will identify specified, implied and essential tasks, resource and subject matter shortfalls, and restraints and/or constraints. The staff will begin developing staff estimates and draft the mission statement. The staff will then present a mission analysis brief to the commander. The commander will then approve a mission statement, issue the commander’s intent, and issue the commander’s planning guidance, which will guide the staff through COA development.

During the mission analysis phase, the JA should begin by reviewing the Joint Chiefs of Staff Standing Rules of Engagement (JCS SROE)\(^9\) and the Commander in Chief (CINC) theater-specific ROE. Next, the JA should review the initial planning documents for any political, military, or legal considerations that affect ROE and identify the supplemental ROE already in effect. The JA should pay particular attention to any limitations on the use of force imposed by the initial planning documents, international law (including the United Nations (UN) Charter and UN Security Council Resolutions), US domestic law and policy, host nation law and any bilateral agreements between the US and host nations. If involved with multinational or coalition operations, the JA should check North Atlantic

\(^9\) The new Chairman, Joint Chiefs of Staff Instruction on Standing Rules of Engagement for US Forces, CJCSI 3121.01A (15 January 2000), is now in effect (unclassified portions are at Appendix A of this book.)
Treaty Organization (NATO) ROE (if applicable), foreign forces ROE, or other use of force policies.

The JA should next assess the ROE requirements through the pre-conflict, deterrence, conflict, and post-conflict phases of the operation. The JA must ensure that the ROE supports the achievement of the desired military end-state based on the mission statement drafted by the staff and adopted by the commander. The JA should review the commander’s planning guidance for any considerations that may affect ROE development. The JA must ensure that ROE considerations derived from the commander’s planning guidance are consistent with those derived from the initial planning documents issued by higher headquarters. Once this is done, the JA should establish contact with higher, lower, and adjacent counterparts to establish a basis for concurrent planning.

(2) Course of Action (COA) Development

COA development is designed to generate options for follow-on war gaming and comparison that satisfy the mission, commander’s intent, and the commander’s planning guidance. Each prospective COA is examined to ensure that it is suitable, feasible, acceptable, distinguishable, and complete with respect to the current and anticipated situation, the mission, and the commander’s intent. Developed COAs are separately briefed to the commander. The commander will then select the COAs that will be evaluated during COA war gaming. The commander will then issue the commander’s war gaming guidance and the commander’s evaluation criteria.

During the COA development process, the JA must determine the ROE requirements to support the operational concept for each proposed COA. If the current ROE do not support a proposed COA, the JA must assess the supplemental measures required to support the proposed COA, and then determine the likelihood that higher headquarters will approve the required supplemental measures. Close coordination with the higher headquarters JA is helpful in making this determination. If approval is unlikely, this must be quickly communicated to the staff so they can modify or abandon the proposed COA.

The JA must also keep in mind that each course of action may be developed simultaneously by separate COA
planning groups. If this occurs, the JA should consider assigning a ROE representative to each COA planning group to ensure ROE issues are identified and resolved as early as possible. At the completion of the COA development process, the JA must ensure that each proposed COA is supported by the current ROE, or will be supported by supplemental ROE likely to be approved by higher headquarters. The JA’s assessment on COA supportability based on ROE considerations will be a part of the brief given by the staff to the commander.

(3) COA War Game

During COA war gaming, the staff evaluates the effectiveness of friendly COAs against both the enemy’s COAs and the commander’s evaluation criteria. The staff makes adjustments to identified problems and weaknesses of the friendly COAs and identifies branches and sequels that may require further planning. Each friendly COA is war gamed independently against selected enemy COAs. COA war gaming helps the commander determine how best to apply his strength against the enemy’s critical vulnerabilities while protecting his critical vulnerabilities. War gaming pits friendly COAs against enemy COAs, it does not compare friendly COAs against each other. This is done in the next step, COA comparison and decision. The COA war game brief presents the commander with the staff’s evaluation and war game. This brief includes the advantages and disadvantages of each course of action and suggested modifications.

The primary role for the JA during COA war gaming is to continue to refine ROE requirements in order to support synchronizing each phase of each proposed COA. The JA must continuously assess each COA during the war gaming process to ensure that the COA is supportable, either by the ROE currently in effect, or by supplemental ROE likely to be approved by higher headquarters. Close coordination with the higher headquarters JA will assist in this determination. Identification of ROE normally retained at a higher headquarters that must be delegated to subordinate commanders is also critical at this stage. Finally, the JA must prepare his final estimate of supportability for each COA from a ROE perspective.
(4) COA Comparison and Decision

During COA comparison and decision, the commander evaluates all friendly COAs against established criteria, evaluates them against each other, and selects the COA that he believes will best accomplish the mission. The commander may also refine his mission statement (including his commander’s intent and essential tasks) and concept of operations, and identify any branches of the chosen COA that need further staff attention. The staff then prepares the concept of operations and the commander may issue a warning order to subordinate commanders to allow them to begin concurrent planning.

During the COA comparison and decision process, the JA will brief the supportability of each COA from a ROE perspective. The JA must identify specific NCA- or CINC-level supplemental ROE required to support the selected COA. If supplemental ROE are necessary for the selected COA, the JA should begin drafting the supplemental ROE request message as soon as possible. Supplemental ROE request messages must follow the format in Appendix F (Message Formats and Examples) to Enclosure J (Supplemental Measures) of the JCS SROE.

(5) Orders Development

Normally, the chief of staff or executive officer coordinates with staff principals to assist the G-3/S-3 in developing an order. The chief of staff or executive officer dictates the format for the order, sets and enforces the time limits and development sequence, and determines which annexes are published by which staff section. Once written, the order is internally reconciled by the staff to ensure the basic order and all of its annexes and appendices are complete and in agreement. The staff then conducts an orders crosswalk, which compares the order with orders from higher and adjacent commanders to achieve unity of effort and ensure the superior commander’s intent is met. The final step in orders development is the approval of the order by the commander.

The JA will likely be responsible for preparing the ROE appendix in accordance with CJCSI 3122.03 (JOPES Volume II: Planning Formats and Guidance). During this phase, the JA will also submit requests for supplemental ROE. While
the OPORD will contain any ROE and supplemental measures currently in force, the OPORD should not be used to request supplemental ROE. The ROE appendix should provide guidance on the definition of terms (such as hostile act, hostile intent, and other key terms), procedures for requesting, modifying, and approving ROE, procedural guidance for the development of supplemental ROE, ROE training requirements, and guidelines for disseminating and tracking ROE. When issuing guidance for disseminating approved ROE, the JA should consider developing plain language ROE, creating ROE cards, distribution to multinational/coalition forces (if applicable), and issuing ROE translations for multinational forces/coalitions (if applicable).

During this stage, the JA must also begin organizing a ROE training program. Coordination should be done with higher, adjacent, and subordinate headquarters staff and JAs to determine the most effective and efficient way to train the force on the applicable ROE. See Chapter 3: ROE Training of this Handbook for a detailed discussion of ROE training methods and programs.

(6) Transition

Transition ensures that those charged with executing the order have a full understanding of the plan. Transition begins with a transition brief, which provides an overview of the mission, commander’s intent, task organization, and the enemy and friendly situation. It ensures that those who will execute the order understand all actions necessary to implement the order. The commander, deputy commander, or chief of staff will give transition brief guidance, which may prescribe who will give the brief, the content of the brief, briefing sequence, and who will attend.

Drills are also an important part of the transition process and two types of drills may be used. A transition drill is an internal process whereby the planners hand off the order to the staff who will oversee the execution of the order. Normally, transition drills are only used at higher levels of command, where there are separate staff sections for planning and execution. An execution drill is a series of briefings, walk throughs, or rehearsals to facilitate understanding of the plan throughout all levels of the command. Execution drills are conducted by the commander and staff tasked with execution of the order, and
are normally conducted at lower levels of command where the staff both develops and executes the plan.

The final step in the transition process is the confirmation brief. A confirmation brief is given by a subordinate commander after he receives the plan or order. Subordinate commanders brief higher commanders on their understanding of commander’s intent, their specific task and purpose, and the relationship between their unit’s missions and the other units in the operation. The confirmation brief allows the higher commander to identify gaps in the plan, identify discrepancies between his and subordinate commanders’ plans, and learn how subordinate commanders intend to accomplish their mission.

During the transition phase, the JA should ensure that the most current ROE serial is being used throughout the force. The JA should participate in all transition and execution drills to ensure the staff understand the ROE in effect for the operation. The JA will brief the applicable ROE during the confirmation brief. All supplemental ROE requests and approvals should be cataloged and centrally located for ease of reference. ROE training throughout the force must be monitored for accuracy and consistency.

During mission execution, commanders and staffs must constantly analyze ROE as the operation develops to ensure that the ROE continues to support the operation. Deficiencies must be identified and modifications recommended as the operational environment changes. If a ROE cell is being used (see Paragraph 5. the ROE Planning Cell, below), it will perform these functions. If not, the JA should spearhead this effort on behalf of the commander and staff.
4. The Army’s Military Decision-Making Process

a. Army Planning: The MDMP

The Army's Military Decision-Making Process (MDMP), reflected in Figure 1-5, is a seven-step process that applies across the range of military operations and is applicable regardless of time available. The seven steps in the Army’s MDMP are:

1. Receipt of mission;
2. Mission analysis;
3. Course of action development;
4. Course of action analysis;
5. Course of action comparison;
6. Course of action approval; and
7. Orders production.

The JA’s role in the planning or MDMP is summarized in Figure 1-6. International law and the law of war apply and must be considered throughout this process and throughout the ROE process. The Operational Law Handbook 2000 has a chapter entitled, “Military Decision Making Process & OPLANS and Orders,” which details the JA’s role and provides many useful checklists for orders production and review.

At the lower echelons, such as brigades and battalions, one of the most useful functions a JA can serve with regard to the ROE is to distill the ROE (annex) received from higher into a condensed, relevant, user-friendly product appropriate to the supported unit. For example, a JA serving an infantry brigade that has no aviation assets assigned might not publish the air-to-air rules of engagement in the brigade operations order. He might choose to reorganize the rules by weapons categories, e.g., indirect fires, air defense, engineers and mines, small arms direct fires, indirect fires, etc. He might choose to reflect weapons release authority rules in a chart format rather than in paragraphs of text. ROE

---


11 Published by the International and Operational Law Department of The Judge Advocate General’s School, US Army, Charlottesville, Virginia.
products usually include a written annex, a card for every soldier to carry, vignettes for training purposes, and any necessary changes to the existing ROE training program.

Figure 1-5. The Army Military Decision-Making Process.
b. Staff and JA Roles and Actions

The remainder of this section focuses on the MDMP, as it is the process most likely to be encountered by Army JAs during ROE development. The Army has not adopted the crisis action planning (CAP) process defined in joint and Marine doctrine. However, as noted below in paragraph c. The MDMP in a Time Constrained Environment, the MDMP may be streamlined when planning time is short. The discussion of the MDMP, below, is based on Army doctrine contained in Department of the Army Field Manual (FM) 101-5, Staff Organization and Operations (31 May 1997).

(1) Receipt of Mission

Mission analysis begins as soon as a new mission is received. Missions are received either through an order from higher headquarters or when the commander determines he can fulfill the higher commander’s intent in a manner not yet planned for. When a new mission is received, the operations section (G3/S3) issues an immediate warning order to the staff, and preparation for mission analysis begins. Staff members collect plans, orders, and graphics from higher, maps, existing staff estimates, and other required resources.

The commander and staff make an initial assessment of time available, time necessary, and intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB). Allocation of available time is determined at this stage. The commander balances the desire for detailed planning with the need to allot maximum time to subordinate units. The one-third/two-thirds rule, discussed below, is usually applied. The commander determines whether to conduct the full MDMP or an abbreviated process.

The commander also issues initial guidance (which is different from “commander’s guidance” required as step 15 of the 17-step mission analysis process). Initial guidance includes: how to abbreviate the MDMP (if required), time allocation, dispatch of liaison officers, initial reconnaissance requirements, authorized movement, and additional tasks the staff must perform. A warning order (WARNO) is issued to subordinate and supporting units.
During this phase, the JA should identify specified and implied legal tasks and obtain or review the ROE issued by higher. If no ROE has been issued, the JA should review the Joint Chiefs of Staff Standing Rules of Engagement (JCS SROE)\textsuperscript{12} and the Commander in Chief (CINC) theater-specific ROE. Next, the JA should review the initial planning documents for any political, military, or legal considerations that affect ROE and identify the supplemental ROE already approved. The JA should pay particular attention to any limitations on the use of force imposed by the initial planning documents, international law (including the UN Charter and UN Security Council Resolutions), US domestic law and policy, host nation law and any bilateral agreements between the US and the host nation. If involved with multinational or coalition operations, the JA should check NATO ROE (if applicable), foreign forces ROE, or other use of force policies. The JA should next assess the ROE requirements through the pre-conflict, deterrence, conflict, and post-conflict phases of the operation. The JA must ensure that the ROE supports the achievement of the desired military end-state. As a final action during receipt of mission, the JA should assist in establishing the ROE planning cell if such a cell is desired (see Paragraph 5. the ROE Planning Cell, below).

\section*{(2) Mission Analysis}

Mission Analysis determines the tactical problem and begins the process of determining alternatives. The Army MDMP Mission Analysis phase consists of 17 steps, which may or may not be conducted in order. While the staff analyzes the mission, so does the commander. The staff estimate process continues during this phase. Mission analysis includes a brief to the commander, and receipt of the commander’s guidance. A detailed discussion of each step is contained in FM 101-5, chapter 5. The 17 steps of mission analysis are:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{Step 1.} Analyze the higher headquarters’ order.
  \item \textbf{Step 2.} Conduct initial intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB).
  \item \textbf{Step 3.} Determine specified, implied, and essential tasks.
\end{itemize}

\textsuperscript{12}Note, the new \textbf{Chairman, Joint Chiefs of Staff Instruction on Standing Rules of Engagement for US Forces, CJCSI 3121.01A (15 January 2000), is now in effect (unclassified portions are at Appendix A of this book.)}
Step 4. Review available assets.
Step 5. Determine constraints.
Step 6. Identify critical facts and assumptions.
Step 7. Conduct risk assessment.
Step 8. Determine initial commanders’ critical information requirements (CCIR).
Step 9. Determine the initial reconnaissance annex.
Step 11. Write the restated mission.
Step 12. Conduct a mission analysis briefing.
Step 13. Approve the restated mission.
Step 14. Develop the initial commander’s intent.
Step 15. Issue the commander’s guidance.
Step 16. Issue a warning order.
Step 17. Review facts and assumptions.

The JA should be involved throughout this process. For example, specified and implied tasks may include legal considerations, such as handling enemy prisoners of war during a battle, or relocating civilians on the battlefield. Judge advocates should prepare legal estimates, when appropriate, which highlight the legal issues inherent in the situation. A sample legal estimate is available through the CLAMO JAGCNET databases.13

During this phase, the JA should review the commander’s planning guidance for any considerations that may affect ROE development. The JA must also ensure that ROE considerations derived from the commander’s planning guidance are consistent with those derived from the initial planning documents issued by higher headquarters. Once this is complete, the JA should establish contact with higher, lower, and adjacent counterparts to establish a basis for concurrent planning.

(3) Course Of Action (COA) Development

When they have received the commander’s guidance, the staff will develop distinct courses of action (normally three) for analysis and comparison. All COAs should be suitable, feasible, acceptable, distinguishable, and complete. Each course of action should address the tasks to be accomplished, who will execute the tasks, when and where

---

13 See CLAMO-General Operational Law Materials Database, topic or key word "Legal Estimate" <www.jagcnet.army.mil/clamo>.
the tasks will occur, why each force will conduct its part of the operation, and how the forces will be employed to accomplish its tasks. There are six steps in the COA development process:

Step 1. Analyze relative combat power.
Step 2. Generate options.
Step 3. Array initial forces.
Step 4. Develop the scheme of maneuver.
Step 5. Assign headquarters.
Step 6. Prepare COA statements and sketches.

During the COA development process, the JA must determine the ROE requirements to support the operational concept for each proposed COA. If the current ROE do not support a proposed COA, the JA must assess the supplemental measures required to support the proposed COA, and then determine the likelihood that higher headquarters will approve the required supplemental measures. Close coordination with the higher headquarters JA is helpful in making this determination. If approval is unlikely, this must be quickly communicated to the COA planning group or G3 Plans so they can modify or abandon the proposed COA.

The JA must also keep in mind that the COAs may be developed simultaneously. The JA must become familiar with each COA as it is being developed in order to identify ROE and LOW issues. Judge advocates must also become familiar with COA sketches, graphics, and symbols in order to participate in the process.

At the completion of the COA development process, the JA must ensure that each proposed COA is consistent with current ROE, or must identify required supplemental ROE necessary to implement the COA. If supplemental ROE are required, the JA must inform the commander and staff that the COA is feasible only if higher headquarters approves the required supplemental ROE.

(4) COA Analysis (War Game)

Once the staff develops the requisite number of courses of action, they will analyze each COA, compare the results of that analysis, and determine a set of selection criteria to assist the commander in choosing a COA to forward to higher headquarters. COA analysis normally
ROE DEVELOPMENT

involves a war gaming process where each COA is assessed through initial deployment, employment of forces, potential enemy reactions and actions, environmental influences, mission accomplishment and redeployment.

The threats most likely to be faced, and those most dangerous to a particular COA, will be used to assess a particular COA. This war gaming process is also used to establish and synchronize the actions and reactions of the different force components. War gaming consists of 8 steps:

Step 1. Gather the tools (staff estimates, event templates, recording methods, completed COAs and graphics, enemy and friendly unit symbols, and map).

Step 2. List all friendly forces.

Step 3. List assumptions.

Step 4. List known critical events and decision points.

Step 5. Determine evaluation criteria.

Step 6. Select the war game method.

Step 7. Select a method to record and display results.

Step 8. War game the battle and assess the results.

A key role for the JA during COA analysis is to continue to refine ROE requirements in order to support synchronizing each phase of each proposed COA. The JA and staff must also consider the effects of populated areas, weapons approval authorities, or displaced civilians upon a COA. If supplemental ROE are required to support a COA, higher headquarters approval may be listed as an assumption in step 3. The JA must assess each COA to identify any ROE retained at a higher headquarters that must be delegated to subordinate commanders. Finally, the JA must prepare his estimate of supportability for each COA from a ROE perspective.

(5) COA Comparison

COA comparison begins with each staff officer analyzing and evaluating each COA from his perspective. For the JA, this means analyzing each COA based on legal constraints and requirements. Each staff member, including the JA, should present his analysis to the staff for
consideration. Remember, however, that legal constraints and requirements must also be briefed to the commander.

The staff then analyzes each COA based on criteria gleaned from higher headquarters’ intent, the commander’s planning guidance, the elements of operational art, the principles of war, and significant factors relating to the operation (speed, security, etc.). Each friendly COA will be compared to the enemy’s most likely COA in accordance with the set comparison criteria.

COA comparison is often accomplished using a decision matrix. The chief of staff or executive officer will normally determine the weight of each criterion based on its relative importance. At the end of the comparison, the staff determines its recommended or preferred COA. An example of a COA decision matrix can be found in FM 101-5, page 5-25.

During the COA comparison/selection process, the JA must continue to assess the supportability of each COA from a ROE perspective. The JA must identify specific National Command Authority (NCA) or CINC-level supplemental ROE required to support the selected COA. If supplemental ROE are necessary for the selected COA, the JA should begin drafting the supplemental ROE request message as soon as possible. Supplemental ROE request messages must follow the format in Appendix F (Message Formats and Examples) to Enclosure J (Supplemental Measures) of the JCS SROE.

(6) Commander’s Decision Briefing

The staff presents a decision briefing to the commander. This briefing includes: higher headquarters’ intent; restated mission; status of own forces; updated IPB; COAs, including assumptions used in planning, results of staff estimates, and advantages and disadvantages of each COA; and the recommended COA. Judge advocates must ensure that legal considerations and limitations, if any, are included in the brief.

(7) COA Approval

After receiving the decision briefing, the commander may select a course of action, select but modify a COA, or reject the COAs and gives additional guidance. The commander then refines resource and information
requirements, and issues additional guidance. Once a course of action is selected, the staff issues a warning order to subordinate units.

(8) Orders Production

The staff refines the COA based upon the commander’s guidance, completes the plan, and prepares to issue a clear, concise order implementing the COA. The OPORD contains the commander’s plan to defeat the enemy, designation of the main effort, and specific command and support relationships.

The JA may be responsible for preparing the ROE appendix. During this phase, the JA will also submit requests for supplemental ROE. While the OPORD will contain any ROE and supplemental measures currently in force, the OPORD should not be used to request supplemental ROE. The ROE appendix may provide guidance on the definition of terms (such as hostile act, hostile intent, and other key terms), procedures for requesting, modifying, and approving ROE, procedural guidance for the development of supplemental ROE, ROE training requirements, and guidelines for disseminating and tracking ROE. When issuing guidance for disseminating approved ROE, the JA should consider developing plain language ROE, creating ROE cards, distribution to multinational/coalition forces (if applicable), and issuing ROE translations for multinational forces/coalitions (if applicable).

The commander reviews and approves orders before the staff briefs and issues the order. The commander and staff will generally conduct an orders brief for subordinate commanders, but the order may be issued verbally over the command radio net if time is short.

All supplemental ROE requests and approvals should be cataloged and centrally located for ease of reference. ROE training throughout the force must be monitored for accuracy and consistency. During mission execution, commanders and staffs must continuously analyze ROE and recommend modifications as the operational environment changes. The JA should spearhead this effort by monitoring the operational situation as it develops, identifying deficiencies in the current ROE, and recommending changes to the staff to better support the mission.
c. The MDMP in a Time Constrained Environment

Time is a critical factor. The “1/3 – 2/3 Rule” states that the commander should use no more than one-third of the time available from receipt of mission to time of mission execution for his planning. The remaining two-thirds is for subordinate units to conduct their own planning and preparation. Where time is short and crisis action planning is required, Army doctrine recognizes an “abbreviated” MDMP process. There are four primary techniques to save time:

(1) The commander increases his involvement. This allows him to make decisions during the process without waiting for detailed briefings after each step.

(2) The commander is more direct in his guidance, limiting options. This saves the staff time by focusing members on those things the commander feels are most important.

(3) The commander limits the number of COAs developed and war gamed. In extreme cases he directs only one course of action be developed—“single course-of-action planning.” The goal is an acceptable COA that meets mission requirements in the time available, even if it is not optimal.

(4) Maximize parallel planning.

In a time-constrained environment, the importance of warning orders increases as available time decreases. A verbal warning order now is worth more than a written order one hour from now. The same warning orders used in the full MDMP should be issued when the process is abbreviated. In addition to warning orders, units must share all available information with subordinates, especially rules of engagement, as early as possible.
JA MDMP Staff Inputs & Outputs

**INPUT**
- Specified & implied legal tasks
- Staff estimates
  - Potential LOW hot spots
  - International agreements
  - Civilian issues
  - Targeting concerns
  - Initial ROE/release authority, constraints, and/or gaps
  - PVOs, NGOs in AOR
- Legal facts & assumptions
- Legal input to G5/Civil Affairs overlay
- Legal coverage estimates
- ROE/release authority understanding
- Protected targets list; NFAs coordinated W/ G5/FSCOORD
- Civilian refugee routes and collection areas
- Legal coverage per COA
- Establish legal criteria
- Decision Matrix
- Approved COA

**OUTPUT**
- CDR’s initial guidance
- Potential legal issues
- Fiscal traps
- ROE/release authority shortfalls
- Legally sound
- Necessary changes to ROE/release authority
- Legal coverage issues
- Decision Matrix
- Approved COA
- OPLAN/OPORD
  - Legal Annex
  - ROE Annex
  - ROE card

**RECEIPT OF MISSION**
**MISSION ANALYSIS**
**COA DEVELOPMENT**
**COA ANALYSIS** (War Game)
**COA COMPARISON**
**COA APPROVAL**
**ORDERS**

*Figure 1–6. The JA’s Role in the Planning Process.*
5. The ROE Planning Cell

Commanders may utilize a ROE planning cell to assist in the development of ROE during planning. The ROE planning cell offers an effective and efficient means for gathering the right people and the right information in a formal planning process. In the high tempo of staff battle rhythm, informal planning processes can fall into disuse as they lose focus. A ROE planning cell focuses ROE development and integrates ROE into mission planning.

![Sample Joint ROE Cell](image)

Figure 1-7. Sample Joint ROE Cell.

The ROE planning cell normally brings together key staff representatives. In joint operations, these include the J-2, J-3, J-5, and JA sections, as well as component liaison officers and subject matter experts in relevant warfare sub-specialties. The ROE planning group should be established as early as possible in the planning process,

---

14 See Joint Pub 5-00.2, Joint Task Force Planning Guidance and Procedures, for a detailed discussion of the ROE cell.
ROE DEVELOPMENT

so members can establish responsibilities and set procedures that will guide them through all phases of the planning process. Key responsibilities of a ROE planning cell are:

• Draft ROE and supplemental ROE.
• Develop or review for uniformity and compliance with the ROE the tools for training, tracking, and/or interpreting ROE.
• Oversee dissemination and training of ROE.
• React to requests for supplemental ROE from components.
• Generate supplemental ROE requests based on changing threat or mission.
• Assist the SJA in interpreting SROE and existing ROE for CJTF, JTF staff, and component commands.

6. Remember The Inherent Right of Self-Defense

The JCS SROE state:

A commander has the authority and obligation to use all necessary means available and to take all appropriate actions to defend that commander’s unit and other US forces in the vicinity from a hostile act or demonstration hostile intent.\(^{15}\)

These rules [the JCS SROE] do not limit a commander’s inherent authority and obligation to use all necessary means available and to take all appropriate actions in self-defense of the commander’s unit and other US forces in the vicinity.\(^{16}\)

No rule of engagement may ever limit this inherent right and obligation.

\(^{15}\) Joint Chiefs of Staff Instruction on Standing Rules of Engagement for US Forces, CJCSI 3121.01A, Encl. A par. 5.a. (15 January 2000).

\(^{16}\) Joint Chiefs of Staff Instruction on Standing Rules of Engagement for US Forces, CJCSI 3121.01A, Encl. A par. 2.a. (15 January 2000).
CHAPTER 2

ROE TRAINING

1. Introduction

One of the most important contributions a JA can make to unit pre-deployment preparation is the supervision of a comprehensive, effective ROE training program. ROE "...are the primary tool used to regulate the use of force, and thereby serve as one of the cornerstones" of Operational Law practice. ROE are also one of the cornerstones of any mission. Proper training of soldiers and commanders in mission specific ROE can make the difference between mission success and mission failure. Without adequate training, a soldier may fail to act in self-defense when appropriate or may demonstrate a lack of fire discipline due to lack of understanding of applicable rules. Through training, we "...can condition soldiers to respond better and use force more appropriately across the entire spectrum of potential armed conflict."2

ROE are commanders' rules, not lawyers' rules. ROE development and training are a G/S3 responsibility. However, ROE incorporate law, policy and mission considerations, and JAs will be called upon to assist in both development and training. Moreover, JAs must ensure that ROE development and training receive sufficient attention, and often take the lead in planning and carrying out the ROE training program.

There is little US Army or Marine Corps doctrine addressing the manner in which ROE should be trained. There is some discussion of ROE and ROE training in Department of the Army Field Manual (FM) 27-100, Legal Support to Operations. Several types and methods of training, as well as a variety of training aides are discussed below. While these may be used in any combination deemed appropriate by the unit, ROE training must be comprehensive and multidimensional. ROE should be

---


incorporated into battle task training, and should not be a "new" consideration when a mission or OPORD is received.

There are two types of ROE training:

(1) **General SROE training** and  
(2) **Mission-specific ROE training**.

There are four methods for each type of training:

Method 1 **ROE Briefings** with vignettes  
Method 2 **Individual Training** (Common Task Training- CTT)  
Method 3 **Collective Training** (Situational Training Exercises- STX -by section, squad, platoon or company)  
Method 4 **Leader/Commander Training** by briefing, scenario or command post exercises (CPX) or field training exercises (FTX)

Training of both types will often start in the classroom, but should end in the field.

**2. General ROE Training**

**a. Principles**

ROE training is essential to ensure soldiers use force when and how they should. At one end of the spectrum, soldiers must understand they may not use force indiscriminately. At the other end, US troops must not be unduly hesitant to use force where appropriate, thereby placing their lives at risk.

ROE training should be an ongoing program for operational units. While supplemental mission-specific training will always be necessary, trial counsel and their Brigade Operational Law Teams (BOLTs), MEU SJAs, operational law attorneys, and other JAs should conduct regular ROE and LOW training for affiliated units.

A soldier's ability to properly apply ROE should be considered a battle task. ROE application is as important to a soldier's success in today's complex environment as the ability to fire and maintain a weapon. If the unit considers ROE training a battle task, it is more likely
that the command will fully support the program, and allocate limited training time to it.

JAs should look for opportunities to incorporate ROE training into previously scheduled training events. For example, JAs can present briefings during downtime on field rotations or establish ROE stations for soldiers while they are waiting to fire at a range. In addition to conducting briefings, JAs can insert ROE/LOW vignettes (such as perimeter guard and patrolling tasks) into regularly scheduled CTT exercises. The more time soldiers spend discussing, analyzing, and incorporating ROE into their daily tasks, the more comfortable they will be with the application of ROE on deployment.

The Joint Chiefs of Staff (JCS) Standing Rules of Engagement (SROE)\(^3\) make it easier for JAs to conduct regular ROE training. The JCS SROE are designed "to provide implementation guidance on the application of force for mission accomplishment and the exercise of the inherent right and obligation of self-defense."\(^4\) JAs should train soldiers on general SROE principles, such as:

- **Self-defense, including**
  - National Self-Defense
  - Unit Self-Defense
  - Defense of Mission vs. Self-Defense
  - Individual Self-Defense
- Hostile Act
- Hostile Intent
- Declaration of Hostile Force
- Protected Persons and Property

The most important thing to remember in general ROE training is the SROE principles. A mnemonic device may be chosen to organize and conceptualize these principles, however the principles and concepts themselves remain of primary importance. Soldiers must know, internalize, and practice putting these principles into action.

---

\(^3\) **Joint Chiefs of Staff Instruction on Standing Rules of Engagement for US Forces**, CJCSI 3121.01A (15 January 2000).

b. Tactics, Techniques and Procedures (TTPs)

There are many tactics, techniques and procedures (TTPs) for general and mission-specific ROE training at the individual, collective and leader levels. The most challenging ROE task a commander and his staff face is training the young soldier or Marine to act or react appropriately in any situation without undue hesitation. Thus, most of the TTPs discussed in this chapter are oriented toward the foot soldier’s concerns, rather than the nuances of air defense, indirect fire, and air platform ROE.

(1) R–A–M–P

R - Return Fire with Aimed Fire. Return force with force. You always have the right to repel hostile acts with necessary force.

A - Anticipate Attack. Use force first if, but only if, you see clear indications of hostile intent.

M - Measure the Amount of Force Used if Time and Circumstances Permit. Use only the amount of force necessary to protect lives and accomplish the mission.

P - Protect with Deadly Force Only Human Life and Property Designated by the Commander. Stop short of deadly force when protecting other property.
The training mnemonic R-A-M-P\(^5\) is often used to train SROE principles. For a detailed description of R-A-M-P training, see "Rules of Engagement for Land Forces: A Matter of Training, not Lawyering."\(^6\)

R-A-M-P and other training aids can form the basis of a standardized, on-going SROE training program, such as the program designed by the XVIII Airborne Corps (and incorporated into an XVIII Airborne Corps training regulation— See Appendix D). It is important to remember, however, that neither R-A-M-P nor the other devices are ROE. They are training devices useful for imparting the SROE self-defense principles.

ROE training programs include initial training, periodic sustainment training, and establishment of tasks, conditions, and standards for training proficiency. One advantage of this approach is that ROE training becomes a command-sponsored program, with roles and responsibilities clearly delineated. A sample briefing explaining a R-A-M-P training program is included at Appendix D.

A variety of other training mnemonics have been developed, and may prove useful. However, be careful to avoid mnemonic overload. Training should be consistent within a unit, and use of mnemonics should not become excessive or confusing. Units have chosen various devises to communicate ROE principles. Three common ones are demonstrated below.

\(^5\) Martins, supra at 2.

\(^6\) Martins, supra at 2.
(2) V-E-W-P-R-I-K and the 5 S’s

The mnemonics V-E-W-P-R-I-K and the "5 S's" are both designed to train the concept of escalation of force. They fall under "minimum force" or "measured force" ROE. They are often used to explain the "M" in R-A-M-P.

Note however that some of the escalation methods, such as use of pepper spray or warning shots, are not permitted under all ROE. In addition, these mnemonics present a menu of options. **Soldiers are not required to attempt each step before using deadly force when necessary in self-defense.** **In some circumstances, the minimum force necessary is deadly force.** This fact must be stressed to soldiers, who sometimes incorrectly view these training devices as a list of steps required before applying deadly force in any situation. The XVIII Airborne Corps and First Infantry Division have devised different versions of V-E-W-P-R-I-K (See Appendices B-3 and D). The “R” and “I” of all three versions are controversial and require special training.

### SHOUT - Verbal Warnings to Halt

**S** - Verbal Warning

**H** - Exhibit Weapon

**O** - Warning Shot

**U** - Pepper Spray

**T** - Rifle Buttstroke

**E** - Injure with Bayonet

**O** - Kill with Fire

**NOTE:** These “5 S’s” should not be confused with the 5 S’s of EPW handling: Search, Silence, Segregate, Safeguard, and Speed to the Rear.
(3) Hand S-A-L-U-T-E

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hand</th>
<th>What is in their hands?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Size</td>
<td>How many?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activity</td>
<td>What are they doing?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>Within range?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uniform</td>
<td>Are they in uniform?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>How soon before they are upon you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equipment</td>
<td>If armed, with what?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HAND S-A-L-U-T-E is a mnemonic devised to teach indicators of hostile intent. It is often used as an explanation of the "A" in R-A-M-P (Anticipate Attack). Again, soldiers must be cautioned that hostile intent is a subjective determination, and the mnemonic must not be seen as a required checklist. In some situations, there would not be time to conduct the HAND SALUTE analysis before responding.
(4) Warn ’Em, Scare ’Em, Force ’Em

**WARN THEM**
Verbal warnings to demonstrators.

**SCARE THEM**
Show of force, including use of riot control formations and positioning of armored vehicles – blocking of access.

**FORCE THEM**
Use of:
- riot control agents (when authorized by appropriate authority)
- warning shots (after an order to halt is given)
- Deadly Force

This is a Marine-developed training device aimed at training escalation of force. It proved extremely effective in Haiti operations. The Haiti ROE Card containing this concept can be found in Appendix C. Warning shots and riot control agents are not authorized under all ROE. Always check your mission-specific ROE before issuing a card or using a mnemonic.

(5) Vignette and Common Task Training (CTT)

Briefings and training devices are an important component of ROE training. However, ROE must be practiced if they are to become second nature to soldiers. Vignettes should be incorporated into ROE briefings, and should be developed into CTT and STX scenarios. Judge advocates should be involved in designing ROE scenarios for CTT events and for STX, and should monitor their implementation, particularly when non-commissioned officers
who are not qualified as legal specialists\(^7\) will conduct the training.

In CTT events, soldiers work with their training NCOs on a one-on-one or small group basis. Training NCOs test and reinforce the soldiers' knowledge of key ROE concepts, such as unit self-defense, defense of protected persons or property, and escalation of force alternatives. Training NCOs are sometimes hesitant to develop ROE training programs for use during CTT or Sergeant's Training Time events. They may be uncomfortable teaching ROE, or view it as a JA function. JAs can assist training NCOs by providing vignettes and solutions for use in these events, by training the NCOs, and by participating in regular unit training. The vignettes included in this handbook at Appendix E are designed to assist the JA in this regard.

Caution: Do not provide the vignettes and solutions in Appendix E without review. Solutions may be incorrect under the JCS SROE or your mission-specific ROE.

(6) Situational Training Exercise (STX) Training

The next method of training is the STX. In STX training, soldiers go through "lanes" as a squad or small group, and encounter realistic scenarios, such as operating a checkpoint or guarding a camp gate. Role-players (playing enemy, civilians, persons of uncertain status) drive the scenarios, and bring realism and an element of surprise to the exercise. Soldiers do not know what the role player's intentions are, and thus do not know what the role player will do next. The STX scenarios test the soldier's knowledge of the ROE, and require the soldier to apply the ROE to an evolving situation. The vignettes provided can be developed into STX scenarios.

The key to successful STX training is context. The lane or series of lanes must be preceded by a good briefing of the situation (enemy and friendly), mission and commander's intent. For general ROE training, a mock scenario will have to be devised. For mission-specific ROE training, the context and scenario should be drawn from what is known of the current mission. Without some basic scenario underlying the lane/situation, the soldiers will

\(^7\) The term "legal specialist" refers to 71Ds in the Army and 4421s in the Marine Corps.
have no sense of when or how to use or escalate the use of force. They must have a sense of who they are likely to encounter in the scenario, their likely disposition, whether civilians are allowed to be armed, etc.

(7) Leader/Commander Training

Self-defense training devices are most valuable for training soldiers. Unit leaders and commanders require higher-level training. Most ROE, including the SROE, include weapons release authorities and classified sections. Leaders and commanders must receive training on these portions of the ROE. Leader/commander training can include briefings, vignette-driven seminars in which leaders apply advanced ROE concepts, and command post exercises or fire control exercises incorporating ROE scenarios. Leader/commander training should always be conducted in cooperation with the G/S-3.

Over 350 vignettes are included in Appendix E. These vignettes may be used in conjunction with briefings, CTT events, or STX scenarios. Caution: Do not provide the vignettes and solutions in Appendix E without review. Solutions may be incorrect under the JCS SROE or your mission-specific ROE.

3. Mission-Specific ROE Training

Always remember that R-A-M-P and other mnemonics are not ROE. They are training devices useful for imparting the JCS SROE self-defense principles. R-A-M-P/SROE training programs must always be supplemented with mission-specific ROE training. Mission-specific ROE training builds upon SROE training, to prepare soldiers to implement the mission-specific ROE. Each mission-specific ROE will contain nuances that must be taught to soldiers. Issues, such as who may authorize the use of force for mission accomplishment and weapons release authorities, vary depending on the mission. Permission to use riot control agents is also mission dependent.

Like SROE training, mission-specific ROE training should be considered a battle task, and should be included on pre-deployment training certification checklists. When time permits, all four training methods should be repeated when mission-specific ROE are received. However, because mission-specific ROE may be received only days or hours
before a mission commences, it is essential that soldiers already have a solid SROE training foundation to build upon. An example of a mission-specific ROE briefing, with training vignettes, is included at Appendix D (First Cavalry Division Bosnia ROE Brief).

Training mnemonics such as R-A-M-P and the 5S's can be included in mission-specific ROE training, so long as the mnemonic chosen correctly represents the specific ROE. JAs must ensure that the vignettes used in briefings, CTT, and STX are appropriate to the given ROE.

Issuance of ROE cards has become standard operating procedure for most units, but ROE cards do not take the place of training. A comparison of ROE cards used during recent operations demonstrates the subtle differences in ROE. For instance, the Bosnia Implementation Force (IFOR) ROE card did not discuss the use of force to prevent crime likely to result in serious bodily harm. The Stabilization Force (SFOR) ROE card did discuss this issue, based on a ROE clarification issued by SFOR. Obviously, soldiers require training on these subtle distinctions, and cannot be expected to glean this information from reading a new ROE card. ROE cards can be used, however, to reinforce training and to highlight ROE changes. Changing ROE card color when issuing a clarification or change is a simple way to distinguish between versions. Sample ROE cards are included at Appendix C.

Remember that ROE development is an ongoing process. Therefore, ROE training should continue throughout a mission. In addition to receiving training on ROE changes, soldiers should continue to drill on current ROE throughout a mission or deployment. For example, soldiers should be briefed before every guard mount. Soldiers should continue to train while deployed, and refresher or sustainment ROE training should be a part of any deployment training program.

4. NATO and Multinational ROE

Training NATO or multinational ROE will always present a challenge. Nations sometimes disagree over the meaning of ROE language. Some countries issue ROE cards while others do not. In multinational settings, JAs should meet with their counterparts to discuss ROE training programs and interpretations whenever possible. There is no
standing NATO ROE. Although there is a NATO ROE compendium of previously issued ROE (NATO Confidential), NATO ROE are developed on a mission-specific basis. Because NATO ROE are developed through a process of consensus, they may not be available in time for extensive training. In this case, training should focus on the nuances of the NATO ROE once it is issued. This process underscores the importance of an ongoing SROE training program. As with other mission-specific ROE training, if soldiers have been thoroughly trained in SROE prior to receipt of the mission ROE, they will understand the building blocks upon which ROE are built. This foundation allows time-sensitive training to focus on the nuances of the ROE, rather than starting from square one.

5. Conclusion

ROE training is essential to mission accomplishment. Soldiers who train ROE concepts repeatedly are better prepared to apply force in accordance with the principles of self-defense, mission constraints, and requirements. Although ROE development and training are a command and G/S-3 responsibility, JAs can be of great assistance. JAs become force multipliers for commanders by designing and overseeing comprehensive ROE training programs, which help to ensure mission success by preparing soldiers to face the challenges of today's complex environment.
1. Introduction

This Chapter discusses issues that have traditionally been problem areas in the drafting, training and application of Rules of Engagement. These "minefields" or problem areas include the following:

- Riot Control Agents (RCAs)
- Other Non-Lethal Weapons (NLW)
- Land mines
- Civil Disorder in Foreign Operations
- Protected Persons and Property
- ROE versus Fire Control Measures and Tactics
- ROE in Context
- Knowledge of Weapons
- "Observed" and "Unobserved" Fires
- The Inherent Right of Self-Defense

The purpose of this Chapter is to raise awareness and consideration of these problem areas, and, where possible, offer suggestions on ways to address them.
2. Riot Control Agents

Riot Control Agent (RCA) issues include:

- When can RCAs be used?
- How should troops be trained with RCAs?

a. Discussion of Riot Control Agents (RCAs)¹

According to Article II, Par. 7, of the Convention on the Prohibition of the Development, Production, Stockpiling and Use of Chemical Weapons and on Their Destruction (13 January 1993) (hereinafter CWC), Riot Control Agents (RCAs) are any chemical not listed in a schedule, which can produce rapidly in humans sensory irritation or disabling physical effects which disappear within a short time following termination of exposure. [The CWC has three schedules (lists) of toxic chemicals and their precursors.] Both CS (ortho-Chlorobenzalmalononitrile) and OC (oleoresin capsicum), also known as “pepper spray,” are Riot Control Agents (RCAs). While not normally employed by US forces, CN (Chloracetophenone) is also a RCA. A key point is that these agents are not considered “chemical weapons,” “toxic chemicals,” or “precursors,” and therefore are not subject to their restrictions. However, Par. 5, Article I, General Obligations, of the CWC provides, “Each State Party undertakes not to use riot control agents as a method of warfare.” The CWC does not define “method of warfare.” US policy distinguishes between the use of RCAs in war and in situations other than war.

CS (ortho-Chlorobenzalmalononitrile)—also known as [(2-Chlorophenyl) methylene] propanedinitrile, ortho-Chlorobenzylidene Malononitrile, beta, beta-Dicyano-ortho-Chloro styrene, and ortho-Chlorobenzalmalononitrile—is a white crystalline solid. It was developed in 1928 and has been used for many years as an anti-riot agent. It was originally used as a crowd control chemical in the 1950's but was not seriously considered by law enforcement for use until the mid 1960's. It is used primarily as an incapacitating agent, by both military and law enforcement personnel. With the advent of the less-than-lethal

requirement needed by law enforcement, CS has become a mainstay of riot control, alleviating hostage and barricade situations and prison population control. CS can be disseminated in grenades, projectiles, aerosols, or as a powder.

In very minute quantities, CS has a peppery odor. In higher concentrations, the eyes will involuntarily close and have a burning sensation with profuse tearing. The nose will run, and moist skin will have a stinging sensation. CS will cause severe coughing, in concurrence with tightness in the chest and throat. Occasionally, dizziness or swimming of the head will be experienced. All of the above effects are produced 20 to 60 seconds after dosing, and they will last from 10 to 30 minutes after being removed from the gas.

OC (Oleoresin Capsicum)—also known as “pepper spray”, Capsaicin, N-[(4-Hydroxy-3-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-8-methyl-6-nonenamide, trans-8-methyl-N-vanillyl-6-nonenamide, and N-(4-hydroxy-3-methoxybenzyl)-8-methyl-non-trans-6-enamide—is an extract of the cayenne pepper and is FDA-approved for sale over-the-counter in the United States. Capsaicin is the active component of the oleoresin capsicum, which is considered the "heat". In most cases, OC is dispersed by the use of aerosols but use of OC powders is growing and it is predicted to dominate the market in the coming years as the mainstay of riot control and crowd disbursement. OC aerosols, commonly known as pepper sprays, are readily available to consumers in many retail outlets and catalogues.

OC has a peppery odor. In low concentrations, the eyes will involuntarily close and have a burning sensation with profuse tearing. The nose will run, and exposed skin will have a burning sensation. OC is an inflammatory agent and will cause severe coughing, in concurrence with tightness in the chest and throat. Occasionally, dizziness or swimming of the head will be experienced. All of the above effects are produced 60 seconds after dosing, and they will last for 45 minutes after being dosed. As with any riot control agent when used in the aerosol form, there could be individuals so motivated or influenced by drugs or alcohol that little effect will be produced. The inflammatory agent OC works very differently from other RCAs. OC causes gastrointestinal and dermal irritation along with bronchoconstriction. OC works directly on the nerves in
the skin, eyes and lungs. OC seeks out the nerve structures of the eyes and causes involuntary closing of the lids. OC upon entering the lungs seeks out the pulmonary C-fiber neurons to cause rapid and shallow breathing. This sounds terrible, but it is far less harsh than the active destruction of tissue, which can be caused by its predecessors, CS or CN. The decontamination of OC is much easier and does not require extensive procedures for the cleanup of this biodegradable substance.

**CN (Chloracetophenone)**—also known as alpha-Chloracetophenone, Phenacyl Chloride, or Phenyl Chloromethyl Ketone—is not normally employed by US forces. It was discovered by a German chemist in 1869 and is generally accepted as "tear gas" by law enforcement and military agencies throughout the world. CN in minute quantities has an apple blossom odor. In larger quantities, CN causes heavy flow of tears and mucous, burning and itching sensation of moist exposed skin. In larger quantities, CN will produce nausea.

**b. When can RCAs be used?**

The key guidance for when RCAs may be employed is found in Executive Order number 11850 (8 April 1975, 40 F.R. 16187, 50 USC. section 1511) and in *Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff Instruction (CJCSI) 3110.07A* (15 December 1998, classified Secret). Requests to use RCAs MUST be routed up the chain of command. Consult CJCSI 3110.07A for specific approval authorities.

As previously stated, the CWC provides, "Each State Party undertakes not to use riot control agents as a method of warfare." The CWC does not define "method of warfare," thereby leaving room for differences in opinion and policy. US policy distinguishes between the use of RCAs in war and in situations other than war, and between offensive ("method of warfare") and defensive modes in war.

(1) **War and Armed Conflict**

Executive Order 11850 states:

The United States renounces, as a matter of national policy, . . . first use of riot control agents in war except in defensive military modes to save lives such as:
(a) Use of riot control agents in riot control situations in areas under direct and distinct US military control, to include controlling rioting prisoners of war.

(b) Use of riot control agents in situations in which civilians are used to mask or screen attacks and civilian casualties can be reduced or avoided.

(c) Use of riot control agents in rescue missions in remotely isolated areas, of downed aircrews and passengers, and escaping prisoners.

(d) Use of riot control agents in rear echelon areas outside the zone of immediate combat to protect convoys from civil disturbances, terrorists and paramilitary organizations.

(Emphasis added)

Additionally, White House memorandum for the Secretary of Defense, 10 January 1976, “Use of Riot Control Agents to Protect or Recover Nuclear Weapons,” provides Riot Control Agents may be used in security operations regarding the protection or recovery of nuclear weapons.

Remember that Executive Order (EO) 11850 preceded the CWC and its ratification. The Senate opposed changes to or effects on EO 11850 when it ratified the CWC. The implementation section of the Senate resolution requires that the President not modify EO 11850. (See S. Exec Res. 75, section 2 (26)(b), s3378). The key is to route requests for use up the chain of command.

(2) Peacetime and Operations Other Than War (OOTW)

Department of the Army Civil Disturbance Plan, “Garden Plot,” 15 February 1991 with 1996 Changes, gives instructions for RCA use in civil disturbances in the US and its possessions and territories. Other allowable peacetime and OOTW uses include:

(a) On US bases, posts, embassy grounds, and installations (to include US-controlled portions of foreign installations) for protection and security purposes, riot control, installation security, training, and evacuation of United States noncombatants and foreign nationals.

(b) Off base, worldwide, for protection or recovery of nuclear weapons.
(c) By military law enforcement personnel in the performance of law enforcement activities (chemical aerosol-irritant projectors) on and off base in the US, its territories and possessions (unless prohibited by the Posse Comitatus Act, 18 USC 1385), on base outside the US, and off base outside the US only if authorized by the host nation.

Additionally, the Presidential Letters and Congressional Record referred to in the War and Armed Conflict section above state:

(a) The conduct of peacetime military operations within an area of ongoing armed conflict when the United States is not a party to the conflict (such as the recent use of the United States Armed Forces in Somalia, Bosnia, and Rwanda);

(b) Consensual peacekeeping operations when the use of force is authorized by the receiving state, including operations pursuant to Chapter VI of the United Nations Charter; and

(c) Peacekeeping operations when force is authorized by the Security Council under Chapter VII of the United Nations Charter.

An example of the latter, (c), would be the peacekeeping operations authorized by the United Nations in September 1999 for East Timor. There may be other peacetime or OOTW situations where RCA use would be authorized. The key, again, is to route requests for use up the chain of command.

**c. How should troops be trained with RCAs?**

See the discussion of training in section 3. Other Non-Lethal Weapons, below. Use of RCAs is just one aspect of the employment of NLWs. As with other NLWs, RCAs should not be used unless soldiers have been trained in their use.
Some Key References

- Protocol for the Prohibition of the Use in War of Asphyxiating, poisonous or Other Gases, and of Bacteriological Methods of Warfare, 17 June 1925 (Ratified by the US in 1975).
- Convention on the Prohibition of the Development, Production and Stockpiling of bacteriological (Biological) and Toxin Weapons and on Their Destruction, 10 April 1972 (Ratified by the US).
- Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff Instruction (CJCSI) Instruction 3110.07A, 15 December 1998 (classified Secret).
- Executive Order Number 11850, 8 April 1975, 40 F.R. 16187.
3. Other Non-Lethal Weapons (NLWs)

NLWs are defined as weapons explicitly designed and primarily employed so as to incapacitate personnel or material, while minimizing fatalities, permanent injury to personnel, and undesired damage to property and the environment. There are many other NLWs apart from Riot Control Agents. They include riot control batons ("night sticks"), kinetic energy rounds (such as foam rubber, wooden baton and rubber ball projectiles) for various projectile weapons (such as the 12-gauge shotgun and the 40mm grenade launcher), high intensity lights, anti-vehicle barricades, and more. Prior to acquisition, each non-lethal munition or weapon receives a legal review by the Department of the Army’s Office of the Judge Advocate General. As with RCAs, the primary issues with NLW are:

- When can NLWs be used?
- How should troops be trained with NLWs?

a. Discussion of NLWs

"Non-Lethal Weapons" are not necessarily non-lethal. Virtually any weapon can be used in a manner to cause death or great bodily injury. Thus, NLWs are not required to have zero probability of producing fatalities or permanent injuries. However, NLWs usually employ means other than gross physical destruction—other than blast, penetration, and fragmentation—to prevent the target from functioning. They are intended to have relatively reversible effects on personnel or material and to affect objects differently within their area of influence.

NLWs achieve these benefits by employing means other than catastrophic destruction to incapacitate their targets. The term "non-lethal" should be understood as a function of intent; "zero mortality" or "no permanent damage" are goals, not guarantees, of these weapons. NLWs add flexibility to combat operations and enhance force protection by providing an environment in which friendly troops can engage threatening targets with limited risk of noncombatant casualties and collateral damage.

Department of Defense Directive 3000.3 (9 July 1996) designated the Commandant of the Marine Corps as the
executive agent for the Department of Defense Joint Non-Lethal Weapons Program, assigning responsibility for providing program recommendations and for stimulating and coordinating Joint Non-Lethal Weapon requirements. Research and testing of other NLWs are in progress. A force armed only with traditional weapons normally has just two choices for enforcement: the threat of deadly force (e.g. Shout, Shove, Show your weapon) or application of deadly force. NLWs expand the options available to the commander.

Non-Lethal Weapons may be categorized into "systems":

- **Personnel Effectors.** Personnel effectors include items such as riot batons, stingball grenades, pepper sprays, and kinetic energy rounds, designed to, at a minimum, deter, discourage, or at most, incapacitate individuals or groups.

- **Mission Enhancers.** Mission enhancers include items such as bullhorns, combat optics, spotlights, and caltrops. These items are designed to facilitate target identification and crowd control. Additionally, these items provide a limited ability to affect vehicular movement.

**International Initiatives:** The first review conference (October 1995) for the United Nations Convention on Prohibitions or Restrictions on the Use of Certain Conventional Weapons which may be Deemed to be Excessively Injurious or to Have Indiscriminate Effects, also known as the United Nations Convention on Conventional Weapons (UNCCW), adopted a fourth protocol prohibiting the use of blinding laser weapons. The US is not a party to this protocol, but has fully implemented it.

- Protocol IV defines blinding laser weapons as “weapons specifically designed, as their sole combat function or as one of their combat functions, to cause permanent blindness to unenhanced vision, that is to the naked eye or to the eye with corrective eyesight devices.”

- The US military has no blinding laser weapons. Devices such as range finders, target designators, or non-lethal weapons such as dazzlers are not blinding laser weapons.

---

3 Caltrops are spikes, iron balls with four projecting spikes such that, when thrown on the ground, one of the spikes is always pointing upward. Now used to stop wheeled vehicles, they were used against horse-mounted cavalry, and have even been employed against tracked vehicles.
The protocol and US policy require commanders to take all feasible precautions (such as through training and ROE) in the use of laser systems to avoid the incidence of permanent blindness to unenhanced vision.

b. When can NLWs be used?

Unless restricted by higher’s Rules of Engagement, fire control measures, orders, or lack of availability, non-lethal weapons (other than RCAs) may be employed by commanders and troops any time force is authorized. There is no legal requirement to resort to use of non-lethal weapons where deadly force is warranted by the circumstances ruling at the time. Non-Lethal Weapons may even be used in conjunction with lethal weapons to enhance the effectiveness and efficiency of the lethal weapons, even in total combat.

There are several things to consider and plan for before employing NLW:

(1) **Deadly Force and the Right of Self and Unit Defense remain.** NLWs do not replace traditional means of deadly force. They are merely another option. NLW availability does not limit a soldier’s inherent right of self-defense, nor does it limit a commander’s inherent authority and obligation to use all necessary means available and to take all appropriate action in self-defense. Troops must still have deadly force available as an option when the mission so dictates.

(2) **NLWs are not exclusive.** ROE must clearly articulate and soldiers must understand (i.e. through training) that NLWs are an additional means of employing force for the particular purpose of limiting the probability of death or serious injury to noncombatants or belligerents.

(3) **The Media.** Commanders and troops alike must be prepared to handle media inquiries. Commanders should consider whether or not an Information Operations campaign addressing NLW is advisable.

a) **False Expectations.** First, preemptive engagement of the media can clarify the role and effects of NLWs. False and erroneous expectations can arise that people will not be hurt or that our troops may not or should
not employ deadly force. Such false beliefs and expectations can set our forces up for failure—tactically, operationally, and strategically. Tactically, persons may form the false belief that troops cannot employ deadly force and may therefore escalate situations to the point where troops have no choice but to use deadly force, thereby destroying the usefulness of NLWs and making their use counterproductive. Strategically, heightened public expectations that people will not be killed or seriously injured can quickly turn into political and policy mandates that do, in fact, tie troops’ hands with respect to the use of force. Commanders with NLWs at their disposal should expect to be second-guessed when they choose to employ deadly force. Either situation destroys the benefits of NLWs.

b) Deterrent Value. A second reason to consider an Information Operations campaign addressing NLWs is the potential deterrent effect. If civilians know that the US is permitted to use NLWs, they may hesitate to provoke a confrontation. If they believe NLWs are not available, they may be more likely to harass soldiers or marines, knowing they will not use deadly force unless absolutely necessary.

(4) Advantages of NLWs. NLW employment can favorably influence both the immediate situation and the overall operational environment by reducing the risk of noncombatant fatalities and collateral damage and their accompanying negative effects on the attitudes and actions of noncombatants and even combatants (less anger, alienation, remorse). However, in some circumstances, use of NLWs may have a provoking effect. As always, the leaders on the scene must exercise the best weapon we have—good judgment.

(5) Cultural Implications. Implications of NLW employment will often hinge on the local culture(s) and beliefs involved.

NLWs may be particularly useful in the following operational environments: domestic operations involving
riot control, military operations in urban terrain (MOUT), and peacekeeping and enforcement. NLW capabilities dictate their applications. Capabilities may include:

(1) Counter-Personnel:
   a) Influencing behavior and activities of a potentially hostile crowd.
   b) Incapacitate personnel.
   c) Seize personnel.
   d) Deny personnel access to an area.

(2) Counter-Material:
   a) Disable or neutralize vehicles or facilities without destroying them.
   b) Deny vehicle access to certain areas or facilities.

c. How should troops be trained with NLWs?

Successful employment of NLWs depends on the chosen tactics, techniques and procedures (TTP) and on the training of the troops using the NLWs. Improper use of NLWs can be worse than not having NLWs available.

Training with NLWs must be done at the individual, unit, and leader levels. Individual training topics should include the force continuum, crowd dynamics and control, crowd control formations, communication skills, Oleoresin Capsicum Aerosol (Pepper Spray) use, open-hand control, impact weapons, working dogs, apprehension and control operations, ROE and Law of War, non-lethal munitions and employment, barriers and physical security measures, and tactics.

Training Devices and Personnel Protectors. Training Devices include items such as training suits, training batons, and inert pepper sprays. They facilitate realistic hands-on scenario training in preparation for operations. Personnel Protectors are often discussed in the context of non-lethal weapons but are not NLWs themselves. Personnel protectors include items such as face shields and riot shields that protect the individual from blunt trauma injuries inflicted by thrown objects, clubs, etc. Personnel Protectors and NLWs are often employed in conjunction with each other. Therefore training in Personnel Protectors is also essential.

The Military Police School, Fort McClellan, Alabama, teaches verbal communication skills, open-hand control
techniques, riot control agents, effects of impact weapons, and civil disturbance tactics, techniques, and procedures (TTP). The Marine Corps and the Army developed a Program of Instruction (POI) for a Non-Lethal Individual Weapons Instructor Course (NIWIC). The NIWIC is offered as a 14-day resident course at Fort McClellan and as a nonresident course instructed by a mobile training team (MTT). NIWIC is a "train the trainer" program designed to provide commanders non-lethal instructors within their command. The commander can then tailor the non-lethal instruction to fit mission needs. This is the only formal DOD non-lethal training course. Army graduates receive an additional skill identifier upon successful completion of this course. The US Army Military Police School is developing a training support package that includes TTP for small units, company level and below, in the use of NLW in riot/mob control.

Unit training must employ situational training exercises (STX or lane training) at each unit level. Role players should act the parts of civilians, host nation forces, enemy forces, etc., as appropriate to the situation. Training should be task oriented, such as crowd control, incapacitating personnel, personnel seizure, area denial to personnel and to vehicles, clearing buildings or facilities, and disabling vehicles.

Lessons in the employment of NLWs have been learned from operations such as those conducted by US forces in Somalia and Haiti. These lessons include:

1) There is no legal requirement to resort to use of non-lethal weapons where deadly force is warranted by the circumstances ruling at the time.
2) Never use a NLW where it will place troops in undue danger.
3) Always have deadly force available in support of NLWs.
Some Key References

- Note: Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff Instruction (CJCSI) 3110.07A, 15 December 1998 (overall classification of Secret) states that a CJCSI addressing Non-Lethal Weapons is to be published in 1999.
4. Land mines

The big issues with land mines are what land mines may be used, and when and how they may be used. Anti-tank land mines may be used subject to the traditional laws and principles that govern use of all land mines and booby traps. Anti-personnel land mines, however, are subject to more restrictive US policy.

a. The Law

Treaty sources for ROE purposes are the Amended Mines Protocol (Amended Protocol II to the United Nations Convention on Conventional Weapons (UNCCW)) and, for the limited purpose stated herein, the Ottawa Convention on the Prohibition of the Use, Stockpiling, Production and Transfer of Anti-Personnel Mines and on Their Destruction (18 September 1997).

(1) Convention on Conventional Weapons (UNCCW)

The UNCCW was concluded at Geneva on 10 October 1980; Entry into Force (EIF) was 2 December 1983. The main body or text of the UNCCW addresses scope of application, entry into force, and amendment procedures. The heart of the CCW is its three protocols that restrict or prohibit the use of various conventional weapons:

- Protocol I (Protocol on Non-Detectable Fragments)—is short and to the point, simply stating: "It is prohibited to use any weapon the primary effect of which is to injure by fragments which in the human body escape detection by X-rays."

- Protocol II (Protocol on Prohibitions or Restrictions on the Use of Mines, Booby Traps and Other Devices)—prohibits or restricts the use of mines, booby traps and other devices such as Anti Personnel Land mines (APL).

- Protocol III (Protocol on Prohibitions or Restrictions on the use of Incendiary Weapons)—regulates the use of incendiary weapons.

Although the US signed the UNCCW on 8 April 1982, it did not ratify it until 24 March 1995. Under Article 4 of the UNCCW, a country ratifying the Convention must choose to accept a minimum of two Protocols in order to ratify. Accordingly, in 1995, the US approved Protocol I and the original Protocol II. The original Protocol II to the UNCCW addressed mines in general, but with no distinction between anti-personnel mines, anti-tank mines, and booby traps.
(2) **Amended Protocol II to the UNCCW**

Recently there was a revision to UNCCW Protocol II. After three years of negotiation, 51 states agreed to an Amended Protocol II on anti-personnel land mines, which significantly strengthened rules governing their use. The Amended Protocol II was submitted to the US Senate on 7 January 1997 for their advice and consent, and was ratified in May 1999. Its key provisions are:

- It establishes “anti-personnel mines” and “remotely-delivered mines” as sub-categories of “mines.” It still refers to “booby-traps” and to “other devices.”
- It authorizes only remotely-delivered mines with a self-destructive mechanism and a backup self-deactivation device. Self-neutralizing mines, previously authorized in the original Protocol II, are no longer authorized.
- “Remotely-delivered mine” means a mine not directly emplaced but delivered by artillery, missile, rocket, mortar, or similar means, or dropped from an aircraft. Mines delivered from a land-based system from less than 500 meters are not considered “remotely-delivered.”
- It prohibits mines, booby-traps, or other devices designed or of a nature to cause superfluous injury or unnecessary suffering.
- It prohibits mines, booby-traps, or other devices which employ a mechanism or device specifically designed to detonate the munition by the presence of commonly available mine detectors (triggered by magnetic or other non-contact activity during mine-detection operations).
- It prohibits anti-handling devices that continue to function after the mine has ceased to be capable of functioning.
- It prohibits employment of mines, booby-traps, or other devices against the civilian population, individual civilians, or civilian objects. Note: “Several clearly separated and distinct military objectives located in a city, town, village or other area containing a similar concentration of civilians or civilian objects are not to be treated as a single military objective.”
- It prohibits indiscriminate use of mines, booby-traps, or other devices.
- It requires all feasible precautions be taken to protect civilians from the effects of mines, booby-traps, or other devices, to include advance warning of emplacement
of such devices which may affect the civilian population (unless circumstances do not permit advanced warning).

- It prohibits non-detectable anti-personnel mines (standards for detection are contained in Amended Protocol II’s Technical Annex).

- It places restrictions on anti-personnel (AP) land mines that are NOT remotely-delivered: If non-remotely-delivered mines are also not self-destructing or self-deactivating, they must be within a marked perimeter, monitored by military personnel, protected by fencing or other means, and be cleared before the area is abandoned. The Claymore\(^4\) is exempted from these requirements so long as it is located in immediate proximity to the unit, emplaced for 72 hours maximum, and military personnel monitor the area to exclude civilians.

- It places restrictions on anti-personnel land mines that are remotely-delivered: They must be recorded, self-destructing, and self-deactivating in accordance with Protocol II’s Technical Annex. Remotely-delivered anti-tank mines must be self-destructing and have a back-up self-deactivation feature. Effective advanced warning must be given to affected civilian populations unless circumstances do not permit.

- Restrictions on booby-traps and other devices:
  - Same as original Protocol II: No booby-trapping protective emblems/signs/signals, sick, dead, wounded, burial sites, medical facilities/equipment/transportation, toys, food, drink, non-military kitchen utensils and appliances, religious objects, historic monuments, animals, carcasses.
  - No use in any city, town, village or other area containing a similar concentration of civilians in which combat between ground forces is not taking place or does not appear to be imminent, unless they are placed in close vicinity of a military objective, or measures are taken to protect the civilians.
  - It prohibits transfers of prohibited mines, and requires restraint on transfers of any mine the use of which the Amended Protocol restricts (this is a key provision, even if US is not a party to it, because it may directly affect our dealings with other countries).

---

\(^4\) Claymores should no longer be referred to as “mines” in order to make a clear distinction between an anti-personnel land mine (APL) and the command-detonated Claymore.
(3) Ottawa Convention

The Convention on the Prohibition of the Use, Stockpiling, Production and Transfer of Anti-Personnel Mines and on Their Destruction, also known as the Ottawa Convention, was signed by 123 nations on 2 and 3 December 1997. It entered into force on 1 March 1999.

The Ottawa Convention totally bans anti-personnel land mines. Its key provisions are:

- “Each State Party undertakes never under any circumstances: (a) to use anti-personnel mines; (b) to develop, produce, otherwise acquire, stockpile, retain or transfer to anyone, directly or indirectly, anti-personnel mines; (c) to assist, encourage or induce, in any way, anyone to engage in any activity prohibited to a State party under this Convention.”
- Each party agrees to destroy all anti-personnel mines it owns, possesses, or controls.

The US is not party to the Ottawa Convention, but the fact that most NATO allies are raises interoperability issues. The legal obligation of US Allies that are States Parties to the Ottawa Convention may affect US anti-personnel mine employment and ROE. Judge Advocates must consult with higher technical channels to see what, if any, arrangements have been made with party signatories involved in any given operation.

b. US Policy

US policy—as established by Presidential proclamation on 16 May 1996—is that US forces may not use non-self-destructing anti-personnel land mines except (1) to train personnel engaged in demining and countermining operations, and (2) to defend the US and its allies from aggression across the Korean Demilitarized Zone.
Some Key References

- Convention on Prohibitions or restrictions on the Use of Certain Conventional Weapons which may be Deemed to be Excessively Injurious or to have Indiscriminate Effects (and Protocols), 10 October 1980, 19 I.L.M. 1523. (Ratified by the US, except Protocol III, on 24 March 1995.)

- Amended Protocol II to the Convention on Prohibitions or restrictions on the Use of Certain Conventional Weapons which may be Deemed to be Excessively Injurious or to have Indiscriminate Effects. (Ratified by the US on 24 May 1999).

- Convention on the Prohibition of the Use, Stockpiling, Production, and transfer of Anti-Personnel Mines and on their Destruction, 18 September 1997, 36 I.L.M. 1507. (US is not a party to).


5. Civil Disorder

In Haiti, international television broadcast an incident of civilian-on-civilian violence while US soldiers stood by and watched. These soldiers were following the ROE they had received. The primary lesson is to plan for incidents of civil unrest and violence in the area of operations ahead of time, and to implement appropriate rules of engagement. Whether and how US soldiers may respond when they observe civilian-on-civilian violence or destruction of property will depend, as with all ROE, on political, legal and military considerations. If the issued ROE do not address this issue, seek specific guidance from higher command/authorities.

Rules of engagement should clearly address what kinds of acts troops may prevent, and by what means. For example, in Bosnia, the first ROE card issued to the Implementation Force (IFOR) troops had no provision concerning protection of civilians. When the ROE card was issued to the Stabilization Force (SFOR) troops in December 1996, it contained the following additional provision:

You may use minimum force, including opening fire, against an individual who unlawfully commits, or is about to commit, an act which endangers life, or is likely to cause serious bodily harm, in circumstances where there is no other way to protect the act.

The 10th Mountain Division included the following language on their ROE card as part of SFOR in 1999:

You may use the minimum force necessary, including deadly force, to stop and detain persons committing, or about to commit, in your presence, serious criminal acts upon other persons (for example murder, rape, and serious assault).

The bottom line is to think ahead and anticipate problems such as these, so that appropriate guidance and ROE might be drafted and trained on by the troops before they encounter these situations in theater.
6. Protected Persons and Property

Virtually every set of ROE and every ROE card states that soldiers may use up to deadly force to protect persons and property with designated special status. However, most ROE and ROE cards fail to state what, if any, persons and property do have special status. This designation is often classified. Every soldier must understand whom and what property may be protected, and should be trained on scenarios where such persons or properties are threatened. STX lanes are especially crucial with respect to property that may be protected with deadly force. It is against most soldiers' nature to shoot and kill someone over a piece of (classified) paper. If a soldier is to do so, then he must be trained and practiced at implementing the rule.

Here is the language used by the US SFOR in Operation Joint Forge as of 24 August 1998:

You may use deadly force to defend yourself, SFOR soldiers and persons with designated special status from immediate threat of serious injury or death.

Protection of Property
1. Use the minimum force necessary, which may include deadly force (Five S’s), to protect classified documents and property, weapons, ammo, explosives, and property with designated special status.
2. Use the minimum force necessary, BUT NOT deadly force, to protect all other SFOR property.

There is no perfect ROE card. The language above does, at least, tell the soldier what property may be protected with deadly force, and that he need not stand idly by and watch civilians pilfer gas cans, water jugs, MREs, etc. It tells the soldier he may use deadly force to protect his allied comrades.

The key, as always, is to think ahead and anticipate the situations a soldier might face, and ask if the ROE and ROE cards (the current guidance) give enough guidance for the soldier to know how he may act within the confines of his good judgment.
7. ROE versus LOW, Fire Control Measures, and Tactics

It is generally accepted that Rules of Engagement are the rules that implement policy, law and mission constraints on the use of force. However, ROE must not merely restate the LOW or become cluttered with "rules" addressing purely tactical matters.

ROE are separate from the LOW. Although based in part on Law of War principles, ROE should not restate the law. ROE must be promulgated within the law of war, but not repeat the law of war. The ROE and ROE card should not lose focus on the use of force, as indicated by the definition of ROE.

Fire control measures and tactical control measures often creep into ROE. For example, a rule that the M-60 machine gun will lay fires down only after an M-16 rifleman designates a target with tracers is a fire control measure, not a rule governing the use of force, and generally should not be stated as part of the ROE. Similarly, tactical control measures, such as phase lines and control points, are not ROE.

8. ROE in Context

Often the source of confusion in an eighteen year-old private lies not in the rules of engagement themselves, but in a lack of understanding of the situation, mission, commander’s intent, and concept of the operation. Rotation after rotation at the Combat Training Centers, when individual soldiers are asked what country they are in (notional, of course, for training purposes), who the enemy is (if there are any designated enemy), why they are there, etc., they have scant knowledge. While soldiers deployed on actual missions tend to fare somewhat better on such a basic knowledge quiz, the point is still made. To be able to take a set of given rules and apply them “properly” in any given situation, a soldier must have a context within which to make a judgment call and act.

Does the soldier know that there is no officially declared “enemy”? Does he know that local citizens are free to carry shotguns and long arms, but not handguns or military-type weapons? These issues are not ROE, but put ROE into context for the soldier. Therefore, some cultural or mission considerations are frequently briefed with ROE.
For example, Bosnia ROE briefings often begin with the statement "we are not at war," and include issues of cultural and religious sensitivity.

The same point applies to the conduct of STX lanes. Soldiers perform best when they have received a mini-Operations Order (OPORD) briefing covering at least Situation, Mission, and Execution (hitting Service Support and Command and Signal if necessary, or giving them a few moments to work out Command and Signal procedures amongst themselves). They will not know how to judge the scenario’s people and circumstances, and therefore how to act, without the mission and situation context.

9. Knowledge of Weapons

The JA should always be familiar with our weapons systems and their capabilities. Basic law of war and ROE principles cannot be applied competently without knowing the ranges, error probabilities, and effects of the proposed weapons and munitions. To gain this knowledge, JAs should discuss the weapons available with those who know and use them, e.g. fire supporters and engineers. See Appendix F for information on some standard weapons.

10. “Observed” and “Unobserved” Fires

a. Introduction

The terms “observed fires” and “unobserved fires” often cause confusion. Some ROE prohibit “unobserved indirect fires” altogether (requiring that all indirect fires be “observed”). Sometimes the rule extends only to “populated areas.” “Indirect” fires may refer only to artillery and rocket fires, or may extend to mortar fires. There are a multitude of issues and questions that must be clearly answered by the ROE when such language is used. As with all rules of engagement, if these issues are not clearly resolved before they are applied, confusion is certain to result at a critical moment.

b. What is “Observed” – Who or what can “observe”?

There is near unanimous opinion that eyes-on-the-target meet the “observed” requirement. Short of that, there is often confusion. For example, with new technology, live video surveillance of a target by an
unmanned aerial vehicle (UAV) may satisfy the requirement that fires be “observed.” Other detection assets, such as Q36 or Q37 target acquisition radar, may satisfy the requirement. The key is to define clearly, in the context of available detection and weapons systems, which visibility assets satisfy the “observed” requirement and which do not.

c. An Alternative?: “Clearly Identified”

There are many legitimate ways to identify a target, such as Unmanned Aerial Vehicles (UAV); Q36 and Q37 target acquisition radar; Electronic Intelligence—e.g., readings from the Side Looking Airborne Radar (SLAR), the Longbow Radar, or from PPS-5 or PPS-15 Ground Surveillance Radar (GSR); Signals Intelligence—e.g. an intercepted enemy transmission that states the grid coordinates of enemy unit locations, or the plot of two intersecting direction finders (DF); and more. A strict “eyes-on” requirement, while potentially appropriate and necessary in some environments and situations, may unduly tie a commander's hands in others.

A “clearly identified” standard is one alternative. “Clearly identified” could be defined as (1) detection of a target and (2) reliable situational awareness. The first prong requires that the target be detected by some asset. The second prong requires that the commander have reliable situational awareness sufficient to determine that the target is not friendly, protected, or in a location likely to result in disproportionate collateral damage. Specific limits, such as a requirement for "eyes-on" within the previous 24 hours, could be placed on the second prong.

Example: A Q37 radar picks up artillery rounds being fired and fixes the grid coordinate. There are no friendly eyes observing the firing batteries. Under a strict “eyes on” requirement, there could be no return fires until the target was observed. Under a “clearly identified” standard, the target already meets the first requirement of being detected. If, based on reliable situational awareness, the commander knows the fires are originating from an enemy-controlled area forward of the FLOT (forward line of friendly troops) (i.e., not from our own friendly artillery within the scanning zone of the radar), there are no friendly reconnaissance or other special units in the vicinity, and that disproportionate civilian casualties are unlikely to result, the commander could determine that
counter-battery fires should ensue. Higher headquarters can limit the commander's discretion. For instance, they could impose a 24-hour requirement, under which the commander must have had eyes on the target location in the last 24 hours prior to opening fire, so that an accurate collateral damage assessment could be made.

Regardless of the wording or standard chosen, JAs must ensure that the standard is clear. The JA should identify these issues, and consult with higher headquarters or request a ROE clarification.

d. Time: “Stale” Targets

In the international arena, the word “observed” may mean something different than we expect. We usually understand “observed” to mean the target must be observed at or immediately prior to the time of engagement. Some forces interpret “observed” to mean only that someone at some time visually observed the target and therefore had knowledge of the location at some time. This raises the issue of “stale” targets.

The term “observed,” if used, must not only be defined in terms of modes of detection, but also in terms of time. Does it mean the target must be visually seen (“eyes on”) or otherwise detected at the moment of or just prior to engagement? Or does it mean within a set time frame, e.g. the last five minutes for mobile targets, such as convoys, sixty minutes for dismounted troops, a year for fixed buildings, etc.? When defined in terms of time, “observed” targets may grow “stale,” that is, outside the permissible window and therefore not engageable until further observation is made. JAs working in a multinational environment should consult their counterparts and attempt to resolve this and other definition issues.

11. The Inherent Right of Self-Defense

The JCS SROE state:

A commander has the authority and obligation to use all necessary means available and to take all appropriate actions to defend that commander’s
unit and other US forces in the vicinity from a hostile act or demonstration hostile intent.  

These rules [the JCS SROE] do not limit a commander’s inherent authority and obligation to use all necessary means available and to take all appropriate actions in self-defense of the commander’s unit and other US forces in the vicinity.  

No rule of engagement may ever limit this inherent right and obligation.

The JCS SROE and ROE practice are based on unit self-defense, the primary way in which force will be employed. The JCS SROE does recognize that there may be occasions where an individual soldier, or a small group of soldiers, may face a threat that does not necessarily pose a threat to their unit. Accordingly the JCS SROE recognizes the right of individual self-defense with the following:

individual self-defense. The individual’s inherent right of self-defense is an element of unit self-defense. It is critical that individuals are aware of and train to the principle that they have the authority to use all available means and to take all appropriate actions to defend themselves and other US personnel in their vicinity. In the implementation of these SROE and other ROE, commanders have the obligation to ensure that the individuals within that commander’s unit understand when and how they may use force in self-defense. When individuals assigned to a unit respond to a hostile act or demonstrated hostile intent in the exercise of self-defense, their use of force must remain consistent with lawful orders of their superiors, the rules contained in this document, and other applicable rules of engagement promulgated for the mission or AOR [area of responsibility].

---

5 Joint Chiefs of Staff Instruction on Standing Rules of Engagement for US Forces, CJCSI 3121.01A, Encl. A par. 5.a. (15 January 2000).

Judge Advocates, commanders and troops all must develop a sound understanding of this inherent right of self-defense. The JCS SROE explains this concept in detail. See Appendix A: SROE immediately following this chapter.
This Page Intentionally Left Blank
APPENDICES
STANDING RULES OF ENGAGEMENT FOR US FORCES

Reference: See Enclosure M.

1. **Purpose.** This instruction establishes:

   a. SecDef-approved standing rules of engagement (SROE) that implement the inherent right of self-defense and provide guidance for the application of force for mission accomplishment.

   b. Fundamental policies and procedures governing action to be taken by US force commanders during all military operations and contingencies as specified in paragraph 3.

2. **Cancellation.** CJCSI 3121.01, 1 October 1994, is canceled.

3. **Applicability.** ROE apply to US forces during military attacks against the United States and during all military operations, contingencies, and terrorist attacks occurring outside the territorial jurisdiction of the United States. The territorial jurisdiction of the United States includes the 50 states, the Commonwealths of Puerto Rico and Northern Marianas, US possessions, and US territories.

   a. Peacetime operations conducted by the US military within the territorial jurisdiction of the United States are governed by use-of-force rules contained in other directives or as determined on a case-by-case basis for specific missions (see paragraph 4 of Enclosure H and Enclosure I).

   b. Inclusion of NORAD. For purposes of this document, the Commander, US Element NORAD, will be referred to as a CINC.

4. **Policy.** See Enclosure A.
5. **Definitions.** Definitions are contained in the enclosures and the Glossary.

6. **Responsibilities.** The NCA approve ROE for US forces. The Joint Staff, Joint Operations Division (J-3), is responsible for the maintenance of these ROE.

   a. The CINCs may augment these SROE as necessary to reflect changing political and military policies, threats, and missions specific to their areas of responsibility (AORs). When a CINC’s theater-specific ROE modify these SROE, they will be submitted to Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff for NCA approval, if required, and referenced in Enclosure K of this instruction.

   b. Commanders at every echelon are responsible for establishing ROE for mission accomplishment that comply with ROE of senior commanders and these SROE. The SROE differentiate between the use of force for self-defense and for mission accomplishment. Commanders have the inherent authority and obligation to use all necessary means available and to take all appropriate actions in the self-defense of their unit and other US forces in the vicinity. **ROE supplemental measures apply only to the use of force for mission accomplishment and do not limit a commander's use of force in self-defense** (see Enclosure A for amplification).

   c. The two types of supplemental measures are -- those that authorize a certain action and those that place limits on the use of force for mission accomplishment. Some actions or weapons must be authorized either by the NCA or by a CINC. In all other cases, commanders may use any lawful weapon or tactic available for mission accomplishment unless specifically restricted by an approved supplemental measure. Any commander may issue supplemental measures that place limits on the use of force for mission accomplishment (see Enclosure J for amplification).

   d. The CINCs distribute these SROE to subordinate commanders and units for implementation.

7. **Procedures.** Guidance for the use of force for self-defense and mission accomplishment is set forth in this document. Enclosure A, minus appendixes, is UNCLASSIFIED and intended to be used as a coordination tool with US allies for the development of combined or
multinational ROE consistent with these SROE. The supplemental measures list in Enclosure J is organized by authorization level to facilitate quick reference during crisis planning. As outlined in paragraph 6 above, the CINCs will submit theater-specific SROE for reference in this instruction to facilitate theater-to-theater coordination.

8. **Releasability.** This instruction is approved for limited release. DOD components (to include the combatant commands) and other Federal agencies may obtain copies of this instruction through controlled Internet access only (limited to .mil and .gov users) from the CJCS Directives Home Page--http://www.dtic.mil/doctrine/jel.htm. The Joint Staff activities may access or obtain copies of this instruction from the Joint Staff LAN.

9. **Effective Date.** This instruction is effective upon receipt for all US force commanders and supersedes all other nonconforming guidance.

10. **Document Security.** This basic instruction is UNCLASSIFIED. Enclosures are classified as indicated.

HENRY H. SHELTON  
Chairman  
of the Joint Chiefs of Staff

Enclosures:

A -- Standing Rules of Engagement for US Forces
   Appendix A – Self-Defense of US Nationals and Their Property at Sea
   Appendix B – Recovery of US Government Property at Sea
   Appendix C – Protection and Disposition of Foreign Nationals in the Custody of US Forces

B -- Maritime Operations
C -- Air Operations
D -- Land Operations
E -- Space Operations
F -- Information Operations
G -- Noncombatant Evacuation Operations
H -- Counterdrug Support Operations
I -- Domestic Support Operations
APPENDIX A: SROE
CJCSI 3121.01A
15 January 2000

J -- Supplemental Measures
   Appendix A – General Supplemental Measures
   Appendix B – Supplemental Measures for Maritime Operations
   Appendix C – Supplemental Measures for Air Operations
   Appendix D – Supplemental Measures for Land Operations
   Appendix E – Supplemental Measures for Space Operations
   Appendix F – Message Formats and Examples

K -- Combatant Commander’s Theater-Specific ROE

L -- Rules of Engagement Process

M -- References

GL -- Glossary
### RECORD OF CHANGES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change No.</th>
<th>Date of Change</th>
<th>Date Entered</th>
<th>Name of Person Entering Change</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enclosure</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A -- STANDING RULES OF ENGAGEMENT FOR US FORCES</td>
<td>A-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B -- MARITIME OPERATIONS (U)</td>
<td>B-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix A -- Defense of US Nationals and Their Property at Sea (U)</td>
<td>B-A-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix B -- Recovery of US Government Property at Sea (U)</td>
<td>B-B-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix C -- Protection and Disposition of Foreign Nationals in the Custody of US Forces (U)</td>
<td>B-C-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C -- AIR OPERATIONS (U)</td>
<td>C-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D -- LAND OPERATIONS (U)</td>
<td>D-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E -- SPACE OPERATIONS (U)</td>
<td>E-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F -- INFORMATION OPERATIONS (U)</td>
<td>F-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G -- NONCOMBATANT EVACUATION OPERATIONS (U)</td>
<td>G-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H -- COUNTERDRUG SUPPORT OPERATIONS (U)</td>
<td>H-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I -- DOMESTIC SUPPORT OPERATIONS (U)</td>
<td>I-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J -- SUPPLEMENTAL MEASURES (U)</td>
<td>J-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix A -- General Supplemental Measures (U)</td>
<td>J-A-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix B -- Supplemental Measures for Maritime Operations (U)</td>
<td>J-B-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix C -- Supplemental Measures for Air Operations (U)</td>
<td>J-C-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix D -- Supplemental Measures for Land Operations (U)</td>
<td>J-D-1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Enclosure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Appendix</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Appendix E -- Supplemental Measures for Space Operations (U)</td>
<td>J-E-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix F -- Message Formats and Examples (U)</td>
<td>J-F-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K -- COMBATANT COMMANDERS' THEATER-SPECIFIC ROE</td>
<td>K-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L -- RULES OF ENGAGEMENT PROCESS</td>
<td>L-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M -- REFERENCES</td>
<td>M-1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GLOSSARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>--</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Part I</td>
<td>Abbreviations and Acronyms</td>
<td>GL-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part II</td>
<td>Terms and Definitions</td>
<td>GL-5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. **Purpose and Scope**

   a. The purpose of these SROE is to provide implementation guidance on the application of force for mission accomplishment and the exercise of the inherent right and obligation of self-defense. In the absence of superseding guidance, the SROE establish fundamental policies and procedures governing the actions to be taken by US force commanders in the event of military attack against the United States and during all military operations, contingencies, terrorist attacks, or prolonged conflicts outside the territorial jurisdiction of the United States, including the Commonwealths of Puerto Rico and Northern Marianas, US possessions, and US territories. To provide uniform training and planning capabilities, this document is authorized for distribution to commanders at all levels and is to be used as fundamental guidance for training and directing their forces.

   b. Except as augmented by supplemental ROE for specific operations, missions, or projects, the policies and procedures established herein remain in effect until rescinded.

   c. US forces operating with multinational forces:

      (1) US forces assigned to the operational control (OPCON) or tactical control (TACON) of a multinational force will follow the ROE of the multinational force for mission accomplishment if authorized by the NCA. US forces always retain the right to use necessary and proportional force for unit and individual self-defense in response to a hostile act or demonstrated hostile intent.

      (2) When US forces, under US OPCON or TACON, operate in conjunction with a multinational force, reasonable efforts will be made to effect common ROE. If such ROE cannot be established, US forces will operate under these SROE. To avoid misunderstanding, the multinational forces will be informed prior to US participation in the operation that US forces intend to operate under these SROE and to exercise unit and individual self-defense in response to a hostile act or demonstrated hostile intent. For additional guidance concerning peace operations, see Appendix A to Enclosure A.
(3) Participation in multinational operations may be complicated by varying national obligations derived from international agreements; e.g., other coalition members may not be parties to treaties that bind the United States, or they may be bound by treaties to which the United States is not a party. US forces remain bound by US international agreements even if the other coalition members are not parties to these agreements and need not adhere to the terms.

d. Commanders of US forces subject to international agreements governing their presence in foreign countries (e.g., Status of Forces Agreements) retain the inherent authority and obligation to use all necessary means available and take all appropriate actions for unit self-defense.

e. US forces in support of operations not under OPCON or TACON of a US CINC or that are performing missions under direct control of the NCA, Military Departments, or other USG departments or agencies (e.g., Marine Security Guards, certain special security forces) will operate under use-of-force policies or ROE promulgated by those departments or agencies. US forces, in these cases, retain the authority and obligation to use all necessary means available and to take all appropriate actions in unit self-defense in accordance with these SROE.

f. US Naval units under USCG OPCON or TACON conducting law enforcement support operations will follow the use-of-force and weapons policy issued by the Commandant, USCG, but only to the extent of use of warning shots and disabling fire per 14 USC 637 (reference w). DOD units operating under USCG OPCON or TACON retain the authority and obligation to use all necessary means available and to take all appropriate actions in unit self-defense in accordance with these SROE.

g. US forces will comply with the Law of War during military operations involving armed conflict, no matter how the conflict may be characterized under international law, and will comply with its principles and spirit during all other operations.

2. Policy

a. These rules do not limit a commander's inherent authority and obligation to use all necessary means available and to take all appropriate actions in self-defense of the commander's unit and other US forces in the vicinity.
b. The goal of US national security policy is to preserve the survival, safety, and vitality of our nation and to maintain a stable international environment consistent with US national interests. US national security interests guide global objectives of deterring and, if necessary, defeating armed attack or terrorist actions against the United States to include US forces and, in certain circumstances, US nationals and their property, US commercial assets, persons in US custody, designated non-US forces, and foreign nationals and their property.

3. **Intent.** These SROE are intended to:

   a. Implement the right of self-defense, which is applicable worldwide to all echelons of command.
   
   b. Provide guidance governing the use of force consistent with mission accomplishment.
   
   c. Be used in peacetime operations other than war, during transition from peacetime to armed conflict or war, and during armed conflict in the absence of superseding guidance.

4. **CINCs’ Theater-Specific ROE**

   a. CINCs may augment these SROE as necessary as delineated in subparagraph 6a of the basic instruction.
   
   b. CINCs will distribute these SROE to subordinate commanders and units for implementation. The mechanism for disseminating ROE supplemental measures is set forth in Enclosure J.

5. **Definitions**

   a. **Inherent Right of Self-Defense.** A commander has the authority and obligation to use all necessary means available and to take all appropriate actions to defend that commander's unit and other US forces in the vicinity from a hostile act or demonstration of hostile intent. Neither these rules, nor the supplemental measures activated to augment these rules, limit this inherent right and obligation. At all times, the requirements of necessity and proportionality, as amplified in these SROE, will form the basis for the judgment of the on-scene commander (OSC) or individual as to what constitutes an appropriate response to a particular hostile act or demonstration of hostile intent.
b. National Self-Defense. Defense of the United States, US forces, and, in certain circumstances, US nationals and their property, and/or US commercial assets. National self-defense may be exercised in two ways: first, it may be exercised by designated authority extending protection against a hostile act or demonstrated hostile intent to US nationals and their property, and/or designated US commercial assets [in this case, US forces will respond to a hostile act or demonstrated hostile intent in the same manner they would if the threat were directed against US forces]; second, it may be exercised by designated authority declaring a foreign force or terrorist(s) hostile [in this case, individual US units do not need to observe a hostile act or determine hostile intent before engaging that force or terrorist(s)].

c. Collective Self-Defense. The act of defending designated non-US forces, and/or designated foreign nationals and their property from a hostile act or demonstrated hostile intent. Unlike national self-defense, the authority to extend US protection to designated non-US forces, foreign nationals and their property may not be exercised below the NCA level. Similar to unit self-defense and the extension of US forces protection to US nationals and their property and/or commercial assets, the exercise of collective self-defense must be based on an observed hostile act or demonstrated hostile intent.

d. Unit Self-Defense. The act of defending a particular US force element, including individual personnel thereof, and other US forces in the vicinity, against a hostile act or demonstrated hostile intent.

e. Individual Self-Defense. The inherent right to use all necessary means available and to take all appropriate actions to defend oneself and US forces in one’s vicinity from a hostile act or demonstrated hostile intent is a unit of self-defense. Commanders have the obligation to ensure that individuals within their respective units understand and are trained on when and how to use force in self-defense.

f. Elements of Self-Defense. Application of force in self-defense requires the following two elements:

(1) Necessity. Exists when a hostile act occurs or when a force or terrorist(s) exhibits hostile intent.

(2) Proportionality. Force used to counter a hostile act or demonstrated hostile intent must be reasonable in intensity, duration,
and magnitude to the perceived or demonstrated threat based on all facts known to the commander at the time (see Glossary for amplification).

   g. **Hostile Act.** An attack or other use of force against the United States, US forces, and, in certain circumstances, US nationals, their property, US commercial assets, and/or other designated non-US forces, foreign nationals and their property. It is also force used directly to preclude or impede the mission and/or duties of US forces, including the recovery of US personnel and vital US Government property (see Glossary for amplification).

   h. **Hostile Intent.** The threat of imminent use of force against the United States, US forces, and in certain circumstances, US nationals, their property, US commercial assets, and/or other designated non-US forces, foreign nationals and their property. Also, the threat of force to preclude or impede the mission and/or duties of US forces, including the recovery of US personnel or vital USG property (see Glossary for amplification).

   i. **Hostile Force.** Any civilian, paramilitary, or military force or terrorist(s), with or without national designation, that has committed a hostile act, exhibited hostile intent, or has been declared hostile by appropriate US authority.

6. **Declaring Forces Hostile.** Once a force is declared hostile by appropriate authority, US units need not observe a hostile act or a demonstration of hostile intent before engaging that force. The responsibility for exercising the right and obligation of national self-defense and as necessary declaring a force hostile is a matter of the utmost importance. All available intelligence, the status of international relationships, the requirements of international law, an appreciation of the political situation, and the potential consequences for the United States must be carefully weighed. The exercise of the right and obligation of national self-defense by competent authority is separate from and in no way limits the commander’s right and obligation to exercise unit self-defense. The authority to declare a force hostile is limited as amplified in Appendix A of this Enclosure.

7. **Authority to Exercise Self-Defense**

   a. **National Self-Defense.** The authority to exercise national self-defense is outlined in Appendix A of this Enclosure.
b. **Collective Self-Defense.** Only the NCA may authorize the exercise of collective self-defense.

c. **Unit Self-Defense.** A unit commander has the authority and obligation to use all necessary means available and to take all appropriate actions to defend the unit, including elements and personnel, or other US forces in the vicinity, against a hostile act or demonstrated hostile intent. In defending against a hostile act or demonstrated hostile intent, unit commanders will use only that degree of force necessary to decisively counter the hostile act or demonstrated hostile intent and to ensure the continued protection of US forces (see subparagraph 8a of this enclosure for amplification).

d. **Individual Self-Defense.** Commanders have the obligation to ensure that individuals within their respective units are trained on and understand when and how to use force in self-defense.

8. **Action in Self-Defense**

a. **Means of Self-Defense.** All necessary means available and all appropriate actions may be used in self-defense. The following guidelines apply for individual, unit, national, or collective self-defense:

   (1) **Attempt to De-Escalate the Situation.** When time and circumstances permit, the hostile force should be warned and given the opportunity to withdraw or cease threatening actions (see Appendix A of this Enclosure for amplification).

   (2) **Use Proportional Force – Which May Include Nonlethal Weapons -- to Control the Situation.** When the use of force in self-defense is necessary, the nature, duration, and scope of the engagement should not exceed that which is required to decisively counter the hostile act or demonstrated hostile intent and to ensure the continued protection of US forces or other protected personnel or property.

   (3) **Attack to Disable or Destroy.** An attack to disable or destroy a hostile force is authorized when such action is the only prudent means by which a hostile act or demonstration of hostile intent can be prevented or terminated. When such conditions exist, engagement is authorized only while the hostile force continues to commit hostile acts or exhibit hostile intent.
b. Pursuit of Hostile Forces. Self-defense includes the authority to pursue and engage hostile forces that continue to commit hostile acts or exhibit hostile intent.

c. Defending US Nationals, Property, and Designated Foreign Nationals

(1) Within a Foreign Nation’s US-Recognized Territory or Territorial Airspace. The foreign nation has the principal responsibility for defending US nationals and property within these areas (see Appendix A of this Enclosure for amplification).

(2) At Sea. Detailed guidance is contained in Appendix A to Enclosure B.

(3) In International Airspace. Protecting civil aircraft in international airspace is principally the responsibility of the nation of registry. Guidance for certain cases of actual or suspected hijacking of airborne US or foreign civil aircraft is contained in CJCSI 3610.01, 31 July 1997, “Aircraft Piracy and Destruction of Derelict Airborne Objects.”

(4) In Space. Military or civilian space systems such as communication satellites or commercial earth-imaging systems may be used to support a hostile action. Attacking third party or civilian space systems can have significant political and economic repercussions. Unless specifically authorized by the NCA, commanders may not conduct operations against space-based systems or ground and link segments of space systems. Detailed guidance is contained in Enclosure E.

(5) Piracy. US warships and aircraft have an obligation to repress piracy on or over international waters directed against any vessel, or aircraft, whether US or foreign flagged and are authorized to employ all means necessary to repress piratical acts. For ships and aircraft repressing an act of piracy, the right and obligation of self-defense extends to persons, vessels, or aircraft assisted. If a pirate vessel or aircraft fleeing from pursuit proceeds into the territorial sea, archipelagic waters, or superjacent airspace of another country, every effort should be made to obtain the consent of the coastal state prior to continuation of the pursuit.
d. Operations Within or in the Vicinity of Hostile Fire or Combat Zones Not Involving the United States

(1) US forces should not enter, or remain in, a zone in which hostilities (not involving the United States) are imminent or occurring between foreign forces unless directed by proper authority.

(2) If a force commits a hostile act or exhibits hostile intent against US forces in a hostile fire or combat zone, the commander is obligated to act in unit self-defense in accordance with SROE guidelines.

e. Right of Assistance Entry

(1) Ships, or under certain circumstances aircraft, have the right to enter a foreign territorial sea or archipelagic waters and corresponding airspace without the permission of the coastal or island state to engage in legitimate efforts to render emergency assistance to those in danger or distress from perils of the sea.

(2) Right of Assistance Entry extends only to rescues where the location of those in danger is reasonably well known. It does not extend to entering the territorial sea, archipelagic waters, or territorial airspace to conduct a search.

(3) For ships and aircraft rendering assistance on scene, the right and obligation of self-defense extends to and includes persons, vessels, or aircraft being assisted. The right of self-defense in such circumstances does not include interference with legitimate law enforcement actions of a coastal nation. However, once received on board the assisting ship or aircraft, persons assisted will not be surrendered to foreign authority unless directed by the NCA.

(4) Further guidance for the exercise of the right of assistance entry is contained in CJCS Instruction 2410.01A, 23 April 1997, "Guidance for the Exercise of Right of Assistance Entry."
ENCLOSURE K

COMBATANT COMMANDERS’ THEATER-SPECIFIC ROE

1. Purpose and Scope. This enclosure contains a list of effective CJCS AOR-specific ROE provided by the combatant commanders to assist commanders and units participating in operations outside their assigned AORs. CINCs who develop ROE specific to their AOR will provide the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff with a copy of this specific ROE for NCA approval, as necessary, and for inclusion in this enclosure.

2. Policy. The SROE establish the fundamental policies and procedures governing the actions to be taken by US force commanders during all military operations, contingencies, or prolonged conflicts. To provide uniform training and planning capabilities, this document is authorized for distribution to commanders at all levels to be used as the fundamental guidance for training and directing their troops.

3. Intent. These SROE set forth guidance concerning the inherent right of self-defense and provide NCA-level guidance for mission accomplishment. Subordinate commanders will use the supplementals provided in this enclosure to construct refined, tactical-level ROE guidance. If a situation develops that is not covered by any of the supplementals provided in this document, commanders will use the modification guidance delineated in Appendix J to request new supplemental measures that will be defined in an unused supplemental number. Commanders will clearly define the mission requirements and situational needs in the remarks section (paragraph 6) of the request message.

4. Theater-Specific ROE
   a. USCINCACOM. To be issued (TBI).
   c. USCINCEUR. TBI.

e. USCINCSO. TBI.

f. USCINCSPACE. TBI.

g. USCINCSTRAT. TBI.


6. Document Security. This enclosure is UNCLASSIFIED. CINC directives are classified as marked.
ENCLOSURE L

RULES OF ENGAGEMENT PROCESS

1. Purpose and Scope. Developing and implementing effective ROE are critical to mission accomplishment. This enclosure provides guidelines for incorporating ROE development into the crisis action planning (CAP) and deliberate planning processes by commanders and staff at all levels. All supplemental measures not specifically requiring NCA or CINC approval (001-199) are available for use by commanders unless expressly withheld by higher authority.

2. ROE Development

   a. General. ROE are an operational issue and must directly support the operational concept. Once assigned a mission, the commander and staff must incorporate ROE considerations into mission planning. Operations planning and ROE development are parallel and collaborative processes that require extensive integration and may require development and request of supplemental measures requiring NCA or CINC approval for mission accomplishment. The issues addressed throughout the planning process will form the basis for supplemental ROE requests requiring NCA or CINC approval in support of a selected course of action (COA). ROE development is a continuous process that plays a critical role in every step of CAP and deliberate planning. Normally, the Director for Operations (J-3) is responsible for developing ROE during CAP while the Director for Strategic Plans and Policies (J-5) develops ROE for deliberate planning. The Staff Judge Advocate (SJA) assumes the role of principal assistant to the J-3 or J-5 in developing and integrating ROE into operational planning.

   b. Task Steps. The following steps can be used to assist staffs in developing and implementing ROE during planning.

      (1) Mission Analysis

          (a) Review the SROE, including the CINC theater-specific ROE contained in Enclosure K.

          (b) Review supplemental ROE measures already approved by higher headquarters, and determine existing constraints and restraints.
(c) Review higher headquarters planning documents for political, military, and legal considerations that affect ROE. Consider tactical or strategic limitations on the use of force imposed by:

1. Higher headquarters in the initial planning documents.
2. International law, including the UN Charter.
3. US domestic law and policy.
4. HN law and bilateral agreements with the United States.
5. For multinational or coalition operations:
   a. Foreign forces ROE, NATO ROE, or other use of force policies.
   b. UN resolutions or other mission authority.

(d) Desired End State. Assess ROE requirements throughout preconflict, deterrence, conflict, and postconflict phases of an operation. ROE should support achieving the desired end state.

(2) Planning Guidance

(a) Review commander’s planning guidance for considerations affecting ROE development.

(b) Ensure ROE considerations derived from commander’s planning guidance are consistent with those derived from initial planning documents.

(3) Warning Orders. Incorporate instructions for developing ROE in warning orders, as required. Contact counterparts at higher, lower, and adjacent headquarters, and establish the basis for concurrent planning.

(4) COA Development. Determine ROE requirements to support the operational concept of each proposed COA.
(5) COA Analysis

(a) Analyze ROE during the wargaming process. In particular, assess each COA to identify any ROE normally retained by a higher echelon (NCA, CINC) that must be delegated to subordinate commanders. Identify ROE required by decision and decisive points.

(b) Refine ROE to support synchronizing each phase of proposed COAs.

(6) COA Comparison and Selection. Consider ROE during the COA comparison process.

(7) Commander’s Estimate. Identify NCA-level ROE required to support recommended COA.

(8) Preparation of Operations Order (OPORD).

(a) Prepare and submit requests for all supplemental ROE measures in accordance with Enclosure A. Normally, the OPORD should not be used to request supplemental measures.

(b) Prepare the ROE appendix of the OPORD in accordance with CJCSM 3122.03 (JOPES Volume II: Planning Formats and Guidance). The ROE appendix may include supplemental ROE measures that are already approved.

(c) Include guidance for disseminating approved ROE. Consider:

1. Developing “plain language” ROE.
2. Creating ROE cards.
3. Issuing special instructions (SPINS).
4. Distributing ROE to multinational forces or coalitions.
5. Issuing ROE translations (for multinational forces or coalitions).

(9) ROE Request and Authorization Process. Commanders will request and authorize ROE, as applicable, in accordance with Enclosure A of this enclosure.
(10) ROE Control. Commanders and their staffs must continuously analyze ROE and recommend modifications required to meet changing operational parameters. The ROE process must anticipate changes in the operational environment and modify supplemental measures to support the assigned mission.

(a) Ensure that only the most current ROE serial is in use throughout the force.

(b) Catalog all supplemental ROE requests and approvals for ease of reference.

(c) Monitor ROE training.

(d) Modify ROE as required. Ensure that a timely, efficient staff process exists to respond to requests for and authorizations of ROE changes.

3. Establish ROE Planning Cell. Commanders may use a ROE Planning Cell to assist in developing ROE. The following guidelines apply:

a. The J-3 or J-5 is responsible for the ROE Planning Cell and, assisted by the SJA, developing supplemental ROE.

b. ROE are developed as an integrated facet of crisis action and deliberate planning and are a product of the Operations Planning Group (OPG) or Joint Planning Group (JPG), or equivalent staff mechanism.

c. ROE Planning Cell can be established at any echelon to refine ROE derived from the OPG or JPG planning and to produce ROE requests and/or authorizations.

(1) The J-3 or J-5 is responsible for the ROE Cell.

(2) The SJA assists the J-3 and J-5.
ENCLOSURE M

REFERENCES

a. CJCSI 2410.1A, 23 April 1997, "Guidance for the Exercise of Right of Assistance Entry."


c. CJCSI 3110.07A, 15 December 1998, “Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense; Riot Control Agents; and Herbicides.”


e. CJCSI 3150.3, 1 December 1993, "Joint Reporting Structure Event and Incident Reports."

f. CJCSI 3210.01A, 2 January 1996, “Joint Information Warfare Policy.”

g. CJCSI 3210.03, 22 November 1996, “Joint Electronic Warfare Policy.”

h. CJCSI 3250.01, 6 May 1994, "Policy Guidance for Sensitive Airborne and Maritime Surface Reconnaissance Operations."

i. CJCSI 3710.01, 28 May 1993, "Delegation of Authority for Approving Operational Support to Drug Law Enforcement Agencies and Counterdrug-Related Deployment of DOD Personnel."

j. CJCSI 5810.01, 12 August 1996, “Implementation of the DOD Law of War Program.”


l. CJCSI 6510.01B, 22 August 1997, “Defensive Information Operations Implementation.”


p. DOD Instruction 3321.1, 26 July 1984, "Overt Psychological Operations Conducted by the Military Services in Peacetime and in Contingencies Short of Declared War."


s. DOD Directive 1300.7, 23 December 1988, "Training and Education Measures Necessary to Support the Code of Conduct, CH1."


## GLOSSARY

### PART I: ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AOR</td>
<td>area of responsibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWCM*</td>
<td>acoustic warfare countermeasures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWCCM*</td>
<td>acoustic warfare counter-countermeasures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C2</td>
<td>command and control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C2W</td>
<td>command and control warfare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAP</td>
<td>crisis action planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD</td>
<td>counterdrug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CERTSUB*</td>
<td>certain submarine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CI</td>
<td>counterintelligence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CINC</td>
<td>commander of a combatant command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CJCS</td>
<td>Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CJCSI</td>
<td>Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff Instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CJCSM*</td>
<td>Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff Manual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNA*</td>
<td>computer network attack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CND*</td>
<td>computer network defense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COA</td>
<td>course of action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COM</td>
<td>Chief of Mission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DE</td>
<td>directed energy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEW</td>
<td>directed-energy warfare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOD</td>
<td>Department of Defense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOS</td>
<td>Department of State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EA</td>
<td>electronic attack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EAP</td>
<td>Emergency Action Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EEZ</td>
<td>exclusive economic zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMCON</td>
<td>emission control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acronym</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EP</td>
<td>electronic protection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ES</td>
<td>electronic warfare support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EW</td>
<td>electronic warfare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSU*</td>
<td>former Soviet Union</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEN</td>
<td>general service (message)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GCCS</td>
<td>global command and control system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPS</td>
<td>global positioning system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HN</td>
<td>host nation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I and W</td>
<td>indication and warning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA*</td>
<td>information assurance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICAO</td>
<td>International Civil Aviation Organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INCSEA*</td>
<td>incidents at sea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INFOSEC</td>
<td>information security</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IO</td>
<td>information operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IW</td>
<td>information warfare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPG*</td>
<td>joint planning group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEA</td>
<td>law enforcement agencies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEDET</td>
<td>Law Enforcement Detachment (USCG)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LLSO</td>
<td>low-level source operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MERSHIPS*</td>
<td>merchant ships</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MILDEC*</td>
<td>military deception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIO</td>
<td>maritime intercept operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOA</td>
<td>memorandum of agreement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSG</td>
<td>Marine Security Guard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NATO</td>
<td>North Atlantic Treaty Organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCA</td>
<td>National Command Authorities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEO</td>
<td>noncombatant evacuation operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nm</td>
<td>nautical mile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NORAD</td>
<td>North American Aerospace Defense Command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOTAM</td>
<td>notice to airmen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOTMAR</td>
<td>notice to mariners</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPCON</td>
<td>operational control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPG</td>
<td>operations planning group</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**APPENDIX A: SROE**

CJCSI 3121.01A

15 January 2000

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OPLAN</td>
<td>operation plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPORD</td>
<td>operation order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPREP</td>
<td>operational report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPSEC</td>
<td>operations security</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OSC</td>
<td>on-scene commander</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PA</td>
<td>public affairs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PO</td>
<td>peace operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROBSUB*</td>
<td>probable submarine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POSSUB*</td>
<td>possible submarine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSYOP</td>
<td>psychological operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCA</td>
<td>riot control agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROE</td>
<td>rules of engagement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RPV</td>
<td>remotely piloted vehicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCI</td>
<td>sensitive compartmented information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA</td>
<td>selective availability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIGINT</td>
<td>signals intelligence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIO*</td>
<td>special information operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SJA</td>
<td>Staff Judge Advocate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPINS</td>
<td>special instructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SROE</td>
<td>standing rules of engagement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TACON</td>
<td>tactical control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TBI</td>
<td>to be issued</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCN</td>
<td>third country national</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UAV</td>
<td>unmanned aerial vehicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UN</td>
<td>United Nations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USCG</td>
<td>US Coast Guard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USCINCACOM</td>
<td>Commander in Chief, US Atlantic Command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USCINCENT</td>
<td>Commander in Chief, US Central Command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USCINCEUR</td>
<td>US Commander in Chief, Europe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USCINCPAC</td>
<td>Commander in Chief, US Pacific Command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USCINCSO</td>
<td>Commander in Chief, US Southern Command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USCINCSOC</td>
<td>Commander in Chief, US Special Operations Command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USCINCSPACE</td>
<td>Commander in Chief, US Space Command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USCINCSTRAT</td>
<td>Commander in Chief, US Strategic Command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USCINCTRANS</td>
<td>Commander in Chief, US Transportation Command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USELEMNORAD</td>
<td>US Element North American Aerospace Defense Command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USG</td>
<td>US Government</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WARM</td>
<td>wartime reserve mode</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

These are examples only. Inclusion in this Appendix does not constitute endorsement. Always check your mission-specific ROE prior to drafting and issuing ROE products. Note: These ROE were drafted prior to publication of the new JCS SROE dated 15 January 2000.

Included Sample ROE Annexes:

B-1 XVIII Abn Corps FSOP Annex F (Rules of Engagement)  
(Good example of RAMP and ROECON concepts)
B-2 82d Airborne Division Warfighter Exercise ROE
B-3 1st Infantry Division ROE Annex Template  
(Uses RAMP concept)
B-4 1st Infantry Division Exercise ROE  
(A detailed annex)
B-5 1st Armored Division High Intensity Conflict Exercise ROE
B-6 1st Armored Division Exercise ROE
B-7 1st Cavalry Division Standing ROE (6 APR 1998)  
(Good example of use of matrices)
B-8 101st Airborne (Air Assault) Division Mini-Exercise ROE
B-9 26th MEU (SOC) Standing Operations Order ROE Annex  
(Marines)
B-10 JTF-160 (Operation Sea Signal) Sample ROE Annex  
(Haitian migrant camp operations 1994)
B-11 Operation Provide Comfort ROE Annex (Iraq 1991)
B-12 Sample ROE Authorization Serial
B-13 Multinational Force Observer Mission ROE (Sinai)
B-14 Bosnia-UNPROFOR ROE
B-15 NTC Sample Training ROE: ANNEX E (RULES OF ENGAGEMENT (ROE)) TO 52 ID (M) OPLAN 99-09-01
B-16 JRTC Sample Training ROE: ANNEX E (RULES OF ENGAGEMENT) to OPERATION ORDER 00----21st ID (L)
Annex F (Rules of Engagement) TO XVIII Airborne Corps FSOP

1. References:
   a. FM 100-5, Operations (June 93) (pages 2-3 to 2-4, describing "Disciplined Operations").
   c. DOD Directive 5100.77, 10 Jul 79, DOD Law of War Program.
   d. FM 27-100, Legal Operations (Date TBD) (Chapter 7, Rules of Engagement).
   e. CJCS Memorandum 59-83, 1 Jun 83, Implementation of the DOD Law of War Program.
   f. CJCSI 3121.01, Dec 94, Standing Rules of Engagement (CJCS SROE) for U.S. Forces, Classified Secret.
   g. XVIII Airborne Corps and Fort Bragg Reg. 350-41, Chapter 22, RAMP/Rules of Engagement (ROE) Training (Ch 1, 5 Mar 97).
   h. XVIII Airborne Corps Joint Task Force SOP, Annex I (Rules of Engagement) (1 Dec 96).

2. Purpose. This annex defines Rules of Engagement (ROE), explains their purpose and sources, and sets forth responsibilities for their drafting, supplementation, and dissemination. It establishes a system by which the Commander of a task force organized from this Corps, or a joint task force, can quickly and clearly convey to subordinate units a desired posture regarding use of force.

3. Definitions.
   a. Rules of Engagement. Directives issued by competent military authority which delineate the circumstances and limitations under which United States forces will initiate and/or continue combat engagement with other forces encountered.

   b. Self-Defense. Every soldier and commander has the authority and obligation to use all necessary means available and to take all appropriate action to defend themselves and their unit and other U.S. forces in the vicinity from a hostile act or demonstrated hostile intent. Neither these rules, nor the supplemental measures activated to augment these rules, limit this inherent right...
and obligation. At all times, however, the requirements of necessity and proportionality will be the basis for the judgment of the commander as to what constitutes an appropriate response to a particular hostile act or demonstration of hostile intent.

c. Hostile Act. A hostile act is an attack or other use of force by a foreign force or terrorist unit against the United States, U.S. forces, and in certain circumstances, U.S. citizens, their property, U.S. commercial assets, and other designated non-U.S. forces, foreign nationals and their property. It is also force used directly to preclude or impede the mission and/or duties of U.S. forces, including the recovery of U.S. personnel and vital U.S. Government property. When a hostile act is in progress, the right exists to use proportional force, including armed force, in self-defense by all necessary means available to deter or neutralize the potential attacker or, if necessary, to destroy the threat.

d. Hostile Intent. Hostile intent is the threat of imminent use of force by a foreign force or terrorist unit against U.S. forces, and in certain circumstances, U.S. citizens, their property, U.S. commercial assets, and other designated non-U.S. forces, foreign nationals and their property.

   (1) When hostile intent is present, the right exists to use proportional force, including armed force, in self-defense by all necessary means available to deter or neutralize the potential attacker or, if necessary, to destroy the threat.

   (2) The determination of hostile intent requires that commanders use all available information. Intelligence, politico-military factors, and technological capabilities require the commander to consider a wide range of criteria in determining the existence of hostile intent. No list of indicators can substitute for the commander’s judgment.


   a. Basis of ROE. ROE are drawn from the CJCS SROE (see reference f), Unified Commands, mission, commander’s intent, intelligence, Law of War, U.S. Policy, and domestic law.
b. RAMP ROE training is based on the self-defense principles contained in the CJCS SROE. This training, along with familiarization with the ROE conditions (Reopens) periodically announced by the Task Force Commander, provide the framework for training and disseminating real world ROE. The individual soldier's RAMP training, as supplemented by the ROECONs system, is the baseline for the development of ROE annexes.

c. The principles discussed in this annex apply equally to a Corps task force or a joint task force. Any reference to joint terms should be interpreted to apply to a strictly Army operation also.

5. Objectives.

a. This triangular ROE structure (RAMP, ROECONs, ROE Annexes) has three objectives:

   (1) Soldiers and units will employ an appropriate mix of initiative and restraint during operations other than war;

   (2) Soldiers and units will make a rapid transition to combat operations on identification of a hostile force;

   (3) Soldiers and units will operate aggressively and with discipline during combat operations.

b. A task force can accomplish these objectives only if the commander conveys clear instructions on use of force. The commander conveys clear instructions by transmitting rules to soldiers in terms of RAMP, by transmitting recurring instructions to subordinate unit leaders in terms of ROECONs, and by ensuring that mission-specific instructions in ROE annexes follow a format that builds on these two mechanisms.


a. The Task Force Commander will order into effect one of the ROECONs specified in the Tab to this Appendix. There are three "default" ROECONs:
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

(1) ROECON GREEN. Applies when no discernible threat of hostile activity exists. This condition places the force in a routine security posture. Due to the nature of the immediate mission (typically a training exercise or staging operations conducted in a stable host nation), such a posture will involve minimal arming, and protection only of the force and of key facilities. The commander may order into effect certain rules or measures from a higher ROECON to create deterrence or to respond to incomplete intelligence received. Soldiers generally operate under the standing RAMP principles.

(2) ROECON AMBER. Applies when there is a discernible threat of hostile activity, but not a threat justifying ROECON RED. Although intelligence may indicate additional hostility criteria to supplement the "A-Anticipate" principle of the soldiers' RAMP, ROECON AMBER generally does not apply to situations in which higher headquarters have formally identified a hostile force. ROECON AMBER provides for arming of additional key United States personnel, establishment of roadblocks or barriers on high speed approaches into United States positions, security patrols, other measures to enhance perimeter security, and increased availability of ordinance. The commander may order into effect certain rules or measures from a higher ROECON to create deterrence or to respond to incomplete intelligence received.

(3) ROECON RED. Applies when an actual attack on United States forces occurs, a threat of imminent attack exists, or higher headquarters has formally identified a hostile force in theater. ROECON RED directs the force to continue the protection measures detailed in the lower ROECOns, while arming all personnel and lowering levels of approval authority on certain weapons systems. Leaders supplement the soldiers' RAMP by providing specific hostility criteria or by identifying the hostile force designated by higher headquarters to assist in implementing the "A-Anticipate" principle.

b. Division, brigade, battalion, and separate company commanders may find it necessary to add or delete measures in effect for a particular ROECON status to meet the unique requirements of a tactical setting. A written set of rules cannot be provided that will apply to every situation. The decision on the ROECON in effect and on whether specific rules or measures will be added to or deleted from a ROECON
will be at the discretion of the senior tactical commander present. This commander will consider the mission and the situation in making the ROECON determination, and will notify higher headquarters as soon as possible if the ROECON deemed appropriate differs from that ordered by the higher Commander.

c. Under all ROECONs, the commander retains the inherent right and responsibility to defend his unit. The standing RAMP principles that define soldiers' authority to defend themselves also apply to the actions that a commander takes in unit self-defense.

7. Concept of ROE Development. The G-3 has primary staff responsibility for production of the ROE. Effective and responsive ROE, however, require the direct involvement of the entire staff, and in particular, the Staff Judge Advocate (SJA). The Joint Rules of Engagement (JROE) Planning Cell and the JROE Principal Cell are the vehicles used by XVIII Airborne Corps when serving as a JTF to produce the ROE. This method of ROE development applies whether the Corps is functioning as a JTF, a Corps or the ARFOR. Any reference to CJTF should be read to mean the CG of XVIII Airborne Corps, no matter what hat he is wearing.


(1) During crisis action planning, J7 will stand up the JROE Planning Cell upon initiation of the COA development phase of the staff planning process. Each COA development team will have a JROE Planning Cell. The J7 representative within each COA development cell will chair the JROE Planning Cell for their COA. Each JROE Planning Cell will consist of representatives from the following functions, plus any additional representatives deemed appropriate by the J7: J2, J3, J5, J7, SJA, and LNOs.

(2) The JROE Planning Cell will meet at the conclusion of each COA development planning session, but no less than once per day. These meetings will identify critical ROE issues associated with the COA under development. The issues identified by the JROE Planning Cell will be incorporated into all COA briefings as "COA ROE ISSUES."

(3) The principal function of the JROE Planning Cell during COA development is to develop the rules
necessary to support the proposed COA. Within the proposed ROE, the JROE Planning Cell must identify those rules that are vital to the COA, i.e., without which the COA cannot be accomplished; those rules that are serious, i.e., without which the COA would be seriously degraded or jeopardized; and those rules that are considered necessary, i.e., without which the COA might be impeded.

(4) The JROE Planning Cells must ensure that ROE development and subsequent training on the approved mission-specific ROE build upon the core training base in RAMP and ROECONs.

(5) Prior to the COA selection brief, the JROE Principals Cell will issue appropriate guidance to the JROE Planning Cells and confirm the designation of critical, serious, and necessary ROE. The JROE Principals Cell will consist of the CofS, J3, J2, J5, J7, SJA, and such other principals as designated by the J3.

(6) Upon selection of a COA, a single JROE Planning Cell chaired by the J7 will continue to refine ROE issues with COA refinement. The JROE Planning Cell will brief the JROE Principal Cell prior to the Oplan brief. The JROE Principal Cell will address any outstanding issues, issue necessary guidance, and confirm remaining ROE issues to be briefed and their designation as vital, serious, or necessary.

(7) Oplan approval terminates the JROE Planning Cell. The JROE Principals Cell assumes responsibility for ROE development and supplementation after Oplan approval. The JROE Planning Cell will be reconstituted at the outset of additional COA, branch, or sequence development. This function of the JROE Planning Cell can be accomplished during regularly scheduled BMCs.

b. Except as modified by NCA, or responsible CINC, the CJCS SROE, as implemented in XVIII Airborne Corps through RAMP/ROE training, are in effect throughout all phases of all operations.

8. Responsibilities.

a. The JROE Planning Cells are responsible for:

(1) Drafting the ROE.
(2) Coordinating initial drafts of the ROE with components and the responsible CINC.

(3) Producing the final ROE for inclusion in the OPLAN.

b. Commanders will ensure their forces know, understand, and follow the ROE.

c. Commanders will review the CJCS SROE in preparation for operations. Commanders will further ensure their subordinates are familiar with the CJCS SROE.

d. Commanders will submit timely requests for supplemental ROE, through their chain-of-command, when ROE changes are warranted to support courses of action or as the situation dictates. Requests for supplemental ROE measures will conform to the format prescribed in Appendix E to Enclosure B of Ref f. See paragraph 9 below for the proper processing of supplemental requests.

e. Commanders are responsible for dissemination and enforcement of the ROE.

f. If component commanders prepare ROE cards, they will submit them to CJTF for review and approval prior to issue.

g. All alleged or reported violations of the Law of Armed Conflict or the ROE, whether by U.S. or opposing forces, will be reported by OPREP 3 procedures through the chain-of-command to CJTF for investigation.

h. The CJTF must approve all ROE prior to publication.

9. Processing Requests for Supplemental ROE.

a. ROE requests and authorizations must be numbered as follows "One," not with the numeral "1."

b. Components will identify their ROE requests as "ROE Serial Request __." For example, a NAVFOR ROE request should be titled "NAVFOR ROE Request One." If the request is approved, it will be titled "JTF 780 ROE Authorization __ (whatever the next consecutive authorization number)."
c. Identify JTF ROE requests to the CINC as “JTF 780
ROE Request One.” Identify JTF authorizations to the
components as “JTF 780 ROE Authorization One.”

d. Neither JTF ROE requests nor higher headquarters’
authorization/denial messages to the JTF will be placed in
the news groups median for components to access. The only
ROE serial number the components will see is the JTF
authorization serial number.

e. The JOC/Corps Main will issue ROE authorization
messages as stand alone messages and not as part of a
FRAGO.

f. The judge advocate in the JOC/Corps Main will
maintain two binders for managing ROE requests and
authorizations: one for component ROE requests to the JTF
and JTF ROE authorization messages to the components, and a
separate binder for JTF ROE requests to the CINC with the
CINC’s ROE authorization messages to the JTF.

g. The judge advocate in the JOC/Corps Main will
create a computer directory on the "share" or "S" drive
called “ROE.” There will be two sub-directories called
“Req” and “Auth.” Under the “Request” sub-directory there
will be two sub-directories called “compon (components)”
and “JTF.” Under the “Auth” sub-directory there will be
two sub-directories called “JTF” and “CINC.”

h. Do not accept component requests for supplemental
ROE in the form of a Request for Information, or "RFI."

10. OPERATIONS SECURITY. Consistent with Annex C,
Appendix 3 (Operations Security), to this FSOP, the ROECON
in effect (GREEN, AMBER, RED) will be classified at least
SECRET. The commander will order random measures into
effect as necessary to create uncertainty in the minds of
potential terrorists or other hostile forces planning
attacks on United States forces.
1. ROECON GREEN MEASURES.

Measure 1. Inform all task force personnel that the standing RAMP principles are in effect. See references f and g to this Annex. Conduct sustainment training in RAMP on 5 to 7 scenarios from reference g to this Annex that most closely match the situation facing the task force. Supplement the "P-Protect" principle by designating all sensitive property to be protected with the entire scale of force, including, if necessary, aimed shots to kill.

Measure 2. Issue live ammunition only to the Command Group, Military Police Detachment, and Aviators on flight status.

Measure 3. Establish a restricted area of at least 50 meters in width (approximate hand grenade range) around any United States facility or aircraft.

Measure 4. Establish a physical barrier around the task force Tactical Operations Center (TOC) and SCIF in accordance with the Command Post configuration overlay contained in the FSOP. Place this area under guard of the military police detachment.

Measure 5. Minimize the number of access points for vehicles and personnel, consistent with the requirement to maintain a flow of traffic permitting accomplishment of daily missions.

Measure 6. Remind soldiers that, although they must remain vigilant at all times for suspicious or hostile activity in accordance with the "A-Anticipate Attack" principle in RAMP, they should minimize the display of weapons.

Measure 7. Establish liaison with local police, intelligence, and security agencies as well as coalition forces to monitor the threat to task force personnel and facilities. Notify these agencies and forces concerning the ROECON AMBER measures that, if implemented, could impact on their operations.

Measure 8. Keep all personnel on recall time limits to unit areas that are no longer than those for the Division Ready Force 1 in the Division Readiness SOP (RSOP).

Measure 9. Place quick reaction forces on two-hour recall.
Measure 10. Permit physical training (running) by task force personnel around task force compounds, restricted areas, and command posts.

Measure 11. Any fire by Task Force personnel will be observed by one or more human or electronic "eyes." Observed fire includes shots aimed by a soldier using any direct fire weapon system, indirect fire called for by a forward observer with eyes on target, indirect counter-battery fire directed by Q36 or Q37 radar, helicopter gunship fire directed either by a pilot with eyes on the target or by a forward air controller (FAC) with eyes on target. This measure is not an independent source of authority to fire. RAMP must be observed.

Measure 12. Spare.
Measure 13. Spare.
Measure 15. Spare.

2. ROECON AMBER MEASURES.
Measure 16. Inform soldiers of any hostility criteria arising out of the discernible threat activity. "Walk soldiers up" the RAMP factors, showing how intelligence pertaining to the threat--that is, potential grenade or car bomb attack--supplements the "A-Anticipate Attack" principle. Conduct sustainment training in RAMP on at least five scenarios that most closely match the new situation.

Measure 17. Issue each member of the task force his basic load of small arms ammunition.

Measure 18. Issue air defense missiles to gunners. Weapons control status is (weapons hold/weapons tight/weapons free) (select one depending on situation).

Measure 19. Issue all other items of ammunition to the Military Police Detachment Commander or Infantry unit commanders for integration into the ground defensive plan.

Measure 20. Direct that all personnel on perimeter security and guards at entrance points to task force compounds, restricted areas, and command posts will have magazines in their weapons, with chambers empty, and selector switches on safe.

Measure 21. Direct that all other personnel will retain magazines loaded in ammunition pouches with the
remainder of the basic load stored in rucksacks per unit SOPs. Weapons will be on safe, chambers will be empty.

Measure 22. Increase the restricted area around task force facilities to not less than 300 meters (the approximate range of light rockets).

Measure 23. Create roadblocks and other barriers to block high-speed avenues of approach into task force positions.

Measure 24. Prepare bunkers and fighting positions as necessary.

Measure 25. Establish direct communication links with local police, intelligence, and security agencies as well as coalition forces to monitor the threat to task force personnel and facilities. Such links may include stringing dedicated landlines, exchange of liaison officers, entry into radio nets, etc. Notify these agencies and forces concerning the ROECNON RED measures that, if implemented, could impact on their operations.

Measure 26. Place all personnel on two-hour recall.

Measure 27. Place quick reaction forces on 15-minute recall.

Measure 28. Spare.

Measure 29. Spare.

3. ROECON RED MEASURES.

Measure 30. Inform soldiers of any hostility criteria arising out of threat attacks or activity. If applicable, identify any hostile forces designated by higher headquarters. "Walk soldiers up" the RAMP factors, showing how any new intelligence RAMP up pertaining to the threat supplements the "A-Anticipate Attack" principle. Remind soldiers that while they may shoot identified hostile forces on sight, the standing RAMP principles continue to dictate handling of civilians, prisoners, and casualties. Conduct sustainment training in RAMP on at least five scenarios that most closely match the new situation.

Measure 31. Subordinate leaders as well as soldiers will make judgments using RAMP on when to chamber rounds or otherwise prepare weapons for firing.

Measure 32. Recall all personnel to unit areas or positions.
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

Measure 33. Alert quick reaction forces and place on 5-minute standby.

Measure 34. Direct subordinate leaders that, subject to any territorial restrictions in applicable operations plans or orders, pursuit of hostile forces is authorized as necessary to permit mission accomplishment and conform to RAMP.

Measure 35. Spare.
Measure 36. Spare.
Measure 37. Spare.
82d Airborne Division Warfighter Exercise ROE

This ROE Annex was published by the 18th Airborne Corps for use by the 82d Airborne during its WFX Exercise.

ANNEX E (RULES OF ENGAGEMENT) TO XVIII AIRBORNE CORPS OPORD 98-3 DRAGON STRIKE (U)

(U) REFERENCES:

a. CJCS Instruction 3121.01, Standing Rules of Engagement for U.S. Forces, Dec. 94.

b. DOD Directive 5100.77, DOD Law of War Program, 10 Jul 79.


e. DA Pam 27-1, Treaties Governing Land Warfare, Dec 56.


i. AR 190-14, Carrying of Firearms and Use of Force for Law Enforcement and Security Duties (12 Mar 93).


k. XVIII Abn Corps and Fort Bragg Reg. 350-41, Chapter 22, RAMP/Rules of Engagement (ROE) Training (9 Dec 96), Change 1 (5 Mar 97).

1. JCSI 3110.07A, Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense: Riot Control Agents; and Herbicides (1 August 1997).

1. (U) SITUATION.

a. (U) General. United Nations Security Council Resolution 1234, acting under the authority of Chapter VII, has authorized member states to "use all necessary means to maintain control of air and sea LOC's and to deter NORTHLAND aggression against SOUTHLAND AND U.S. interests."

b. (U) Enemy. See Annex B, Intelligence. No forces have been designated hostile forces by higher headquarters; however, any identification of uniforms and vehicle markings of NORTHLAND regular armed forces should be considered hostility criteria within the "A-Anticipate" rule of RAMP.

c. (U) Friendly. See basic OPORD.

   (1) (U) Higher Headquarters ROE. The JTF 108 Rules of Engagement are completely compatible with the RAMP/ROECONS/ROE Annex structure that ARFOR uses.

   (2) (U) Adjacent Units ROE. CTF Marine will implement the ARFOR ROE using their own ROE Annex structure.

2. (U) MISSION. To provide Rules of Engagement (ROE) to achieve the ARFOR mission that comply with the guidance and supplemental measures directed by the National Command Authority (NCA) and the requirements of the law of armed conflict (LOAC). NOTHING IN THESE ROE LIMIT AN INDIVIDUAL'S RIGHT TO SELF-DEFENSE OR A UNIT LEADER'S OBLIGATION TO CONDUCT UNIT SELF-DEFENSE.

3. (U) EXECUTION.

a. (U) Concept of Operation.

   (1) (U) Phase I (Deployment/FDOs). The Corps deploys to AOR. ROECON AMBER. Supplement RAMP training with "A" (Anticipate Attack) to emphasize recognition of NORTHLAND Special Purpose Forces (SPF).
(2) (U) Phase II (Set Conditions for Offense). ROECON RED, with following supplement: NORTHLAND have now been declared hostile by the NCA. Supplement RAMP training to emphasize that the hostility criteria of "A" (Anticipate Attack), no longer applies to NORTHLAND forces -- they may be engaged on sight with any Corps weapons system. Hostility criteria of "A", however, still applies to civilians in the ARFOR AOR.

(3) (U) Phase III (Decisive Combat Operations). ROECON RED. NORTHLAND Forces are still hostile and may be engaged on sight.

(4) (U) Phase IV (Transition). ROECON RED. NORTHLAND Forces are still hostile and may be engaged on sight.

(5) (U) Phase V (Redeployment). ROECON AMBER. Supplement RAMP training with "A" (Anticipate Attack) to emphasize recognition of NORTHLAND SPF.

b. (U) Tasks.


(2) (U) Aviation. Observe territorial constraints depicted in Annex O (Airspace Command and Control).

(3) (U) Fire Support. Observe no-strike/protected target list prepared by the Joint Force Fires Coordinator (JFFC). XVIII Airborne Corps JTF Headquarters SOP, Chapter 4 (1 Dec 96).

(4) (U) Riot Control Agents (RCA). The Commander, Task Force All American, has authority to use RCAs in the following situations:

i. In riot control situations in areas under direct and distinct United States military control, to include controlling rioting prisoners of war;

ii. Where civilians are used to mask or screen attacks and civilian casualties can be reduced or avoided;
iii. In rescue missions in remotely isolated areas, of
downed air crews and passengers, and escaping prisoners;

iv. In rear echelon areas outside the zone of
immediate combat to protect convoys from civil
disturbances, terrorists, and paramilitary organizations;
and

v. In security operations regarding the protection
or recovery of nuclear weapons.

(5) (U) Mines. See Annex F (Engineer) for
approval authority matrix. Generally, all mine systems
currently used by XVIII Airborne Corps units comply with
U.S. and International Law, subject to the following
limitations:

i. Remotely delivered mines (e.g., FASCAM; mines
delivered from a land-based system from less than 500
meters are not considered to be "remotely delivered.") can
only be used in areas that are military objectives. They
must be either capable of having their location accurately
recorded or contain a self-actuating or remotely-controlled
mechanism that renders the weapon harmless when it no
longer serves a military purpose.

ii. Non-remotely delivered mines being used in populated
areas outside the combat zone are prohibited unless
employing forces either:

   (i) place the mines near a military objective
   belonging to or under the control of one of the adverse
   parties, or

   (ii) take protective measures for the benefit of
   nearby civilians (e.g., fencing, signs, warning and
   monitoring).

iii. Command detonated anti-personnel weapons are
not considered anti-personnel landmines under the
Conventional Weapons Convention, Protocol II.

c. (U) Coordinating Instructions.

(1) (U) All units conduct RAMP sustainment
training, with particular emphasis on the handling of
NORTHLAND civilians attempting to interfere with operations
or threatening U.S. Forces. Training scenarios should focus on "A" (Anticipate Attack) and "M" (Measure the amount of force you use). The role players should gradually escalate the resistance/harassment of the training soldiers.

(2) (U) NORTHLAND civilians may be temporarily detained if they appear to be a threat to U.S. Forces, key facilities, or mission-essential property. Civilians may be detained as long as needed to determine whether they are a threat. If they are determined to be a threat, they may be further detained. If not, they will be released. While NORTHLAND civilians have not been declared hostile, soldiers may use all force necessary, up to and including deadly force, to protect themselves, members of their unit, and mission essential property. Soldiers will apply RAMP principles when confronting any unidentifiable individual.

4. (U) SERVICE SUPPORT. Basic OPORD.

5. (U) COMMAND AND SIGNAL. Basic OPORD.
1st Infantry Division ROE Annex Template

REFERENCES

a. CJCSI 3121.01, “Standing Rules of Engagement for U.S. Forces” (Portions of the document are classified; the title is not), 1 Oct 94.


e. 1 I.D. Supplement 1 to UR 27-8, “Law of War Program”, 1 Jun 98.


g. DA Pam 27-1, “Treaties Governing Land Warfare”, 7 Dec 56.


1. SITUATION. See base order. 1 I.D. soldiers are faced with both identifiable forces declared hostile, and with unidentifiable paramilitary or partisan forces of all ethnicities indistinguishable from the indigenous population. The threat is not clearcut, and may come from any person at any time.

2. MISSION. See base order. 1 I.D. soldiers must react to diverse threats under diverse circumstances with appropriate force through the duration of the deployment.

3. EXECUTION.

   a. Hostile Forces. The Frankonian Regular Army (FRA), Frankonian Police Force (FPF), and paramilitary civilian units of Frankonia are declared hostile. They may be attacked using all means available consistent with the Law of War contained in the references above and consistent
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

with the training received on the Law of War. The 1 I.D. Commander is authorized to declare other identifiable forces as hostile. See the soldier’s rules at E – 4.

b. Hostile Act / Hostile Intent. Anticipate that individuals of both predominant ethnic groups who are not identifiable as members of a hostile force may attack U.S./friendly forces. While civilians are normally immune from attack, they forfeit this immunity whenever they take any action intended to cause actual harm to the personnel and equipment of U.S./friendly forces. 1 I.D. soldiers may target civilians when they take part in hostilities against U.S./friendly forces. Whether or not a person(s) aggressing against U.S./friendly forces is a member of a force declared hostile, nothing in these ROE prevent or limit a commander’s right and duty to take all necessary and appropriate action for his unit’s self-defense, or defense of persons and areas under his protection against hostile acts or hostile intent. Nothing in these ROE infringe on the right of a soldier to exercise self-defense for himself or for other U.S./friendly forces. Use the minimum necessary force, up to and including deadly force, as the situation dictates. See the R-A-M-P guidance at E – 5.

(1) Hostile Act (defined): Force is being used against you or other protected persons that could result in death, serious bodily harm, or destruction of protected property.

(2) Hostile Intent (defined): Actions which indicate a clear intent to commit a hostile act.

(3) Minimum Force (defined): That force not otherwise prohibited by international law or these ROE, which is reasonably necessary and militarily prudent to accomplish the assigned mission. Measures reasonably necessary and militarily prudent depend on the circumstances and the exact mission. Examples of necessary and militarily prudent force exist on a continuum and are contained in the V-E-W-P-R-I-K guidance at E-5.

c. Belligerent Forces.

(1) Combatant. To meet the definition of “combatant”, the person must meet four criteria: 1) They must be commanded by a responsible person; 2) They must
wear a fixed distinctive sign recognizable at a distance; 3) They must carry arms openly; and 4) They must comply with the Law of War. Combatants who engage in hostile acts or demonstrate hostile intent against U.S./friendly forces will be treated as hostile forces. When these forces are captured, they are entitled to prisoner of war status under the Geneva Convention. When there is doubt whether these criteria have been met, V Corps will convene an Article V tribunal for the purpose of determining status. S2s will ensure that the circumstances surrounding capture are well documented and that such documentation both stays with the capturing unit and accompanies the Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) through the collection process. Use the Standard NATO Agreement (STANAG) 2044 or some facsimile capture tag for such documentation.

(2) Other Belligerent Forces. It is likely that 1 I.D. forces will encounter belligerent forces who do not qualify as combatants. If these forces are committing hostile acts or demonstrating hostile intent against U.S./friendly forces, they will be treated as hostile forces. If these forces are captured they should be disarmed and detained. The detaining unit will not make a status determination. The detaining unit will treat all detained persons as if they were bonafide EPWs. Field interrogations for items of immediate tactical value may be made of cooperative (willingly forthcoming) and neutral (impartially forthcoming) EPWs, but not of hostile (not forthcoming) EPWs.

d. Non-belligerent Forces. 1 I.D. soldiers may use the minimum necessary force to detain unauthorized persons from entering designated or restricted areas or who are preventing us from carrying out our duties or obstructing the mission. Suspicious persons may be stopped and searched. Do not use force solely to punish anyone. Treat all persons, including detainees, with dignity and respect.

e. General.

(1) The ROE are subject to change with circumstances. Commanders must be attuned to changes and respond appropriately, ensuring that changes are conveyed to soldiers.

(2) Where commanders perceive shortcomings or inadequacies in the ROE, they are encouraged to submit
requested changes which will be sent higher to the appropriate level for approval. ROE cannot be changed without coordination from higher. Only higher authority may make ROE less restrictive; subordinate commanders may make them more restrictive.

(3) U.S. forces in support of operations within the 1 I.D. AOR not under operational or tactical control of a combatant commander or who are performing missions under direct control of NCA, Military Departments, or other U.S. Departments/Agencies (i.e. Marine security guards or certain protective service detachments or special security guards) will operate under use of force or ROE promulgated by those departments/agencies.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT.

a. JAs will review all policies, plans, orders, target lists, and procedures concerning the conduct of military operations to ensure consistency with applicable U.S. and international law where the tactical situation permits.

b. The SJA directly advises the Commanding General, Command Group, and primary staff. The Operational and International Law JA located at D Main will advise on any issue regarding these ROE.

c. Any Law of War violation is a category 1 Serious Incident Report, and must be reported to DMAIN immediately.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL. See base order.
IN MILITARY OPERATIONS AGAINST A DECLARED HOSTILE FORCE,
REMEMBER THE SOLDIER'S RULES FOR COMBAT:

[From Common Task 181-906-1505]

1. FRA, FPF, and Frankonian paramilitary units are declared hostile forces. Engage hostile forces unless they are surrendering or out of combat due to sickness or injury.
2. Engage all others whom are committing hostile acts or demonstrating hostile intent against U.S./friendly forces.
   a. Hostile Act (defined): Force is being used against you or other protected persons that could result in death, serious bodily harm, or destruction of protected property.
   b. Hostile Intent (defined): Actions which indicate a clear intent to commit a hostile act.
3. You always have the right to use force in self-defense.
4. Detain non-hostile persons who are preventing U.S./friendly forces from carrying out duties or are obstructing the mission. Treat all detainees as EPWs.
5. Safeguard enemies who surrender – disarm them and turn them over to your superior.
6. Collect and care for the wounded, whether friendly or foe.
7. Do not attack medical facilities, personnel, or equipment.
8. Treat all civilians humanely.
9. Destroy no more than the mission requires. Respect private property and possessions. Do not take war trophies.
IN MILITARY OPERATIONS WHERE ENCOUNTERED PERSONS ARE NOT KNOWN TO BE PART OF A DECLARED HOSTILE FORCE

“R-A-M-P”

Standing Rules for Use of Force for Individual Soldiers
Training Aid to Be Used With Situational Training Vignettes

Task
Use Force Appropriately

Conditions
Given a non-combat but potentially hostile situation in which your unit is deployed to promote stability, provide security to aid humanitarian relief efforts, assist civil authorities, and protect United States interests.

Standards
1. Defend yourself and members of your unit with initiative. Attack identified hostile force with confidence and aggressiveness using combined arms.
2. Apply all levels of force only when necessary.
3. Apply an amount of force proportionate to each threat encountered.
4. Transition appropriately to a combat situation when ordered to do so by your chain of command.

Performance Measures
When facing a potential threat, exercise initiative as well as restraint. Any weapons fire must be disciplined and aimed, while also effective in achieving self-defense. When encountering a potential threat, remember R-A-M-P. That key word will help you respond in a way that protects lives, supports the mission, and complies with the law.

Return fire with aimed fire. Return force with force. You always have the right to repel hostile acts with necessary force.

Anticipate attack. Use force first if, but only if, you see clear indicators of hostile intent or identify a hostile force. Forces identified as hostile ("enemy" forces) should be shot on sight unless surrendering or out of combat due to wounds. Use the considerations in "Hand
Measure the amount of force that you use, if time and circumstances permit. Use only the amount of force necessary to protect lives and accomplish the mission. If possible, apply a graduated escalation of force, particularly when facing civilian crowds that appear to be unarmed, but also uncooperative. In handling potentially hostile situations, use one or more of the actions in "V-E-W-P-R-I-K":

**Verbal Warning**: Tell person(s), in their own language, to disperse, stay away, or halt. For example, in English, “Stop or I’ll shoot”; in Serb, “Stah-nee e-lee pootsahm”; in Albanian, “N-dahl per n-droo-shay joo-eye”.

**Exhibit weapon**: Show your weapon or use some other display that you have superior force at your disposal.

**Warning shot**: Shoot a warning shot, if authorized.

**Pepper spray**: Spray cayenne pepper spray, if authorized and available and the individual is close enough.

**Riot stick/Rifle butt**: Strike with riot stick, if authorized and available and if the individual is close enough. Poke fleshy parts of the body first, arms and legs next, and, if necessary, escalate to striking the head.

**Injure with fire**: Shoot to wound.

**Kill with fire**: Shoot to kill.

Protect with deadly force only human life, and property designated by your commander. Stop short of deadly force when protecting other property.
1st Infantry Division Exercise ROE

References:

a. CJTF SOWENIA OPLAN 40103, Annex E, Rules of Engagement.

b. DOD Directive 5100.77, DOD Law of War Program.


Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: Local.

1. SITUATION.

a. General.

(1) U.S. Forces operating in and around Vilslakia will conduct operations IAW the above references as modified by the following guidance.

(2) All practical means will be employed to limit the risk to the lives and property of friendly forces and civilians (protected persons) and, except as directed by Theater or higher headquarters, to avoid the violation of operational boundaries and national borders.

(3) International and U.S. national law, including but not limited to the law of armed conflict, govern the conduct of all military operations under this OPORD. The provisions of applicable treaties and other international agreements and an analysis of the principles and rules of warfare are contained in reference d. CDRs and staff will apply these principles as applicable in the following areas:

- Targeting, if required.
- Stratagems, if required.
- Employment and coordination of weapons systems.
- Treatment of civilian personnel and property.
- Treatment of detained persons.
- Wounded and sick; and medical units, personnel and facilities.
(4) CDRs will ensure that all policies, plans, orders, target lists, and procedures concerning the conduct of military operations are consistent with applicable international and U.S. national law. Legal review and guidance from servicing judge advocates (JA) will be obtained prior to implementation of the above as the tactical situation permits, except that all operational plans, procedures, and guidance developed at Division level in furtherance of these ROE will be reviewed by the Staff Judge Advocate or his designee.

(5) Nothing in these ROE negates a commander's obligation to take all necessary and appropriate action for his unit's self-defense and the defense of those entrusted to his care. Nothing in these ROE infringes on the right of a soldier to exercise self-defense.

(6) Unless otherwise prohibited in these ROE, or limited by higher headquarters Rules of Engagement, nothing shall limit U.S. forces in the use of all lawful technology, consistent with the law of war, to accomplish its mission.

(7) Inconsistencies between these ROE and those of higher headquarters shall be resolved in favor of the higher headquarters if to interpret otherwise would result in a less restrictive 1ID ROE.

(8) Friendly forces from other nations will deploy as part of the CLCC. Each force has a national obligation to abide by references a and e. Interoperability problems arising from these references will be referred immediately to the servicing judge advocate or 1ID Staff Judge Advocate.

2. MISSION. As in 1ID OPORD 99-06.

3. SCOPE. These ROE apply to all forces, U.S. or allied, assigned, attached, or under the operational control of the CDR, 1ID throughout the area of responsibility (AOR). All references to "U.S. forces" in this annex include those friendly forces assigned, attached, or OPCON to the CDR, 1ID. The U.S. is included among those forces identified as "implementation forces."

   a. The AOR is as defined in Annex C (Operation Overlay) to 1ID OPORD 99-06.
b. Implementation Forces. Individual members, units, or other organizations of all forces within the AOR and placed under the operational command or control of the commander Combined Land Component Command (CLCC) for the purposes of execution of the CLCC OPORD.

4. EXECUTION.

a. Definitions.

(1) Air Support to Ground Forces. Air attacks conducted to defend against hostile acts by ground targets and which require detailed integration of each air mission with the fire and movement of those forces. Included in this definition are fixed and rotary wing close air support (CAS), and associated suppression of enemy air defense (SEAD) operations against sources of known hostile acts against friendly forces.

(2) Collateral Damage. The unintended death or injury of persons and destruction or damage of property which occurs incidental to the authorized and legitimate use of force under these ROE and international law. It is recognized that in some cases, collateral damage will result from the legitimate and authorized use of force.

(3) Complying Forces. All regular and irregular military forces operating within the tactical area of operations which are other than friendly forces, as distinguished from hostile forces, and who remain in compliance with the terms of the operation as implemented by friendly force commanders and authorized government officials.

(4) Contraband. Items deemed to be contrary to the interests of the CLCC operation are contraband. It includes all weapons larger than 7.62mm and all explosives/amunition above an individual soldier's basic load. Basic load equates to the amount of material that a U.S. soldier generally carries, including but not limited to, one weapon, 200 rounds of ammunition and four grenades. Examples of other contraband contrary to the interest of the CLCC operation are bombs and materiel for producing bombs, mines, and similar ordnance or explosives, documents and plans.
(5) Deadly Force. That force that may result in grave injury or death to individuals and substantial damage or destruction to facilities, buildings, and equipment. It includes weapons fire from individual weapons, small arms, crew served weapons, and air delivered ordnance, as well as deadly weapons which are not firearms such as knives, hand grenades, land mines, petrol bombs, vehicles or any tool or item being used in a lethal manner.

(6) Detention. The temporary custody of persons by friendly forces pending transfer to authorized civilian government agencies.

(7) Friendly Forces. Individual members, units, or other organizations of all of the following participating in the CLCC:
- NATO forces.
- National forces of NATO nations.
- Western European Union (WEU) forces.
- Participating forces of non-NATO nations.

(8) Hostile Act. An aggressive action against friendly forces, persons with protected status, or protected property. An aggressive action includes an attack or imminent attack by means of deadly force. A deadly weapon aimed or targeted at, and with the apparent, immediate capability of inflicting grave injury or death on friendly forces or persons with protected status or cause substantial damage to protected property, is specifically deemed to constitute an imminent attack within the meaning of this definition.

(9) Hostile Forces. All regular and irregular military or paramilitary forces, including terrorists, and civilians who engage in hostile acts as defined above, that commit, threaten to commit or support hostile acts against friendly forces, persons with protected status, protected property.

(10) Hostile Intent. An action(s) which appears to be preparatory to a hostile act.

(11) In Contact. A unit that is engaged with a hostile force and is being fired upon.
(12) Military Restricted Area. An area where persons, other than those that comprise friendly forces, are either not authorized to be there or not authorized to be armed. Commanders are authorized to declare restricted areas and to establish such areas and clear them of all unauthorized weapons. This includes the authority to remove military or paramilitary forces or people as required. Examples of military restricted areas include arms and ordnance storage sites, personnel processing areas, command and control areas, checkpoints, and billeting areas.

(13) Minimum Force. That force not otherwise prohibited by international law or these ROE, which is reasonably necessary and militarily prudent for self-defense or to accomplish the assigned mission and related tasks. Measures reasonably necessary and militarily prudent depend on the circumstances and the exact mission/task or threat. Examples of necessary and militarily prudent force exist on a continuum and include normal challenge procedures, open display of weapons, searches of persons and vehicles, use of warning shots, as well as all other authorized forms of non-deadly force up to the use of deadly force. Deadly force is sometimes the minimum force reasonably necessary and militarily prudent for effective self-defense or to accomplish the assigned mission/task and preserve force security. In all cases, minimum force must be reasonable and proportional to the situation for which used.

(14) Non-Deadly Force. That physical force short of deadly force. Non-deadly force includes use of batons, ax handles, shields, CS gas delivered by firearms, non-lethal rounds (e.g. leaflet rounds, illumination rounds, and blank fire), military working dogs, and warning shots.

(15) Persons With Protected Status. Include:

- Members of non-combatant organizations operating with the authority of the CLCC;
- Members of authorized charitable, humanitarian or monitoring organizations;
- Other individuals or groups specifically designated by the CLCC Commander;
- All noncombatants.

(16) Populated Areas. All cities, built-up urban areas, towns and villages, those areas designated on
operational overlays as populated areas, or those areas where civilians are known to have congregated (e.g., refugee tent cities). Areas not meeting this definition are "non-populated."

(17) Protected Property. Comprised of the following categories or property:

- Property or information including classified material under the control of friendly forces or persons with protected status, the loss of which would increase the risk of grave injury or death to friendly forces or persons with protected status or increase the risk of substantial damage to protected property.

- Monuments, schools, places of worship, cultural or historical landmarks, museums, public utilities not used to support the military actions of hostile forces and all medical facilities.

- Property under the responsibility of friendly forces including property vital to the implementation of the CLCC.

- Property or type of property specifically designated by commanders not below CDR, 1ID as falling within one of the above categories.

(18) Relief Zone. An area where the proximate presence of friendly forces provides a certain degree of security to the civilian population without these forces having a specific mission for their protection.

(19) Safe Area. An area where the civilian population is offered a certain degree of security by friendly forces which have a mandate to defend it against hostile acts and acts of terrorism.

(20) Safe Haven. An area that is organized so as to provide protection to the civilian population against aggression, acts of terrorism, intimidation, and any kind of hostile act from outside and inside the area.

(21) Secure Area. An area designated by authorized friendly force commanders as military restricted areas, or designated by authorized commanders as safe areas or safe havens. All secure areas are so designated to
afford a greater degree of safety to the persons and property within them, by controlling possession of weapons and access.

(22) Self-Defense. The use of such necessary, reasonable and proportional force, including deadly force, by an individual or unit in order to protect the individual or unit from a hostile act.

(23) Warning Shots. A shot fired with no intention to cause death, injury or severe damage. A warning shot is a signal demonstrating resolve or capability to convince persons, objects or platforms to stop or as a prelude to the actual use of force.

b. General Principles Regarding Use of Force.

(1) NOTHING IN THESE RULES NEGATES A COMMANDER'S OBLIGATION TO TAKE ALL NECESSARY AND APPROPRIATE ACTION FOR HIS UNIT'S SELF-DEFENSE AND THE DEFENSE OF THOSE ENTRUSTED TO HIS CARE. IN ADDITION, ALL PERSONNEL MAY ALWAYS EXERCISE THE INHERENT RIGHT OF SELF-DEFENSE.

(2) Exhaust Other Options: In situations where a potentially hostile confrontation exists, force may only be used as a last resort. When the operational situation permits and it is prudent to do so, make every effort to resolve such situations by means other than the use of force. In all circumstances force may only be used if there is no other militarily feasible way consistent with force security and immediately available to stop the aggressive action or to achieve any other legitimate purpose for which the use of force is authorized. In some circumstances, however, operational urgency will preclude the consideration of options other than the immediate use of force.

(3) Challenge and Warning: A necessary step in attempting to resolve a potential hostile confrontation short of the use of force is the exercise of challenge and warning procedures appropriate to the situation. As circumstances justify, warning procedures may or may not entail the firing of a warning shot(s). Challenge and warning procedures as outlined in Appendix 1 (ROE Card) to this Annex will be observed in all cases involving the use of force unless to do so would increase the risk of death or grave injury to friendly forces or protected persons.
Every reasonable effort should be made to defuse confrontations by using the challenge and warning procedures.

(4) Use of Minimum Force: CDRs and soldiers are authorized to use the minimum force reasonably necessary and militarily prudent for self-defense or to accomplish the assigned mission and related tasks. Any force used must be limited to that degree, intensity, and duration of force necessary to achieve the objective for which used and no more. While always dependent on the circumstances, this may require the use of single aimed shots (e.g., restrictive directed fire). In some circumstances, however, operational urgency will dictate the immediate use of automatic or indirect battery fire. The primary aim always is to control the situation as quickly as possible with a minimum degree of force limited to the area of immediate hostilities. While in defense and in pursuing the enemy, you may use that amount of force necessary to accomplish the mission, consistent with the principles of military necessity and proportionality. Such necessary force may be used against the SNA and clearly identified irregular forces in restoring the territorial integrity of Vilsakia and pushing the enemy back into Sowenia.

(5) Duty to Terminate: The duty to minimize also extends to the duration of armed response used in self-defense. Use of force and weapons fire must stop when friendly forces are no longer in danger of grave injury or death from a hostile act.

(6) Right to Position Defense: U.S. forces are not required to withdraw or surrender their position in order merely to avoid the authorized and legitimate use of force.

(7) Prohibition Against Punishment: The punitive use of force is absolutely prohibited.

(8) Duty to Report: Each confrontation involving the use of deadly force will be reported up the chain of command to CDR, 1ID irrespective of whether a death has actually occurred.

(9) Duty to Observe Fire: Targets engaged with indirect fire must be observed or positively identified by other equally reliable assured means of identification,
such as, radar tracked fires and radar acquired counter fires.

(10) Collateral Damage. **EVEN IF A USE OF FORCE IS AUTHORIZED AND LEGITIMATE, EVERY EFFORT MUST BE MADE TO LIMIT COLLATERAL DAMAGE TO THE ABSOLUTE MINIMUM THAT IS MILITARILY FEASIBLE UNDER THE CIRCUMSTANCES SURROUNDING THAT USE OF FORCE.** DIRECT ATTACKS ON NONCOMBATANTS OR PROPERTY THAT IS EXCLUSIVELY CIVILIAN OR RELIGIOUS IN CHARACTER, EXCEPT IF THAT PROPERTY IS BEING USED FOR MILITARY PURPOSES, ARE ABSOLUTELY PROHIBITED. IN ALL CASES, THE COLLATERAL DAMAGE EXPECTED TO RESULT FROM AN AUTHORIZED USE OF FORCE MUST NOT BE DISPROPORTIONATE TO THE LEGITIMATE PURPOSE FOR WHICH THAT FORCE IS USED.

(11) Use of Deadly Force.

(a) U.S. forces may use deadly force in response to a hostile act or imminent attack.

(b) In all cases, the use of deadly force will be rapid, decisive, and aimed at the source of the hostile act, imminent attack, or those forces evidencing hostile intent.

(c) U.S. forces employing deadly force will use that minimum amount of force necessary and proportional to eliminate the threat. Firing will cease upon elimination of the threat. U.S. forces will assist any injured persons as soon as it is safe to do so.

(d) U.S. forces may use deadly force against a crew served weapon (e.g., tanks, artillery, mortar, recoilless rifle) if that crew served weapon is aimed or targeted at, and with the apparent immediate capability to harm, friendly forces or protected persons.

(e) U.S. forces may use deadly force to prevent the theft of the following property **WHEN** there is no other way to prevent its loss:

1. Any individual weapon, crew served weapon, ammunition or explosive under the control of U.S. forces;

2. Any tactical vehicle of U.S. forces; or
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

3 Any other property designated by the CDR, 1ID.

(12) It is possible that the CDR, 1ID will order the confiscation of all small arms, crew served weapons, munitions, military vehicles and other equipment from other forces or civilians. If this order is given, implementing soldiers: 1) are authorized to use the minimum force necessary to confiscate such items and deliver them to designated collection points; 2) upon coordination with BDE level or higher headquarters, may render inoperable armored vehicles, artillery, anti-tank weapons, and mines if it is impracticable to remove them to a collection point.

(13) These rules of engagement (ROE) constitute limitations on permissible conduct by U.S. forces participating in this operation and associated operations. Proposed changes to these ROE should be forwarded through the chain of command to the CDR, 1ID for decision or input, and, as necessary, to the appropriate higher level of command retaining approval authority.

(14) Use of Deadly Force. Commanders may engage Sowenian regular and other clearly identified irregular forces with deadly force consistent with these ROE and military necessity and proportionality.

(15) Duty to Exhaust Other Options. While engaged in combat operations commanders are no longer required to use force as a last resort when a potentially hostile confrontation exists.

(16) Proportionality. Restoring the physical infrastructure of and Vilslakia after internecine conflict remains an objective of the CLCC. Commanders shall not order fires or other operations which would destroy or substantially damage buildings, power grids, water treatment facilities, bridges, etc., without first considering the impact upon the host nation populace.

(17) Subordinate CDRs will not modify or interpret these ROE except to impose additional restrictions as appropriate, except that CDRS may not restrict the right to self-defense. CDRs will ensure that these ROE are implemented by instructions disseminated to the lowest level possible. All levels of command are responsible for training assigned personnel in the law of
armed conflict and these ROE, and for ensuring that each individual is issued an ROE Card (see Appendix 1). The full ROE contain sensitive material, the publication of which could disadvantage U.S. forces in certain circumstances. An abridged form of these ROE for open publication to media and general public is at Appendix 3.

(18) The General ROE will form the basis of the guidance to be issued to every U.S. forces soldier in the form of a ROE Card (see Appendix 1).

(19) Appendix 2 contains rules for the Power to Search with two TABs designed to provide specific guidance to soldiers.

(20) Appendix 3 contains abridged ROE for release to media or the general public.

c. Specific Authority.

(1) Authority to Establish Declared Restricted Areas. As essential to execute the assigned mission and related tasks and for the security of friendly forces, Regional Land Commanders are authorized to declare, establish, and clear of all unauthorized weapons restricted areas inside which persons, other than those who comprise friendly forces, are either not authorized or not authorized to be armed. This includes the authority to remove military or paramilitary forces or people as required. Restricted areas may be declared, for example, to enhance the security of storage sites, personnel processing areas, command and control areas, checkpoints, billeting areas, boundary areas, and vital land routes, or to establish safe havens or other protected areas. Declared restricted areas shall be no larger than what is the militarily prudent minimum size given the required task and operational environment. The location and conditions surrounding the use of declared restricted areas shall be widely and thoroughly publicized, and well marked and patrolled. 1ID has requested CDR, CLCC to delegate this authority to either Division or Brigade command level.

(2) Authority to Protect Persons and Property. The use of force to protect or defend persons with protected status or property of specific importance to friendly forces is authorized.
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

(3) Authority to Detain. Detention is authorized for all persons, including civilians, who interfere with the accomplishment of the mission and related tasks or who otherwise use or threaten to use force against friendly forces or the equipment and materials belonging to them or under their protection (such as, relief materials, distribution of relief materials, weapons storage sites or convoys). Detention is also authorized for persons who enter an area under the control of friendly forces without prior authorization, or who are suspected of grave breaches of the law of armed conflict. The authority to detain specifically extends to persons suspected of having committed, or having conspired to commit acts of terrorism, espionage, subversion, and sabotage against friendly forces, protected persons or protected property. The use of minimum force is authorized to effect an authorized detention and to maintain control over persons once detained including to prevent escape. Detained personnel will be evacuated to designated sites for hand-over to military police or other designated authorities. All detainees will be accorded treatment equal to EPWs under the Geneva Convention, until such time as their proper status is determined by the appropriate detention facility authority. This policy establishes the standard of treatment afforded to detainees and does not represent a determination of their legal status.

(4) Authority to Search. See Appendix 2.

(5) Authority to Seize. Concomitant with the authority to search is the authority to seize. Any contraband found during a search may be seized. Any seizures of contraband will be recorded and reported in accordance with the procedures for reports of searches as stated in the ROE Appendix 2, Tabs A and B. Seizure of contraband is not limited by paragraph 4d(9) of the ROE which refers to the authority for confiscating public or private property.

(6) Authority to Conduct Reconnaissance. Ground reconnaissance and aerial photography or aerial inspection is permitted as required for mission accomplishment or the security to friendly forces.

d. Specific Rules.
(1) U.S. forces are permitted to enter the land mass, airspace, and territorial seas of Vilslakia. U.S. forces are not permitted to pass through the land mass, airspace, and territorial seas of Juraland and only on the order of the Cdr, CLCC the land mass and airspace of Sowenia.

(2) Except for U.S. forces conducting search and rescue operations, unless directed otherwise by CDR, 1ID forces are not permitted to enter territorial land, sea, or airspace of other countries - other than Vilslakia.

(3) If U.S. forces inadvertently enter territorial land, sea, or airspace of countries other than Vilslakia, use of force in self-defense may be used to withdraw.

(4) U.S. forces performing search and rescue missions shall use force as necessary to include intrusion into any land territory and/or sea and/or airspace to ensure the recovery of any suspected survivors.

(5) U.S. forces may conduct offensive military operations (attacks, raids, ambushes, sniper operations, etc.).

(6) All personnel and vehicles passing through U.S. forces checkpoints or within reasonable proximity of U.S. forces' positions may be searched for weapons and ordnance. U.S. forces also may conduct searches of persons, vehicles, or places when there are reasonable grounds to suspect the presence of weapons or ordnance; only Battalion level commanders may authorize this type of probable cause search and seizure. A female member of the forces will search other females, as required. Absent any hostile or criminal acts, persons releasing weapons or ordnance to U.S. forces will be released. Specific instructions on conducting searches are in Appendix 2.

(7) If U.S. forces are attacked or threatened by unarmed but hostile mobs or rioters, U.S. forces may use the minimum force reasonably necessary to repel the attacks or threats. Authorized procedures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- Verbal warnings to demonstrators;
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

- Show of force, including use of riot control formations;
- Warning shots;
- Use of riot control agents (RCA) when authorized. See paragraph 4h and Appendix 3.

(8) Unattended means of force, including booby traps, mines, and trip guns are not authorized. Command detonated means of force (i.e. command detonated claymore mines) are not limited by this rule. Minefields may be used if authorized by the theater commander or his designee, and if recorded and marked on all four sides so as to prevent civilian casualties.

(9) Under no circumstances will public or private movable or immovable property be "confiscated" by U.S. forces operating in support of the CLCC. Additionally, public movable property susceptible to military use or private movable personal property of others may NOT be "seized" without permission of the CDR, 1ID or his designee, unless the failure to do so would bring about the immediate death or serious bodily harm to U.S. forces or protected persons. If seized under these circumstances, the property must be returned when no longer needed, or the owner must be compensated. Property control property records will be kept for all seized property and a receipt will be issued to the property owner, if known.

(10) Proper contracting processes must be followed to obtain supplies and other items necessary to accomplish the mission.

e. Geographical Constraints. During all phases of operations in Vilslkia, ground and air commanders will exercise caution to ensure that all international borders and air or sea spaces of nations other than Vilslkia are respected. To this end: Operations into Sowenia and Juraland. Ground or air operations to include hot pursuit of Sowenian regular or designated irregular forces in contact, and direct and indirect fires, may be conducted across the Juraland-Sowenian-Vilslkian border once authorized by the Commander, CLCC. Commanders wishing to fire into Juraland may do so only with the express approval of the Commander, CLCC. Operational boundaries should be crossed only after coordination with adjoining units when practicable.
f. Surface Indirect and Direct Fire Weapons. This subparagraph applies to the conduct of fire in our area of operations to include the employment of indirect and direct fire surface weapons and naval gunfire. The use of indirect fire of non-lethal rounds such as illumination and smoke rounds is not limited by this section.

(1) Observed Fires Preferred. Observation of targets and fires helps ensure that fires are not inadvertently directed to areas where the collateral damage and/or risk to civilians is substantial. The preference is to observe fires of all weapons systems, indirect and direct, regardless of the location when the tactical situation permits. Unobserved fires, including unobserved radar tracked fires and radar acquired counterfires, are authorized when consistent with the rules below.

(2) Unobserved Fires in Non populated Areas. Unobserved indirect fire may always be used against clearly identified hostile targets in non-populated areas. The decision to fire these missions is delegated to the tactical unit commander directing the fire. During combat operations this delegation will not go lower than company command level.

(3) Direct and Indirect Defensive Fires in Populated Areas.

(a) The decision to use direct fire weapons (tank, AT missile, recoilless rifle, machine gun, etc.) in populated areas in self-defense when necessary to accomplish the mission is delegated to the Company CDR ordering the fire. [If OFFENSIVE operations are approved by the 1ID CDR, fire release authority for tank fire is BDE CDR (may delegate no lower than Battalion CDR); fire release authority for turret mounted cannons is BDE CDR (may be delegated no lower than Company CDR)].

(b) The BDE CDR retains the decision to conduct indirect fire missions (artillery & mortar) in populated areas.

(c) All fire missions, direct and indirect, directed against known or suspected targets in populated areas must preclude unnecessary danger to civilians and destruction of civilian property.
(d) Prior to initiating fires in self-defense in populated areas, consideration will be given to use of leaflets, loudspeakers, or other appropriate means to secure the evacuation of the civilian populace, if the tactical situation permits.

g. Air Operations. This subparagraph defines operational restrictions and ROE for the employment of fixed and rotary-wing aircraft in support of friendly forces. This subparagraph applies to all ground force employment of USAF close air support (CAS) and Army aviation missions, but does not apply to USAF battlefield air interdiction (BAI) missions.

(1) CAS and BAI missions are authorized for self-defense. The use of fixed and rotary-wing aircraft "on station" to demonstrate resolve is also authorized.

(2) All pilots will receive an air or ground briefing to determine the disposition of friendly forces and civilians prior to initiating an air attack.

(3) CAS and Army aviation missions require:

(a) Attacking aircraft must be under the control of or in direct communications with a Forward Air Controller (FAC), who may be either airborne or on the ground, or Forward Observer (FO) who has visual contact with the hostile force and can define the target area and location of friendly forces and civilians. This requirement does not apply to AC-130 or helicopter gunship missions when the AC-130 or helicopter crew can define the target area and location of friendly forces and civilians.

(b) A target area which is visually or otherwise clearly marked or identifiable. To enhance the accurate location and verification of intended ground targets, the following target marking devices may be used: 1) laser designation by FAC; 2) marker rounds by FAC, including WP and HC smoke; and 3) radar assisted bombing by FAC.

(c) Two-way radio communication between both the FAC/FO and CAS aircraft and between the FAC/FO and friendly forces on the ground. This restriction does not apply to helicopter gunships.
(4) Air attacks directed against known or suspected enemy targets in populated areas must preclude unnecessary danger to civilians and destruction of civilian property. The following must be adhered to:

(a) The decision to conduct air attacks in self-defense of friendly forces in populated areas is retained by the CDR, 1ID or his designee.

(b) Air attacks by fixed-wing aircraft directed against populated areas must always be closely controlled by a FAC or FO.

(c) Prior to initiating air attacks against populated areas, consideration will be given to using leaflets, loudspeakers, or other appropriate means to secure the evacuation of the civilian populace, if the tactical situation permits.

(5) Munitions will be jettisoned only in designated jettisoned areas in daylight (VFR) or under positive radar control (night/IFR conditions) except when emergency threatens injury to the crew or serious damage to the aircraft.

h. Chemical.

(1) The use of lethal or incapacitating chemical weapons is prohibited.

(2) Riot Control Agents (RCA) may only be employed by U.S. forces with express Theater Commander authorization. If such authority is granted, unit CDRs may use RCA for:

(a) Riot control situations in areas under U.S. military control.

(b) Situations where civilians are used by hostile forces to mask or screen attacks and civilian casualties can be reduced by RCA employment.

(c) Rescue/recovery missions in remote isolated areas, rescue/recovery of downed aircrews and passengers, and control of escaping prisoners.
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

(d) Convoy operations to protect convoys from civil disturbances, terrorists, or other hostile forces. The use of RCA for any other purpose must be approved by the CDR, 1ID or his designee, provided approval is received first from CDR, CLCC.

(3) Herbicides will not be employed by U.S. forces without the approval of the CDR, CLCC. If the CDR, CLCC approves the use of herbicides, they will only be used for control of vegetation within U.S. bases and installations or around their immediate defensive perimeter.

i. Incendiary. In the event that combat operations are ordered by the Commander, CLCC, white phosphorous may be employed, with the battalion commander as the releasing authority, in non-populated areas against the regular and irregular armed forces of Sowenia.

j. Psychological Operations. Overt psychological operations (PSYOP) may be conducted in accordance with DoD Directive 3321.1 and as authorized by the CDR, CLCC. Overt PSYOP may be either long or short term to influence deliberate or immediate foreign actions. Deliberate PSYOP may be conducted as a campaign or a long-term single operation and may be independent of other military operations. Immediate PSYOP may consist of a few actions intended to influence actions in a short period. See Annex R, PSYOP. PSYOP objectives may include but are not limited to:

(1) Discourage hostile decisions to initiate or continue explicit threats, use of force, or open hostilities.

(2) Establish the potential to achieve surprise and superiority, maintain security, and gain the initiative if force is used or open hostilities occur.

(3) Reduce the effectiveness of adversary armed forces and intelligence systems.

(4) Discourage enemy escalation of hostilities both geographically and in types of weapons used.

k. Air Defense. Upon commencement of combat operations, Air Defense assets will go to a "yellow -
tight" status. Surface to air missiles may engage aircraft only when they are positively identified as hostile and engage in a hostile act. Authority for engagement with identified hostile aircraft rests with the designated (ground) air defense officer or NCO in charge of the engaging system.

(1) A hostile act is committed by one aircraft when that aircraft:

(a) Fires on an intercepting friendly force aircraft or clearly and persistently maneuvers into a position to attack;

(b) Is in Vilslakian airspace and without proper clearance releases, or is preparing to release, bombs or fires missiles, rockets, guns other than on a recognized range; or

(c) Attacks friendly forces, protected persons or protected property, land transportation, shipping, commercial air traffic, or the territory/property of Vilslakia; or

(d) Carries on reconnaissance, shadowing or tattletailing in support of another unit that commits a hostile act; or

(e) Violates any lawfully established "no fly" zone for the Theater.

(2) Evidence of hostile intent is an aggressive action by a potential enemy aircraft, which appears to be preparatory to the commission of a hostile act. Commanders judging an imminent attack must weigh the threatening unit's capability and preparedness to inflict damage and the evidence, particularly intelligence evidence, indicating an intention to attack. Evidence of an imminent attack is considered to exist when:

(a) An aircraft maneuvers into weapon launch position or prepares to fire, launch or release weapons against friendly forces or Vilslakian territory.

(b) An aircraft prepares to lay, sweep, or hunt mines or actually does so in waters used by friendly forces.
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

5. SERVICE AND SUPPORT. See 1ID OPORD 99-06.

6. COMMAND AND SIGNAL. See 1ID OPORD 99-06.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

GRANGE
MG

OFFICIAL:
SJA

Appendixes: 1. ROE CARD
2. POWER TO SEARCH
3. 1ID ROE FOR OPEN PUBLICATION

Appendices
NOT Included
in this ROE
Handbook
1st Armored Division High Intensity Conflict Exercise ROE

References:

a. 1AD FSOP Appendix 8 (Staff Judge Advocate) to Annex L
b. 1AD FSOP Annex E (Rules of Engagement)

Time Zone Used Throughout the Order: Local.

1. SITUATION.

a. General.

   (1) U.S. Forces operating in and around Sowenia will conduct operations IAW the above references as modified by the following guidance.

   (2) All Vilslakian forces are declared hostile.

   (3) **Nothing in these ROE negates a commander's obligation to take all necessary and appropriate action for his unit's self-defense and the defense of those entrusted to his care. Nothing in these ROE infringes on the right of a soldier to exercise self-defense.**

   (4) All practical means will be employed to limit the risk to the lives and property of friendly forces and civilians (protected persons) and, except as directed by Theater or higher headquarters, to avoid the violation of operational boundaries and national borders.

   (5) These rules of engagement (ROE) constitute limitations on permissible conduct by U.S. forces participating in this operation and associated operations. Proposed changes to these ROE should be forwarded through the chain of command to the CDR, 1AD for decision or input, and, as necessary, to the appropriate higher level of command retaining approval authority. Inconsistencies between these ROE and those of higher headquarters shall be resolved in favor of the higher headquarters if to interpret otherwise would result in a less restrictive 1AD ROE.

   (6) Friendly forces from other nations will deploy as part of the CLCC. Each force has a national obligation to abide by the Law of War.

2. MISSION. No Change.
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

3. SCOPE.

a. These ROE apply to all forces, U.S. or allied, assigned, attached, or under the operational control of the CDR, 1AD throughout the area of responsibility (AOR). All references to "U.S. forces" in this annex include those friendly forces assigned, attached, or OPCON to the CDR, 1AD. The U.S. is included among those forces identified as "implementation forces."

b. The AOR is as defined in Annex C (Operation Overlay) to 1AD OPORD ??-??.

4. EXECUTION.


(1) Hostile Act. An aggressive action against friendly forces, persons with protected status, or protected property. An aggressive action includes an attack or imminent attack by means of deadly force. A deadly weapon aimed or targeted at, and with the apparent, immediate capability of inflicting grave injury or death on friendly forces or persons with protected status or cause substantial damage to protected property, is specifically deemed to constitute an imminent attack within the meaning of this definition.

(2) Hostile Intent. An action(s) which appears to be preparatory to a hostile act.

(3) Persons with Designated Special Status (PDSS). The following persons are PDSS:

A. All allied military personnel.

B. All United Nations, Non-governmental organization, Private Volunteer Organization personnel, and

C. Other personnel designated by Commander, 1AD.

(4) Protected Property. The following are considered protected property:

- Property or information including classified material under the control of friendly forces or persons with protected status, the loss of which would increase the risk of grave injury or death to friendly forces or persons with protected status or increase the risk of substantial damage to protected property.
- Monuments, schools, places of worship, cultural or historical landmarks, museums, public utilities not used to support the military actions of hostile forces and all medical facilities.

- Property under the responsibility of friendly forces including property vital to the accomplishment of the mission.

- Any individual weapon, crew-served weapon, ammunition or explosive under the control of U.S. forces.

- Any tactical vehicle of U.S. forces.

- Property or type of property specifically designated by commanders not below CDR, 1AD as falling within one of the above categories.

b. General Principles Regarding Use of Force.

(1) Hostile Forces. Vilslakian regular and irregular or paramilitary forces, including terrorists, and civilians who engage in hostile acts as defined above, that commit, threaten to commit, or support hostile acts against friendly forces persons with protected status or protected property should be treated as hostile forces.

(2) Non-hostile Forces. Sowenian civilians and other non-combatants are to be treated IAW reference b.

A. NOTHING IN THESE RULES NEGATES A COMMANDER'S OBLIGATION TO TAKE ALL NECESSARY AND APPROPRIATE ACTION FOR HIS UNIT'S SELF-DEFENSE AND THE DEFENSE OF THOSE ENTRUSTED TO HIS CARE. IN ADDITION, ALL PERSONNEL MAY ALWAYS EXERCISE THE INHERENT RIGHT OF SELF-DEFENSE.

B. Non-combatants who commit hostile acts or demonstrate hostile intent should be treated as hostile forces.

1. U.S. forces may use deadly force in response to a hostile act or imminent attack.

2. In all cases, the use of deadly force will be rapid, decisive, and aimed at the source of the hostile act, imminent attack, or those forces evidencing hostile intent.
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

3. U.S. forces employing deadly force will use that minimum amount of force necessary and proportional to eliminate the threat. Firing will cease upon elimination of the threat. U.S. forces will assist any injured persons as soon as it is safe to do so.

4. U.S. forces may use deadly force against a crew-served weapon (e.g., tanks, artillery, mortar, recoilless rifle) if that crew served weapon is aimed or targeted at, and with the apparent immediate capability to harm, friendly forces or protected persons.

5. U.S. forces may use deadly force to protect PDSS and protected property.

c. Specific Authority.

(1) Authority to Emplace Mines and Obstacles.

(2) Authority to emplace.

d. Specific Rules.

(1) U.S. forces are permitted to enter the land mass, airspace, and territorial seas of Vilsakia. U.S. forces are not permitted to pass through the land mass, airspace, and territorial seas of Juraland and only on the order of the CDR, CLCC the land mass and airspace of Sowenia.

(2) Except for U.S. forces conducting search and rescue operations, unless directed otherwise by CDR, 1AD forces are not permitted to enter territorial land, sea, or airspace of other countries - other than Vilsakia.

(3) If U.S. forces inadvertently enter territorial land, sea, or airspace of countries other than Vilsakia, use of force in self-defense may be used to withdraw.

(4) U.S. forces performing search and rescue missions shall use force as necessary to include intrusion into any land territory and/or sea and/or airspace to ensure the recovery of any suspected survivors.

(5) All personnel and vehicles passing through U.S. forces checkpoints or within reasonable proximity of U.S. forces’ positions may be searched for weapons and ordnance. U.S. forces also may conduct searches of persons, vehicles, or places when there are reasonable grounds to suspect the presence of weapons or ordnance; only Battalion level commanders may authorize this type of probable cause search and seizure. A female member of the forces will search other females, as required. Absent any hostile or criminal
acts, persons releasing weapons or ordnance to U.S. forces will be released.

(6) Direct and Indirect Defensive Fires in Populated Areas.

A. The decision to use direct fire weapons (tank, AT missile, recoilless rifle, machine gun, etc.) in populated areas in situations other than self-defense to accomplish the mission is delegated to the Company CDR ordering the fire.

B. The authority to conduct indirect fire missions (artillery & mortar) in populated areas is delegated to the BDE CDR.

(7) Unattended means of force, including booby traps, mines, and trip guns are not authorized. Command detonated means of force (i.e. command detonated claymore mines) are not limited by this rule.

(8) Under no circumstances will public or private movable or immovable property be "confiscated" by U.S. forces operating in support of the CLCC. Additionally, public movable property susceptible to military use or private movable personal property of others may NOT be "seized" without permission of the CDR, 1ID or his designee, unless the failure to do so would bring about the immediate death or serious bodily harm to U.S. forces or protected persons. If seized under these circumstances, the property must be returned when no longer needed, or the owner must be compensated. Property control property records will be kept for all seized property and a receipt will be issued to the property owner, if known.

e. Geographical Constraints. During all phases of operations in Vilslakia, ground and air commanders will exercise caution to ensure that all international borders and air or sea spaces of nations other than Vilslakia are respected. To this end: Operations into Sowenia and Juraland. Ground or air operations to include hot pursuit of Sowenian regular or designated irregular forces in contact, and direct and indirect fires, may be conducted across the Juraland-Sowenian-Vilslakian border once authorized by the Commander, CLCC. Commanders wishing to fire into Juraland may do so only with the express approval of the Commander, CLCC. Operational boundaries should be crossed only after coordination with adjoining units when practicable.

f. Air Operations. This subparagraph defines operational restrictions and ROE for the employment of fixed and
rotary-wing aircraft in support of friendly forces. This subparagraph applies to all ground force employment of USAF close air support (CAS) and Army aviation missions, but does not apply to USAF battlefield air interdiction (BAI) missions.

(1) CAS and BAI missions are authorized for self-defense. The use of fixed and rotary-wing aircraft "on station" to demonstrate resolve is also authorized.

(2) All pilots will receive an air or ground briefing to determine the disposition of friendly forces and civilians prior to initiating an air attack.

(3) CAS and Army aviation missions require:

(a) Attacking aircraft must be under the control of or in direct communications with a Forward Air Controller (FAC), who may be either airborne or on the ground, or Forward Observer (FO) who has visual contact with the hostile force and can define the target area and location of friendly forces and civilians. This requirement does not apply to AC-130 or helicopter gunship missions when the AC-130 or helicopter crew can define the target area and location of friendly forces and civilians.

(b) A target area which is visually or otherwise clearly marked or identifiable. To enhance the accurate location and verification of intended ground targets, the following target marking devices may be used: 1) laser designation by FAC; 2) marker rounds by FAC, including WP and HC smoke; and 3) radar assisted bombing by FAC.

(c) Two-way radio communication between both the FAC/FO and CAS aircraft and between the FAC/FO and friendly forces on the ground. This restriction does not apply to helicopter gunships.

(4) Air attacks directed against known or suspected enemy targets in populated areas must preclude unnecessary danger to civilians and destruction of civilian property. The following must be adhered to:

(a) The decision to conduct air attacks in self-defense of friendly forces in populated areas is retained by the CDR, 1AD or his designee.

(b) Air attacks by fixed-wing aircraft directed against populated areas must always be closely controlled by a FAC or FO.

(c) Prior to initiating air attacks against populated areas, consideration will be given to using
leaflets, loudspeakers, or other appropriate means to secure the evacuation of the civilian populace, if the tactical situation permits.

(5) Munitions will be jettisoned only in designated jettisoned areas in daylight (VFR) or under positive radar control (night/IFR conditions) except when emergency threatens injury to the crew or serious damage to the aircraft.

h. Chemical. The use of lethal or chemical weapons is prohibited.

i. Air Defense. All aircraft with Vilslakian fin flashes should be considered hostile.

5. SERVICE AND SUPPORT. See 1AD OPORD ??-??.

6. COMMAND AND SIGNAL. See 1AD OPORD ??-??.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

CASEY
MG

OFFICIAL:
SJA

Appendixes:
1. ROE CARD
2. POWER TO SEARCH
3. 1AD ROE FOR OPEN PUBLICATION
This Page Intentionally Left Blank
1st Armored Division Exercise ROE

ANNEX D, APPENDIX 2 to EXOPORD BE97: ROE

1. SITUATION. See Base OPLAN.

2. MISSION. See Base OPLAN.

3. EXECUTION.

SCOPE. These Rules Of Engagement (ROE) apply to all friendly forces. All references to the Force in this annex refer to the United Nations Interim Forces (UNIF), and the Commander refers to the Commander of UNIF.

These ROE constitute limitations on permissible conduct by the Force participating in this and associated operations. Proposed changes to these ROE should be forwarded through the chain of command to the Commander of the Forces. Only the Commander may make these ROE less restrictive.

Subordinate commanders will not modify or interpret these ROE except to impose additional restrictions as appropriate, except the commanders may not restrict the right to self-defense. Commanders will ensure that these ROE are implemented by instructions and disseminated to the lowest level possible.

a. Definitions.

(1) Close Air Support. Air attacks, initiated in self-defense, by fixed-wing aircraft and/or helicopters against ground targets which are in close proximity to the Force and which require detailed integration of each air mission with the fire and movement of those forces.

(2) Collateral Damage. The unintended death or injury of civilians and destruction or damage of civilian property which occurs incidental to the authorized and legitimate use of deadly force under these ROE and international law. It is recognized that in some cases, collateral damage will result from the legitimate and authorized use of force.
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

(3) Deadly Force. That force that may result in grave injury or death to individuals and substantial damage or destruction to facilities, buildings, and equipment. It includes weapons fire from individual weapons, small arms, crew served weapons, and air-delivered ordnance, as well as deadly weapons which are not firearms such as knives, hand grenades, land mines, etc.

(4) Friendly Forces/Implementation Forces. Individual members, units, or other organizations of all of the following when located in the tactical area of operations (TAOO):

(a) NATO forces.
(b) National forces of NATO nations.
(c) UN Peacekeeping Forces
(d) Western European Union (WEU) forces.
(e) Participating Forces of Non-NATO nations.
(f) All members of the Implementation forces.

(5) Hostile Act. A hostile act is an attack or other use of armed force against Forces or persons under Force protection or armed force used directly to preclude or impede the mission and/or other duties of Forces.

(6) Hostile Intent. Hostile Intent is the threat of imminent use of force against Forces or persons under Force protection. When hostile intent exists Forces may use proportional force, including armed force, in self-defense.

(7) Imminent Attack. An aggressive action by means of deadly force (or threatened use of deadly force) against Forces which is real, direct, unmistakable and creates a clear danger of grave injury or death and requires immediate response. Forces may use proportional force in self-defense against an imminent attack.

(8) In Contact. A unit that is engaged with a hostile force and is being fired upon.
(9) Minimum Force. That force which is reasonably necessary and militarily prudent for self-defense or to accomplish the assigned mission and related tasks. Measures reasonably required depend on the circumstances and the exact mission/task or threat. Examples of necessary and militarily prudent force exist on a continuum and include normal challenge procedures, open display of weapons, searches of persons and vehicles, use of warning shots, use of all other authorized forms of non-deadly force, and the use of deadly force. Deadly force is sometimes the minimum force reasonably necessary and prudent for self-defense or to accomplish the assigned mission and related tasks.

(10) Non-Deadly Force. Any physical force short of deadly force. Non-deadly force includes use of batons, ax handles, shields, CS gas delivered by firearms, non-lethal rounds (e.g. leaflet rounds, illumination rounds, and blank fire), military working dogs, and warning shots.

(11) Other Forces. All regular and irregular or paramilitary forces operating within the TAOO which are other than friendly forces. The term "other forces" also includes individual terrorists or terrorist units.

(12) Populated Areas. All cities, built-up urban areas, those areas designated on operational overlays as populated areas, or those areas where civilians are known to reside or are Other Forces. All regular and irregular or paramilitary forces operating within the TAOO which are other than friendly forces currently located. Areas not meeting this definition are "nonpopulated."

(13) Protected Status Persons. Persons with protected status are:

(a) Members of noncombatant organizations operating with the authority of the UN.

(b) Members of authorized charitable, humanitarian or monitoring organizations.

(c) Other organizations or groups specifically designated by the Force.

b. General Principles Regarding the Use of Force.
(1) Nothing in these rules limits a commander's inherent authority and obligation to use all necessary means available and to take all appropriate action in self-defense of the commander's unit and other Forces and protected persons in the vicinity.

(2) Duty to Exhaust Other Options: In situations where a potentially hostile confrontation exists, force may only be used as a last resort. When the operational situation permits and it is prudent to do so, make every effort to resolve such situations by means other than the use of force.

(3) Duty to Challenge and Warn: A necessary step in attempting to resolve a potential hostile confrontation short of the use of force is the exercise of appropriate challenge and warning procedures. Challenge and warning procedures as outlined in Appendix 2 to this annex will be observed in all cases involving the use of force unless to do so would increase the risk of death or grave injury to the Force.

(4) Duty to Use Minimum Force: Commanders and soldiers are authorized to use the minimum force reasonably necessary and militarily prudent for self-defense or to accomplish the assigned mission and related tasks. Any force used must be limited to that degree, intensity, and duration of force necessary to achieve the objective for which used and no more. In those situations short of a hostile act, hostile intent, or imminent attack, commanders will seek approval of the Commander or his designee before resorting to the use of deadly force.

(5) Use of Deadly Force.

(a) Forces may use deadly force in response to a hostile act, hostile intent, or imminent attack.

(b) In all cases the use of deadly force will be rapid, decisive, and aimed at the source of the hostile act, hostile intent or imminent attack.

(c) Forces employing deadly force will use that amount of force necessary and proportional to eliminate the threat. Firing will cease upon elimination
of the threat. Forces will assist any injured upon cease firing.

(d) The Force may use deadly force against a crew-served weapon (e.g. tanks, artillery, mortar, recoilless rifle) if that crew served weapon is aimed or targeted at the Force or persons under the protection of the Force, and with the apparent immediate capability and intent to harm.

(e) The Force may use deadly force to prevent the theft of the following property of substantial importance when there is no other way to prevent its loss:

1. Any weapon, crew-served weapon, ammunition or explosive under the control of the Forces;

2. Any military vehicles of the Force;

or

3. Any other property designated by the Commander.

c. Specific Rules.

(1) You are permitted to enter the land mass and airspace of the host countries for the purpose of ensuring compliance with the UN Mandate and Peace Agreement.

(2) Except for the Force conducting search and rescue operations, you are not permitted to enter territorial land, sea, or airspace of other countries.

(3) If you inadvertently enter territorial land, sea, or airspace of countries other than the host country, you may use force in self-defense to withdraw.

(4) Forces performing search and rescue missions shall use force as necessary in self-defense to include intrusion into any land territory and/or sea and/or airspace to ensure the recovery of any suspected survivors.

(5) You may not conduct offensive military operations (attacks, raids, ambushes, sniper operations, etc.) except in immediate response to a hostile act or imminent attack or as authorized by the Commander. This rule prohibits offensive military operations or
"preemptive" attacks against targets known in the past to have committed hostile acts.

(6) All personnel and vehicles passing through the Force checkpoints or within reasonable proximity of the Force's positions may be searched for weapons, ordnance, or other contraband as specified by the Commander. Within the weapons exclusion zone, the Force also may conduct searches of persons, vehicles, or places when there are reasonable grounds to suspect the presence of weapons, ordnance or contraband. The use of deadly force to conduct a search is governed by Rule 4. Absent any hostile or criminal acts, persons releasing weapons, ordnance, or contraband to the Forces will be released.

(7) If the Force is attacked or threatened by unarmed but hostile mobs or rioters, the Force may use the minimum force reasonably necessary to repel the attacks or threats. Authorized procedures include, but are not limited to, the following:

(a) Verbal warning to demonstrators;

(b) Show of force, including use of riot control formations;

(c) Warning shots if safe and militarily prudent;

(d) Use of riot control agents (RCA) when authorized by the NCA. See Paragraph 3e.

(8) Unattended means of force, including booby traps, mines, and trip guns are not authorized. Command detonated means of force (i.e., command detonated claymore mines) are not limited by this rule. Minefields may be used if recorded and marked on all four sides so as to prevent civilian casualties.

(9) The authority to detain needs careful coordination with the civil authorities where they exist. Detention is authorized for all persons, including civilians, who use or threaten to use force against the Force, persons with protected status, or protected property [3b(5)(e)]. Detention is also authorized for persons who enter an area under the control of implementation forces without prior authorization, or are suspected of breaches
of the Law of Armed Conflict. The use of minimum force is authorized to effect an authorized detention and to maintain effective control over persons once detained. Detained personnel will be evacuated to designated sites for turn-over to military police. All detainees will be accorded treatment equal to EPWs under the Geneva Convention, until such time as their proper status is determined by detention facility authorities, they are transferred to the local police, or they are released.

(10) Private property of others may not be seized without permission of the Commander or his designee.

(11) Proper contracting processes must be followed to obtain supplies and other items necessary to accomplish the mission.

d. Geographical Constraints. During all phases of operations in the host country, ground and air commanders will exercise caution to ensure that all international boundaries and air or sea space of nations other than the host countries are respected. To this end:

(1) Ground and Air Forces will refrain from approaching closer than one kilometer (km) to the borders of all neighboring countries.

(2) Forces engaged in ground or air operations in the vicinity of international borders will be briefed on the exact location of the border and the one km "border zone."

(3) No air or ground fire will be made within or directed to land within the one km border zone unless expressly authorized by the Commander or in self-defense. In all cases in which fire is directed at hostile targets inside the border zone, the fire will be directed so that it does not fall across an international boundary and on the territory of another state.

(4) No ground or air operations, to include "hot pursuit" of hostile forces in contact, will be conducted into the one km border zone or across any international boundary or within any nation's air space without authorization from the Commander of the Forces.

e. Chemical.
(1) The use of lethal or incapacitating chemical weapons is prohibited.

(2) Riot Control Agents (RCA) may only be employed by the Forces with express NCA authorization. If such authority is granted, Brigade commanders may authorize the use of RCA for:

(a) riot control situations in areas under military control.

(b) situations where civilians are used by hostile forces to mask or screen attacks and civilian casualties can be reduced by RCA employment.

(c) rescue/recovery missions in remote isolated areas, of downed air crews and passengers, and escaping prisoners.

(d) convoy operations to protect convoys from civil disturbances, terrorists, or other hostile forces.

(3) The use of RCA for any other purpose must be approved by the Commander or his designee.

(4) Herbicides will not be employed by the Forces without the approval of the Commander of the Forces. If the Commander approves the use of herbicides, they will only be used for control of vegetation within bases and installations or around their immediate defensive perimeter.

f. Incendiary air-launched or indirect fire incendiary weapons or rounds in the caliber of 105mm or larger (e.g., WP, napalm) are prohibited.

g. Air Defense. Surface-to-air missiles will engage aircraft only when they commit a hostile act or engage in an imminent attack. Except when engagement in unit self-defense is involved, authority for such engagement will rest with the designated air defense commander.

(1) A hostile act is committed by one aircraft when that aircraft:
(a) Fires on an intercepting coalition aircraft or clearly and persistently maneuvers into a position to attack:

(b) Releases, or is unmistakably preparing to release, bombs or fires missiles, rockets, guns at UNIF Forces; or

(c) Attacks Forces, land transportation, shipping, commercial air traffic, or the territory/property used by UNIF; or

(d) Carries out reconnaissance, shadowing or tattletaling in support of another unit that commits a hostile act.

(2) An imminent attack is an aggressive action by a potential enemy aircraft which appears to be preparatory to the commission of a hostile act. Commanders judging an imminent attack must weigh the threatening unit’s capability and preparedness to inflict damage and the evidence, particularly intelligence evidence, indicating an intent to attack. Evidence of an imminent attack is considered to exist when:

(a) An aircraft maneuvers into weapon launch position or prepares to fire, launch or release weapons against the Forces.

(b) An aircraft prepares to lay, sweep, or hunt mines or actually does so in waters used by the Forces.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT. See Base OPLAN.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL. See Base OPLAN.
This Page Intentionally Left Blank
1st Cavalry Division Standing ROE (6 APR 98)

1. RULES OF ENGAGEMENT.

   a. Right of Self-defense. **NOTHING IN THESE RULES OF ENGAGEMENT LIMITS THE RIGHT OF INDIVIDUALS AND UNITS TO USE FORCE PROPORTIONAL TO A THREAT TO DEFEND THEMSELVES, THEIR UNITS, AND FRIENDLY FORCES IN THE VICINITY.** Use of force, to include deadly force, is always authorized in defense of yourself, other U.S. and allied soldiers, persons under your protection, and in defense of property or installations specifically designated by your commander. Use only necessary and proportional force. Stop when the threat is neutralized. **Minimize collateral damage.**

   b. Rules of Engagement. These Rules of Engagement consist of five parts. Rules of engagement are based upon tactical, political, and legal requirements. The rules may change as circumstances change.

      (1) Part I, the **Rules in Force Matrix** shows what rules in each series of rules are in force. Once you are familiar with the rules pertaining to your particular battle operating system (BOS), you can refer to this section to quickly check the status of the current ROE in force.

      (2) Part II, the actual **Rules of Engagement**, show what actions are specifically authorized or unauthorized. The rules are grouped into series (10, 20, 30, 40, etc.) that generally correspond to specific BOS. This is the heart of the ROE system.

      (3) Part III, the **Weapons Release Authority Matrix**, shows what level of soldier and commander may authorize the use of particular weapons systems.

      (4) Part IV, the **ROE Card**, is issued to each soldier. The present card provides guidance on how to employ force against non-combatants. The card may be tailored for specific operations and changes as circumstances change.

      (5) Part V, **Request for Changes to ROE**, permits commanders to request changes to these ROE. Commanders may
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

always further restrict these ROE, but may not relax them without approval from higher headquarters. Address questions through operational channels to the SJA.

ACKNOWLEDGE

BYRNES
MG

OFFICIAL:

LISOWSKI
SJA

Appendices:

1 - Rules in Force
2 - Rules of Engagement
3 - Weapons Release Authority
4 - ROE Card
5 - Request For Changes to ROE
## APPENDIX 1 (RULES IN FORCE) TO 1st CAV DIV STANDING ROE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROE SERIES</th>
<th>RULES IN FORCE (&quot;X&quot;= Rule is in force)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Hostile Force Status</td>
<td>1 X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Weapon and Ammo Status</td>
<td>11 12 13 X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30. Target Identification*</td>
<td>31 X 32 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40. Demolition, Mines, and Obstacles</td>
<td>41 X 42 43 44 45 46 47 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50. Electronic Warfare (EW)</td>
<td>51 X 52 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60. Air Defense Artillery (ADA)</td>
<td>61 X 62 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70. Air Operations</td>
<td>71 X 72 73 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80. CAS Designated Targets</td>
<td>81 X 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90. Illumination</td>
<td>91 X 92 93 94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100. Riot Control Agents (RCA)</td>
<td>101 102 103 104 105 106</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Series 30, Targets in the vicinity of units in close contact must be identified by a friendly ground or air observer.
## APPENDIX 2 (RULES OF ENGAGEMENT) TO 1ST CAV DIV STANDING ROE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rule</th>
<th>Authorized</th>
<th>Unauthorized</th>
<th>HOSTILE FORCE STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Hostile Force Declared by NCA. Engage identifiable enemy forces on order. Combat ROE. Engage enemy until neutralized.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rule</th>
<th>Authorized</th>
<th>Unauthorized</th>
<th>WEAPON AND AMMUNITION STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>Carry weapons, no ammunition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>Carry weapons, ammunition in pouch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Carry weapons, ammunition loaded, uncharged.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Carry weapons, ammunition loaded, charged (locked and loaded).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rule</th>
<th>Authorized</th>
<th>Unauthorized</th>
<th>GRADUATED FORCE AGAINST NON-COMBATANTS (The Five Ss)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>SHOUT. Verbal order to halt or disband.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>SHOW. Show weapons or threat of force.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>SHOVE. Use physical force to restrain individuals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>SHOOT to warn (warning shot).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>SHOOT to disable, or SHOOT to kill. Deadly force authorized in self-defense. Use only necessary force, proportional to the threat. Minimize collateral damage to bystanders.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rule</th>
<th>Authorized</th>
<th>Unauthorized</th>
<th>TARGET IDENTIFICATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>X*</td>
<td></td>
<td>Positive identification is to be established visually. Use observed fires only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Identification is to be established visually or by any of the following means: Unmanned Aerial Vehicle (UAV) or Combat Observation Lasing Team (COLT).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Identification is to be established by one of the following means: visual, UAV, COLTS, Q36, Q37, Electronic Intelligence (ELINT), or Signals Intelligence (SIGINT), and Longbow Radar.

*Targets in the vicinity of units in close contact must be identified by a friendly ground or air observer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rule</th>
<th>Authorized</th>
<th>Unauthorized</th>
<th>DEMOLITION, MINES, AND OBSTACLES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>Preparation of non-explosive barriers and obstacles only for perimeter security of fixed installations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Preparation of non-explosive barriers and obstacles in attack zones, assembly areas or attack positions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Preparation but not the execution of demolition in specified areas designated by higher headquarters. (Guard until executed.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Laying, arming and detonating command detonated anti-personnel mines (Claymores) in declared secure areas, safe areas, or military restricted areas for protection, subject to marking, fencing, and reporting exact location of all mined areas IAW FM 20-32.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>DIV COM 4 HR*</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Emplacement and arming of remotely controlled minefields (MOPMS), subject to marking, fencing, and reporting exact locations of all mined areas IAW FM 20-32.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>DIV COM 4 HR*</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Use of scatterable ground delivered mines (FASCAM includes, RAAM, ADAM, ground delivered Volcano, and PDM).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Destruction of dams, bridges and tunnels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Destruction of public utilities: electrical stations, power plants, water treatment plants, and railyards.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(Examples: Ground Component Commander (GCC) retains approval authority for all air-delivered and aviation delivered FASCAM between the Forward Line of Troops (FLOT) and Deep Battle Synchronization Line (DBSL). Air Component Commander (ACC) controls air-delivered FASCAM forward of the DBSL.)*
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

Note.
1. Volcano is an air or ground deliverable scatterable mine dispensing system.
2. Gator is an air deliverable scatterable mine dispensing system.
3. MOPMS (Modular Packed Mine System) is a transportable scatterable mine dispensing system consisting of a radio control unit and a “suitcase” dispenser holding individual mines. MOPMS can be destroyed through a remote controlled unit (RCU).
4. ADAM (Area Denial Artillery Munition) is an artillery-deliverable scatterable mine dispensing system consisting of a projectile factory-packed with 36 anti-personnel mines.
5. RAAM (Remote Anti-Armor Mine) is an artillery-deliverable scatterable mine dispensing system consisting of a projectile factory-packed with 9 anti-tank mines.
6. PDM (Pursuit Deterrent Munition) is a manually activated Area Denial Artillery Munition with a hand grenade-type release firing mechanism, primarily employed by Special Operations Forces.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rule</th>
<th>Authorized</th>
<th>Unauthorized</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>ELECTRONIC WARFARE (These rules do not constrain the use of passive EP or self defensive EP)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Electronic Protection (EP). Actions taken to protect personnel, facilities, or equipment from any effects of friendly or enemy employment of EW that degrades, neutralizes, or destroys friendly combat capability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Electronic Warfare Support (ES). Actions tasked by, or under direct control of, an operational commander to search for, intercept, identify, and locate sources of radiated electromagnetic energy for immediate threat recognition in support of EW operations and other tactical actions such as threat avoidance, targeting, and homing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Electronic Attack (EA) (Jamming) (Joint Manuals refer to this as Electronic Combat). The use of electromagnetic or directed energy to attack personnel, facilities, or equipment with the intent of degrading, neutralizing, or destroying enemy combat capabilities.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### AIR DEFENSE ARTILLERY
(Weapons Control Status (WCS))

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rule</th>
<th>Authorized</th>
<th>Unauthorized</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>WCS Hold. Do not fire except in self-defense or in response to a formal order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>WCS Tight. Fire only at air targets positively identified as hostile according to the prevailing hostile criteria promulgated by the Air Control Authority.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>WCS Free. Fire at any target not positively identified as friendly.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### AIR-OPERATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rule</th>
<th>Authorized</th>
<th>Unauthorized</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>Brief pilots on location of friendly positions, enemy positions, and particularly enemy air defense positions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Offensive Counter Air (OCA).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Air-Interdiction (AI).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Close Air Support (CAS). Targets in the vicinity of units in close contact must be identified by a friendly ground or air observer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### CLOSE AIR SUPPORT (CAS) TARGETS
(To control the risk of collateral damage during operations which use technical means of target designation such as close air support (CAS) and Naval Gunfire Support.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rule</th>
<th>Authorized</th>
<th>Unauthorized</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>X*</td>
<td></td>
<td>Targets are to be designated visually (observed fire, laser, or marker rounds).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Targets are to be designated by the most feasible military means available (observed fire, laser, marker rounds, radar, and beacons.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Targets in the vicinity of units in close contact must be identified by a friendly ground or air observer.

### ILLUMINATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rule</th>
<th>Authorized</th>
<th>Unauthorized</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>91</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>Use of searchlights for illumination.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Use of pyrotechnics or flares for illumination.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Use of illuminating rounds (starshell) for illumination.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Use of all illumination systems.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Chemical Weapons

- Use of chemical weapons is prohibited.

#### Riot Control Agents (RCAs)

- RCAs may only be used upon receipt of proper National Command Authority (NCA) authorization, and when directed by higher headquarters.
- RCAs may only be employed in defensive military modes to save lives in areas under direct military control.

Examples include:

1. Rioting prisoners of war.
2. Rear echelon areas outside the zone of immediate combat to protect convoys from civil disturbances, terrorists, and paramilitary organizations.
3. Non-Combatant Evacuation Operations where civil disturbances, terrorists, or others threaten the operation in rear areas outside the zone of combat.

**RCAs** may not be employed in the following situations.

1. When civilians are used to mask or screen hostile forces.
2. Rescue missions in combat areas for downed aircrews and passengers.

#### Cayenne Pepper

Cayenne pepper is recognized as an RCA by the Chemical Weapons Convention Treaty. Use requires authorization from higher headquarters.

#### Herbicides

Herbicides may only be used upon receipt of proper NCA authorization and when directed by higher headquarters.
APPENDIX 3 (WEAPONS RELEASE AUTHORITY) TO 1ST CAV DIV
STANDING ROE

This matrix shows who has authority to employ various
weapons systems in operations other than self-defense.
- "X" marks the lowest level of release authority.
  Higher levels are clearly included.
- Subordinate commanders may further restrict release
  authority below their levels.
- This matrix does not restrict the use of any weapon
  system in self-defense. Weapon systems used should be
  proportional to the threat and consider collateral damage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Serial</th>
<th>Weapon</th>
<th>Level of Command With Release Authority</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>(b)</td>
<td>(c)</td>
<td>(d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Personal Weapon</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Machine Gun</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Grenade</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Light AT Weapon</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Heavy AT Weapon</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Mortar (Illum/Smk)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Mortar (HE)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Artillery</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Air Defense System</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Attack Helicopter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Close Air Support</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Mines</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Demolition</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Riot Control Agent</td>
<td>CS Gas and Pepper Spray</td>
<td>public utilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1ST CAVALRY DIVISION

STANDARD ROE

1. NOTHING IN THESE RULES PROHIBITS YOU FROM EXERCISING YOUR INHERENT RIGHT OF SELF-DEFENSE

2. Whenever you use force, use the minimum amount necessary and proportional to the threat. Use deadly force only as a last resort.

3. You may use force up to and including DEADLY FORCE:
   a. In self-defense, in response to an immediate threat of death or serious bodily injury.
   b. In defense of persons under your protection.
   c. To prevent the theft, damage, or destruction of firearms, ammunition, explosives or property designated by your commanders as vital to national security.

4. When the situation permits, use the following degrees of force:
   a. Shout. Verbal warnings to “Halt!”
   b. Show. Demonstrate the intent to use your weapon.
   d. Shoot. If necessary engage the threat with deliberately aimed shots until it is no longer a threat.
   e. Warning shots are strictly prohibited.

5. You may stop, search, and disarm persons as required to protect the force. Turn detainees over to proper authorities as soon as possible. Respect civilians and their property.
PROCEDURES AFTER FIRING A WEAPON

1. Give first aid as soon as it is safe to do so.

2. RECORD THE DETAILS OF THE INCIDENT:
   a. Date, time, and location.
   b. Unit and personnel involved.
   c. The events leading up to the firing.
   d. The reason personnel opened fire.
   e. The weapon fired.
   f. The specific results of the engagement.

3. Report above information and current situation through your chain of command as soon as possible.
APPENDIX 5 (REQUEST FOR CHANGES TO ROE) TO 1st CAV DIV STANDING ROE

AFVA- ____                  _______ 19__

MEMORANDUM THRU

FOR G3, 1st Cavalry Division, ATTN: Staff Judge Advocate

SUBJECT: ROE or Division Weapons Release Authority Change Request

1. Description of the ROE change requested: (self-explanatory, refer to the rule number)

2. Reason for requesting ROE change: (does the change address a current or anticipated problem?)

3. Justification for ROE change: (provide a reasoned explanation for the requested change)

4. Unit point of contact (name, unit, phone number, and electronic email address):
This Page Intentionally Left Blank
101st Airborne (Air Assault) Division Mini-Exercise ROE

221530DECL98
COMMANDER, 101st ABN DIV
FORT CAMPBELL, KY 42223

ANNEX E TO OPORD JAG STORM, HQs, TF EAGLE (U)
RULES OF ENGAGEMENT (U)

(U) REFERENCES:

a. CJCSI 3121.01, Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff Standing Rules of Engagement for U.S. Forces ((U) for training in Op Law Handbook)

b. DOD 5100.77 DOD Law of War Program (U)

1. (U) General Guidance. Rules of Engagement (ROE) are the primary tool used to regulate force during military operations.

2. (U) Specific Guidance. The CJCS SROE are in effect for all TF Eagle operations. Reference (a) applies.

   a. (U) Nothing in the ROE limit a commander’s inherent authority and obligation to use all necessary means available to take all appropriate action in self-defense of his unit and all other U.S. forces in his or her vicinity.

   b. (U) Hostile Act. An attack or other use of force by a foreign military or terrorist unit against the U.S., U.S. forces, or other designated persons and property, or a use of force intended to preclude or impede the mission of U.S. forces. A hostile act triggers the right to use proportional force in self-defense to deter, neutralize, or destroy the threat.

   c. (U) Hostile Intent. The threat of imminent use of force by a foreign military or terrorist unit against the U.S., U.S. forces, or other designated persons or property. Hostile intent must be evidenced by enemy actions, such as preparing to fire, launch, or release weapons against U.S. forces maneuvering to achieve position to do so. When hostile intent is present, the right exists to use
proportional force in self-defense to deter, neutralize, or destroy the threat.

d. (U) Hostile Force. Any identifiable force or unit that has been declared hostile by an appropriate authority. Once a force or unit is declared hostile, U.S. units may engage without observing a hostile act or demonstration of hostile intent. In other words, the basis for engagement shifts from conduct (act or intent) to status (identification). Authority to declare forces hostile is limited. See reference (a).

3. (U) This is an initial listing of supplemental ROE for OPORD JAG STORM. Additional ROE will be forwarded as necessary. Requests for additional ROE should be sent via message traffic to XVIII ABC.

   a. (U) 1111. Upon receipt of execute order, Northland forces throughout the TF Eagle AOR are declared hostile. These forces may include military as well as civilian vehicles, aircraft, or maritime vessels engaged in or directly supporting Northland military operations.

   b. (U) 1112. Self-defense of Southland forces is authorized IOT support defeat of Northland units and restore international border.

   c. (U) 1113. Use of force to defend designated foreign property is permitted to include designated C2 facilities (TV, radio, telephone, etc.) in order to preserve the infrastructure for transition to a follow-on force or authority.

   d. (U) 1114. Use of deadly force to protect civilians is authorized in Southland at locations supporting U.S. build-up and sustainment operations.

   e. (U) 1115. Use of force is authorized to defend Southland property (e.g.: APODS/SPODS/C2 facilities/POL/etc) in order to permit unimpeded force build-up and sustainment operations. This force includes up to deadly force.

   f. (U) 1116. Civilians infiltrating U.S. facilities in Southland may be controlled using appropriate force and turned over to Southland authorities. Commanders may
detain civilians who pose a clear threat to the lives or safety of others or pose a clear threat to the success of the mission. At earliest opportunity, turn detained persons over to Southland authorities or release. Civilians suspected of committing hostile acts against friendly forces will be detained until an Article 5 Tribunal determines their status per the Geneva Convention on prisoners of War. This ROE supports force protection and OPSEC.

g. (U) 1117. Use of non-deadly force for crowd control is authorized.

h. (U) 1118. Entry into the land territory, air space, and internal waters of Northland is authorized.

i. (U) 1119. Collateral damage to civilian objects and incidental injury or death to civilians is not to be disproportionate, or excessive in light of the military advantage gained, considering the operation as a whole and not only from isolated or particular parts.

j. (U) 1120. Engaging Northland targets located in the vicinity of civilian population centers (locations identified on a map by symbol or name as towns or larger) must be by observed fires. Indirect fires must be observed by HUMINT or UAV. Counter battery radar (Q36/Q37) does not constitute observed fire.

k. (U) 1121. Use of proximity or contact land mines is not authorized, except:

l. (U) 1121a. Use of scatterable mines (FASCAM) with 48-hour self-destruct is authorized with prior TF EAGLE Commander approval. Requests for authorization will include the following information: type of delivery system (i.e.; GATOR), location (minimum 6-digit grid coordinates), description of surrounding area, overwatch, intent, and trigger.

m. (U) 1121b. Use of non-self-destructing, non-self-deactivating anti-armor mines may be utilized to protect U.S. positions.

n. (U) 1122. All mines must be kept under continuous observation and removed when no longer necessary.
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

ACKNOWLEDGE:

CLARK
MG

OFFICIAL:

SCOTT
G3

DISTRIBUTION:
A
26th MEU(SOC) Standing Operations Order ROE Annex

Copy no. ___ of ___ copies
CE, 26TH MEU
CAMP LEJEUNE, NC

1 October 1996

APPENDIX 8 (Rules of Engagement) to ANNEX C (Operations) to 26th MEU Standing Operation Order (U)

References:  
(a) FM 27-10 Law of Land Warfare  
(b) ATP 110-34 International Law - The Conduct of Armed Conflict and Air Operations  
(c) CJCSI 3121.01

1. SITUATION

   a. General

       (1) These rules of engagement (ROE) govern the conduct of all 26th MEU forces in combat unless otherwise directed. ROE for a specific operation or situation, including changes to this appendix, will be published as required.

       (2) The right to self-defense is inherent in all these rules. Nothing in these ROE deny Marines the right to use force, including deadly force, to protect themselves, other military personnel, American citizens, military personnel or civilians of allied nations, or unarmed noncombatants of any nationality from death or serious bodily harm.

       (3) Numerous armed groups may be identified in the 26th MEU area of responsibility (AOR), including regular forces, organized military resistance forces sympathetic to the U. S. and/or hostile to the local government, and third country commando groups.

       (4) The indigenous population within our objective area may be generally positive toward the U. S. and hostile towards the enemy. Every effort must be made, consistent with the need to destroy enemy forces, to ensure that no act on the part of 26th MEU forces is interpreted as initiating hostile action against the local civilian
population. All 26th MEU commanders must conduct their operations in a manner consistent with the theme that Marine forces are liberators, not conquerors.

2. MISSION. To destroy enemy forces, while minimizing the impact of our operations on the local populace, their economy, and their culture, thereby encouraging local support of present and future combat operations.

3. EXECUTION

   a. Concept of Operation. Operations will be conducted, consistent with mission requirements and the right of self-defense, to minimize collateral damage and civilian dislocation. Commanders will use only that force necessary to accomplish the mission.

   b. Tasks and Responsibilities. (All 26th MEU Elements). All commanders will instruct their forces carefully as to the laws governing armed conflict. The following will be emphasized:

      (1) All military operations, particularly in built-up or populated areas, will be conducted using only that degree of force necessary and proportionate to accomplish the military mission.

      (2) Every effort will be made in the conduct of operations to avoid injury to noncombatants and damage to civilian property or facilities.

      (3) Care will be taken to prevent damage to all specially protected property such as hospitals, schools, churches, cultural monuments and similar facilities which are not to be attacked unless they are being used by the enemy for military operations or purposes. If the tactical situation permits, when hostile forces are using facilities in these categories for military purposes, approval from CO 26th MEU will be obtained prior to taking facilities under fire. Hospitals are to be given special protection. If the enemy uses a hospital for hostile purposes, it may be engaged. However, due warning must be given, and no attack may be conducted until reasonable time has expired.

      (4) Medical service emblems (the Red Cross, Red Crescent, and the Red Shield of David) will be respected,
and the personnel and facilities under their protection will not be attacked, harmed or hindered in the conduct of their humanitarian functions.

(5) Targets should be attacked only if by their nature, locations, purpose, or use, they effectively contribute to enemy military action, and their destruction, capture, or neutralization offers a definite military advantage.

(6) Combat forces will be withdrawn from populated areas, business districts, and indigenous buildings or facilities as soon as the situation permits.

(7) Shooting into civilian populated areas or buildings that are not defended or are not being used for military purposes is prohibited.

(8) Looting is prohibited. Taking legitimate war trophies will be authorized only by CO, 26th MEU.

(9) Civilians not taking part in the hostilities, particularly children, the elderly, and the infirm, will be protected from harm and their private property respected.

(10) No person will kill or wound any enemy who has surrendered, is unfit for combat by reason of sickness, wounds, or shipwreck, or is descending by parachute from a disabled aircraft.

(11) Anyone expressing a clear intention to surrender and not trying to escape capture may not be attacked. It is forbidden to declare that no quarter will be given or that no prisoners will be taken.

(12) Captured and detained persons will be afforded humane treatment.

(13) Medical care will be provided for sick or wounded captives on the same basis as provided for U.S. forces.

(14) Enemy aircraft may be engaged at will, consistent with references (a) and (b).
(15) An unidentified aircraft or civilian aircraft may not be the object of attack, unless at the time it represents a valid military objective, such as when there is an immediate military threat, or reliable information identifies the target as an asset of, or in use by, enemy military forces.

4. ADMINISTRATION

a. Changes or additions to these ROE must be approved by CO 26th MEU.

b. All war crimes and similar criminal violations, whether believed to be committed by enemy or U.S./friendly forces, will be reported immediately through command channels.

5. COMMAND AND CONTROL.

a. See Annex K.

b. Supplements to this portion of the 26th MEU Standing OPORD may include:

(1) Identification Friend or Foe (IFF) ROE policy.

(2) Relation of ROE to the use of code words and nicknames.

(3) Specific geographic boundaries or control measures where ROE are applicable.
JTF-160 (Operation Sea Signal) ROE Annex

ANNEX 1 TO APPENDIX F
RULES OF ENGAGEMENT (SAMPLE)
The following is a sample rules of engagement used by JTF 160 during operations of Haitian migrant camps in 1994. (Supplemental ROE approved in June of 1994 covering detention and search of migrant's/refugee's person and property is not included the sample ROE below.)

HEADQUARTERS
JOINT TASK FORCE 160
CAMP LEJEUNE, NC
11 FEBRUARY 1994

APPENDIX 8 TO ANNEX C TO JTF 160 OPLAN 1-94
RULES OF ENGAGEMENT FOR JTF 160 SECURITY FORCES

Reference: (a) USCINCLANT OPORD 2000-90, Appendix 8 to Annex C (Rules of Engagement)

1. General

a. Nothing in these rules infringes upon the inherent right to use reasonably necessary force to defend yourself or others against violent or dangerous personal attack.

b. The rules of engagement (ROE) are intended to prevent the indiscriminate use of force or other violations of law or regulations.

c. Commanders will ensure that all personnel know and understand these rules as they pertain to the performance of their duties.

d. Commanders must also take all measures necessary to reduce the likelihood of fratricide when deadly force is employed.

e. Warning shots are not authorized. Do not fire warning shots. Any shots fired will meet the requirements for use of deadly force listed in paragraphs 2 (c) and (d) below.

2. Rules of Engagement (ROE) for Camp Operation
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

a. Minimum Force Necessary. Use only the minimum force required to accomplish the mission.

b. Non-Deadly Force. Use non-deadly force to control disturbances, prevent crimes, and to detain persons who have committed crimes. Use the following increasing levels of force as a guideline:

1. Verbal order to stop, disperse, and return to billets or assembly area.
2. Physical restraint or apprehension of individuals.
3. Show of force, including use of military working dog teams.
4. High-pressure water hoses.
5. Other reasonable, necessary, and appropriate use of force.
6. Riot control agents, if authorized by Commander JTF 160. (Prior to CJTF-160 authorizing use, National Command Authority (NCA) must delegate approval through CINCUSACOM to CJTF-160.)

c. Requirements for Use of Deadly Force. Use deadly force only when all of the following conditions exist:

1. Lesser means have not worked or will not work, and
2. Use will not significantly increase the risk of death or serious bodily harm to innocent persons, and
3. You are protecting yourself or another person from deadly force or the imminent threat of deadly force.
4. Right to self-defense is overriding.

d. Deadly Force Special Instructions. These rules apply to situations involving use of deadly force:

1. When possible, warn the individual or group to stop/halt and that you are about to use deadly force.
2. Fire only at the individuals committing the hostile act or hostile intent.
3. Loading of weapons is a personal responsibility of officers and leaders. They will exercise strong command supervision to avoid routine, premature, or blanket weapons loading procedures.
4. You may not use deadly force against looters, trouble makers, or other criminals who do not present an actual or imminent threat to use deadly force themselves.
(5) Do not use weapons in an automatic firing mode, except as directed by the Commander JTF 160.
(6) Units will not deploy with crew served weapons during civil disturbances.
(7) M203/M79/Grenade Launchers. Grenade launchers may only be used with the M65ICS cartridges. Due to the incendiary nature of this RCA munitions, it will not be fired over crowds. It will only be fired under the control of a commissioned officer. [If authorized for employment by NCA.]
(8) Shotguns. Only the Commander JTF 160 may order that security force personnel be armed with shotguns.
(9) Arming/Equipping Troops. To ensure that minimum necessary force is used to accomplish the mission, the Commander JTF 160 or his designated representative will designate the arms and equipment that soldiers carry during civil disturbances operations. Use the following level designations to ensure clarity and brevity in arming level orders:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LEVEL</th>
<th>RIFLES</th>
<th>BAYONET</th>
<th>AMMUNITION/CHAMBER MAGAZINE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I*</td>
<td>At sling in scabbard</td>
<td>in ammo pouch/Empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II*</td>
<td>At port in scabbard</td>
<td>in ammo pouch/Empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>At port Fixed**</td>
<td>in ammo pouch/Empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>At port Fixed**</td>
<td>in weapon/Empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>At port Fixed**</td>
<td>in weapon/Round</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Commanders should consider arming personnel with batons in lieu of rifles.
**Fixed bayonets are useful in show of force actions. However, due to the danger of accidental injury, they should not be fixed when confronting non-violent crowds.

e. Special orders. Commanders will ensure that all personnel clearly understand the special orders in Tabs A through E. These rules describe in general terms the manner in which they must conduct themselves during migrant camp security operations.

f. Coordination Instructions

(1) Commanders will ensure that all personnel are briefed as to:
   (a) The background situation and the specific mission of the unit.
   (b) ROE governing the unit's specific situation.
   (c) A psychological orientation on the local situation, specifically addressing types of abuse which
military personnel may be expected to receive and the proper response to these types of abuse.

(d) Identification of other elements involved in the operation, to include their uniforms, location, and missions.

(e) The special orders at Tabs A through E.

(f) The requirement to immediately report violations of these rules as discussed below.

(g) The fact that they will be filmed during the operation by military and/or civilian camera teams and civilian news services.

(2) Subordinate commanders will not supplement these ROE. Commanders may address requests for supplements of ROE through JTF 160, ATTN: Staff Judge Advocate.

(3) Definitions

(a) Deadly Force. Force that is reasonably likely to result in death or serious bodily harm. Attacks with an edged weapon or use of a firearm are both examples of the uses of deadly force.

(b) Hostile Act. An attack or other use of deadly force against any person.

(c) Hostile Intent. The threat of the imminent use of deadly force by any person against any other person.

(4) ROE/Legal Violations. JTF 160 personnel will immediately report any violation or suspected violation of these rules or of the laws governing civil disturbances and disaster relief. They will report this through the chain of command or the senior person present.

TABS:

A-Special Orders for all Personnel
B-Special Orders for Skirmish Personnel
C-Special Orders for Snatch Team Personnel
D-Special Orders for Blocking and Reinforcing Force
E-Facilities Where Deadly Force is Authorized

Tabs
NOT Included
in this ROE
Handbook
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

**Operation Provide Comfort ROE Annex**

UNCLASSIFIED

o1 o3 o1330z MAY 91 00 00 UUUU
JTF BRAVO - PLEASE PASS COPY TO MCC, COL NAAB
CTF PROVIDE COMFORT/*COMCTF/*
JOINT TASK FORCE ALPHA HSSB SILOPI TU/
JOINT TASK FORCE ALPHA/
JOINT TASK FORCE BRAVO/
7440 CWP INCIRLIK AB TU/CC/
CTF 60/
INFO CTF PPVIDE COMFORT INCIRLIK AB TU/
USCINCEUR VAIHINGEN GE/*ECCAT/ECJS/SPACOS/*
USCINCENT/
AMEMBASSY ANKARA TU/
JUSMMAT ANKARA TU/

SUBJECT: RULES OF ENGAGEMENT - COMMANDER'S GUIDANCE

1. AS YOU PREPARE YOUR TROOPS TO CARRY OUT THEIR ASSIGNED TASKS WHILE PARTICIPATING IN OPERATION PROVIDE COMFORT, I EXPECT YOU TO BE GUIDED BY, AND TO HAVE THE SOLDIERS UNDER YOUR COMMAND OBSERVE THE FOLLOWING:

A. THIS IS A HUMANITARIAN ASSISTANCE OPERATION. THE NATIONS PARTICIPATING IN THIS RELIEF EFFORT ARE NOT CONDUCTING MILITARY COMBAT OPERATIONS.

B. YOU HAVE THE RIGHT TO USE FORCE IN SELF-DEFENSE. NOTHING IN THIS GUIDANCE NEGATES A COMMANDER'S OBLIGATION TO TAKE ALL NECESSARY ACTIONS FOR HIS UNIT'S SELF-DEFENSE.

C. CTF PROVIDE COMFORT FORCES MAY USE FORCE IN SELF-DEFENSE WHEN RESPONDING TO ATTACKS OR THREATS OF IMMINENT ATTACK AGAINST MULTINATIONAL FORCES, HUMANITARIAN RELIEF PERSONNEL AND REFUGEES.

D. USE ONLY THE MINIMUM NECESSARY AND PROPORTIONAL FORCE TO ELIMINATE THE THREAT AND CONTROL THE SITUATION.

E. DEADLY FORCE SHOULD ONLY BE USED TO PROTECT THE LIVES IN RESPONSE TO A HOSTILE ACT OR DEMONSTRATION OF HOSTILE INTENT.
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

IN DESIGNATED SECURITY AREAS, USE THE FOLLOWING GUIDELINES FOR DISARMING AND DETAINING:

(1) YOU WILL DISARM AND DETAIN ANY IRAQI SOLDIER OR MEMBER OF A PARAMILITARY SECURITY FORCE, OR ANY CIVILIAN POLICEMAN WITHOUT PROPER AUTHORIZATION, WITHIN A DESIGNATED SECURITY AREA. IMMEDIATELY NOTIFY THE MILITARY COORDINATION CENTER (MCC) THROUGH THE APPROPRIATE CHAIN OF COMMAND SO THAT THE IRAQI LIAISON OFFICER MAY RESPOND.

(2) USE THE MINIMUM FORCE NECESSARY TO DISARM AND DETAIN, UP TO AND INCLUDING THE USE OF DEADLY FORCE IF HOSTILE INTENT IS EXHIBITED OR A HOSTILE ACT COMMITTED.

2. THIS GUIDANCE DOES NOT ALTER THE ROE DIRECTED BY USCINCEUR TO OTHER NATIONAL COMMANDS FOR THIS OPERATION. IT ENABLES COMMANDERS TO PASS SUCCINCT GUIDANCE TO THE TROOPS. CARDS CONTAINING MY GUIDANCE WILL SOON BE ISSUED TO ALL FORCES. FOR U.S. FORCES: THIS CARD WILL SUPERSEDE ANY OTHER PREVIOUSLY ISSUED CARD INTERPRETING ROE.

3. ACKNOWLEDGE RECEIPT OF THIS MESSAGE TO THE CTF-JOC
OPERATION PROVIDE COMFORT

COMMANDER'S GUIDANCE ON USE OF FORCE

(as of 1 May 1991)

1. This is a humanitarian assistance operation. The multinational forces are not at war.

2. You have the right to use force in self-defense. Nothing in this guidance negates a commander's obligation to take all necessary actions for his unit's self-defense.

3. CTF Provide Comfort forces are authorized to use force in self-defense whom responding to attacks or threats of imminent attack against the multinational forces, humanitarian relief personnel and refugees.

4. Use only the minimum force necessary and proportional to eliminate the threat and control the situation.

5. Deadly force should only be used to protect lives in response to a hostile act or demonstration of hostile intent.

GUIDELINES FOR DISARMING AND DETAINING WITHIN SECURITY AREAS

You will disarm and retain any Iraqi soldier or member of a paramilitary security force, or any civilian policeman without proper authorization, within a designated security area. Immediately contact the Military Coordination Center through your chain of command so that the Iraqi Liaison Officer will respond.

USE THE MINIMUM FORCE NECESSARY TO DISARM AND DETAIN, UP TO AND INCLUDING THE USE OF DEADLY FORCE IF HOSTILE INTENT IS EXHIBITED OR A HOSTILE ACT COMMITTED.
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

SUMMARY OF UK ROE

COs MAY AUTHORIZE SERVICEMEN TO CARRY LOADED WEAPONS. SERVICEMEN CAN USE THOSE WEAPONS IN ACCORDANCE WITH WHITE CARD JSP 385 (EXCEPT PARA 5b). THIS MEANS THEY CAN OPEN FIRE AS A LAST RESORT TO STOP A PERSON COMMITTING OR ABOUT TO COMMIT AN ACT LIKELY TO ENDANGER LIFE AND THERE IS NO OTHER WAY TO STOP THEM.

HOSTILE UNITS MAY ONLY BE ATTACKED AFTER THEY HAVE DISCHARGED WEAPONS AGAINST OWN OR FRIENDLY FORCES OR CIVILIANS UNDER PROTECTION BUT ONLY AS A LAST RESORT TO SAVE LIFE.

ENTRY INTO IRAQ IS PERMITTED ONLY FOR CONDUCTING ACTIVITIES IN SUPPORT OF THE HUMANITARIAN OBJECTIVES OF OP HAVEN.

THERE ARE NO APPROACH LIMITATIONS GOVERNING THE POSITIONING OF OWN FORCES RELATIVE TO POTENTIALLY HOSTILE FORCES.

TROOPS CAN MAINTAIN RADAR CONTACT, ENERGIZE FIRE CONTROL RADARS, MOVE ARMAMENTS AND DISPLAY SMALL ARMS IN THE PRESENCE OF AND IN THE DIRECTION OF HOSTILE OR POTENTIALLY HOSTILE FORCES.

ALL WEAPON SYSTEMS AND INDIVIDUAL WEAPONS CAN BE USED FOR EXERCISE AND PEACETIME TRAINING IN TURKEY BUT NOT IN IRAQ IN PARTICULAR ARTY MUST NOT ENTER IRAQ UNLESS AUTHORIZED BY MOD OR CBFH AUTHORIZES SUCH A MOVE IN ORDER TO DEAL WITH A SPECIFIC THREAT.

ECM IS PERMITTED BUT ONLY FOR SELF-DEFENSE PURPOSES.

ILLUMINATING ROUNDS CAN BE USED TO ILLUMINATE TARGETS.

IT IS PERMITTED TO ESCORT UNAUTHORIZED IRAQI PERSONNEL OUT OF THE SECURE AREA WHICH IS THE TERRITORY WITHIN A 30 KM RADIUS OF ZAKHU, AL ALMADIYAH AND SURIYA RESPECTIVELY AND WITHIN THE CORRIDOR FORMED BY DRAWING LINES CONNECTING THE THREE CIRCLES ALONG THE NORTHERN AND SOUTHERN BOUNDARIES. IF SUCH PEOPLE OFFER RESISTANCE THE MINIMUM NECESSARY PHYSICAL FORCE MAY BE USED. WEAPONS ARE ONLY TO BE USED IN SELF-DEFENSE.
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

LF  300797  INTERSECTION OF PRESENT 3D KM ZONE
LF  300690  RIDGELINE
LF  185690  RIDGELINE
LF  175710  RIDGELINE
LF  150710  INTERSECTION WITH FAYDAH TRG AREA
LF  145760  INTERSECTION WITH FAYDAH TRG AREA
LF  090760  INTERSECTION WITH FAYDAH TRG AREA
LF  090710  INTERSECTION WITH FAYDAH TRG AREA
KF  992710  RESERVOIR

HOWEVER THESE EXCLUSIONARY RULES SHOULD ONLY BE OPERATED
WITHIN TAOR BOUNDARIES ORDERED BY COMD JTF-B. UNLESS THEY
APPEAR TO BE A THREAT 12 TPS OUTSIDE TAOR BOUNDARIES SHOULD
BE IGNORED EVEN IF THEY APPEAR TO BE INSIDE THE SECURE
AREA.

IF SUCH PEOPLE OFFER RESISTANCE THE MINIMUM NECESSARY
PHYSICAL FORCE MAY BE USED. WEAPONS ARE ONLY TO BE USED IN
SELF-DEFENSE.

FRENCH RULES OF ENGAGEMENT

Valid for French military forces under your command in
OP LIBAGE in Turkey and Iraq. The fundamental principle is
one of legitimate self-defence.

1. This principle applies to French personnel and
   property.

2. It is extended to:
   a. Refugees staying in our camps or being
      carried in our vehicles whilst we are providing aid for
      them.
   b. Individuals belonging to foreign military
      and civilian relief agencies engaged in providing
      international humanitarian aid.

3. All French military personnel, their arms and
   ammunition, by day and by night whether inside or outside
   our barracks or traveling on military transport may open
   fire without warning if he or she of the people mentioned
   in paras. 1 or 2 above is under armed attack.
4. In the case of our attack on property it is only permissible to open fire after challenging and when there is no other way of stopping the attack.

5. In every case firing is to stop immediately when the attack ceases.

6. These rules are to be followed strictly and are to be explained to all ranks.

   a. You are only to open fire when there is a grave and immediate danger to life.

   b. We are not here to maintain or restore order.

   c. With regard to our allies it is necessary to distinguish between two situations:

      (1) You can go to the aid of an individual who is being attacked.

      (2) You can only go to the aid of an allied unit under attack when ordered to do so by your Commanding Officer.

Finally I remind you that when there is a shooting incident and someone is injured, you must send for the military police as soon as possible.
Sample ROE Authorization Serial

IMMEDIATE - UNCLASSIFIED - GENSER MESSAGE
101925Z NOV 02
MSGID/OPERATION FD99 EXERCISE EXERCISE EXERCISE//
GENTEXT/USCINCSO ROE AUTHORIZATION SERIAL ONE///
FROM: USCINCSO MIAMI FL
TO: USCINCSACOM NORFOLK VA
     USCINTRANS SCOTT AFB IL
     COMMARFOR SOUTH NORFOLK VA
     CINCLANTFLT NORFOLK VA
     USSOUTHAF DAVIS MONTHAN AFB AZ
     CDR USARSO FT CLAYTON PA
     COMSOCSOUTH COROZAL PA
     USSOUTHAF DAVIS MONTHAN AFB AZ/CC//
     COMSOCSOUTH FT CLAYTON PA
     COMLANTAREA COGARD
     CJTF 780
INFO: CJCS WASHINGTON DC
     NMCC WASHINGTON DC
     JOINT STAFF WASHINGTON DC//J3 WHEM//
     SECSTATE WASHINGTON DC
     SECDEF WASHINGTON DC//USDP-CH/ASD:PA/
     CNO WASHINGTON DC
     CMC WASHINGTON DC
     CSAF WASHINGTON DC
     CSA WASHINGTON DC
     COMDT COGARD WASHINGTON DC
     AMEMB PANAMA
     USDAO PANAMA
     AMEMB COSTA RICA
     USDAO COSTA RICA
     AMEMB COLOMBIA
     USDAO COLOMBIA
     AMEMB BELIZE
     USDAO BELIZE
     AMEMB CAYMANS
     USDAO CAYMANS
     AMEMB DUTCH ANTILLES
     USDAO DUTCH ANTILLES
     AMEMB GUATEMALA
     USDAO GUATEMALA
     AMEMB GUYANA
     USDAO GUYANA
     AMEMB HONDURAS

B-12-1
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

USDAO HONDURAS
AMEMB JAMAICA
USDAO JAMAICA
AMEMB MEXICO
USDAO MEXICO
AMEMB NICARAGUA
USDAO NICARAGUA
AMEMB EL SALVADOR
USDAO EL SALVADOR
AMEMB SURINAM
USDAO SURINAME
AMEMB VENEZUELA
USDAO VENEZUELA
CDR FORSCOM FT MCPHERSON GA
HQ AMC SCOTT AFB IL//DO/DP/LG//
HQ AMC TACC CMD CTR SCOTT AFB IL//XOP/XOS//
CDR MTMC FALLS CHURCH VA
COMSC WASHINGTON DC
DISA WASHINGTON DC
DIA WASHINGTON DC
DLA FT BELVOIR VA/CAIL//DLSC-C//DCMC//
HQ NIMA FAIRFAX VA
CIA WASHINGTON DC
FBI WASHINGTON DC
DEA WASHINGTON DC
USCS WASHINGTON DC
COMDT CGARD WASHINGTON DC
CDR FORSCOM, FT MCPHERSON GA
CDR SOCACOM NORFOLK VA
CDRXVIIIABNCFORCESTR FT BRAGG//G3//
CG MARFORLANT
HQ ACC LANGLEY AFB VA//CC//
CDR 101ST ABN DIV (ASSLT) FT CAMPBELL KY
CDR 82ND ABN DIV FT BRAGG NC
NAVSTAGITMO//00/N3/N4//
COMLANTAREACOGARD PORTSMOUTH VA
DFAS WASHINGTON DC//M//
DFAS CENTER DENVER CO
JWAC DAHLGREN VA
WESTERN HEMISPHERE GROUP
CTU 33.3.1
COMCARGRU TWO
COMPHIBRON SIX
TWO TWO MEU
7TH SPECIAL FORCES GROUP, FT BRAGG NC
358TH CA BDE FT BRAGG NC
4TH PSYOP GP FT BRAGG NC

B-12-2
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

NSWG LITTLE CREEK VA
75TH Rngr Regt FT Benning GA
Distr
SJS-N/CJCS:
/CDRUSELNRAD Peterson AFB CO
COMUSARCENT FT McPherson GA
USCENTAF Shaw AFB SC//CC//COMUSNAVCENT
CINCPACFLT Pearl Harbor HI
CINCPACAF Hickam AFB HI
CG MARFORPAC

UNCLASSIFIED
MSGID/GENADMIN/SC//SUBJ/USCINCSO ROE Authorization Serial One/Operation Blue Corvina//POC/STAI/LTC/SJA/USACOMJWFC/DSN 668-7196/COM (757) 686-7196//REF/A/DOC/CJCSI 3121.01/1OCT94/22 DEC 94//REF/B/MSG/USCINCSO/041445Z0CT02/-/NOTAL//REF/C/MSG/JTF 780/081800Z0CT02/-/NOTAL//REF/D/MSG/JTF 780/091900Z0CT02/-/NOTAL//REF/E/MSG/JTF 780/141900Z0CT02/-/NOTAL//REF/F/MSG/USCINCSO/221400Z0CT02/-/NOTAL//REF/G/MSG/JTF 780/261800Z0CT02/-/NOTAL//REF/H/MSG/JTF 780/312000Z0CT02/-/NOTAL//REF/I/MSG/JTF 780/032100ZNOV02/-/NOTAL//AMPN/REF A IS THE STANDING RULES OF ENGAGEMENT FOR U.S.
FORCES. REF B IS THE USCINCSO OPERATIONS ORDER FOR
OPERATION BLUE CORVINA. REF C REQUESTS APPROVAL OF
SUPPLEMENTAL ROE MEASURES FOR PHASES 1-3 OF THE OPERATION.
REF D CONTAINS THE BASE ORDER AND ALL APPROPRIATE ANNEXES
FOR EXECUTING PHASES 1-3 OF THE OPERATION. REF E REQUESTS
GUIDANCE ON ACTIONS TO BE TAKEN IF THIRD COUNTRY SHIPS OR
AIRCRAFT IMPEDE SHIPPING. REF F PROVIDES AMPLIFYING
INSTRUCTIONS AND ADDITIONAL TASKINGS TO COMPONENTS. REF G
REQUESTS AUTHORIZATION TO RESTRICT CIVIL AIR TRAFFIC IN JOA
AND ISSUANCE OF DEMARCHE WARNING THAT MOVEMENT OR
EMPLOYMENT OF KILO SUB, WMD, MR 2 AND 3 FORCES, OR SEA
MINES WILL CONSTITUTE OFFENSIVE ACTION. REF H MODIFIES
PROPOSED DEFINITION OF HOSTILE FORCES DURING PHASE 3 OF THE
OPERATION. REF I REQUESTS AUTHORIZATION TO CONDUCT SPOT
JAMMING PRIOR TO H-HOUR AND EMPLOY CBU-89 GATOR MINES
VICINITY WMD STORAGE FACILITY AT H-HOUR//TIMEZONE/Z//
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

NARR/(U) EXERCISE FD 98/99. THIS MESSAGE PROMULGATES USCINCSOUTH RULES OF ENGAGEMENT (ROE) AUTHORIZATION SERIAL ONE FOR OPERATION BLUE CORVINA. PARAGRAPHS ONE THROUGH SIX CONTAIN ROE FOR PHASE TWO (DEPLOYMENT). PARAGRAPH SEVEN CONTAINS ROE FOR PHASE THREE (EMPLOYMENT/ DECISIVE OPS). ROE FOR PHASE FOUR (TRANSITION) AND PHASE FIVE (REDEPLOYMENT) WILL BE PUBLISHED BY SEPARATE MESSAGE. THESE ROE APPLY TO ALL U.S. FORCES OPCON TO JTF 780 OR LOCATED WITHIN THE JTF 780 JOA. COMMANDERS HAVE THE INHERENT AUTHORITY AND OBLIGATION TO USE ALL NECESSARY MEANS AVAILABLE AND TO TAKE ALL APPROPRIATE ACTION IN SELF-DEFENSE OF THEIR UNIT AND OTHER U.S. FORCES IN THE VICINITY. IN ADDITION, COMMANDERS MAY USE ANY LAWFUL WEAPON OR TACTIC AVAILABLE FOR MISSION ACCOMPLISHMENT UNLESS RESTRICTED BY AN APPROVED SUPPLEMENTAL ROE MEASURE. THIS MESSAGE GRANTS CERTAIN AUTHORITIES NORMALLY WITHHELD BY THE NCA OR COMBATANT COMMANDER, AND IMPOSES CERTAIN RESTRICTIONS ON THE USE OF FORCE FOR MISSION ACCOMPLISHMENT. COMMANDERS AT EVERY ECHELON MAY IMPOSE ADDITIONAL RESTRICTIONS ON THE USE OF FORCE FOR MISSION ACCOMPLISHMENT AS THEY DEEM APPROPRIATE.

RMKS/1. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. U.S. NATIONAL POLICY DURING PHASE TWO (DEPLOYMENT) IS ALPHA. THE U.S. CONTINUES TO SUPPORT EFFORTS TO ACHIEVE A PEACEFUL SOLUTION TO THE BORDER CONFLICT BETWEEN CENTRALIA AND COUNTRY WEST. IF THOSE EFFORTS FAIL, THE U.S. WILL TAKE APPROPRIATE ACTION, INCLUDING THE USE OF ARMED FORCE, TO UPHOLD AND IMPLEMENT UNITED NATIONS SECURITY COUNCIL RESOLUTION (UNSCR) 2060 AND ALL SUBSEQUENT RELEVANT RESOLUTIONS, AND TO FULFILL ITS OBLIGATION UNDER THE INTER-AMERICAN TREATY OF RECIPROCAL ASSISTANCE (RIO PACT) TO ASSIST COUNTRY WEST IN EXERCISING THE INHERENT RIGHT OF INDIVIDUAL OR COLLECTIVE SELF-DEFENSE RECOGNIZED BY ARTICLE 51 OF THE UNITED NATIONS CHARTER. PRIORITY OF EFFORT REMAINS NORTHEASTLAND.

2. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. U.S. MILITARY POLICY DURING PHASE TWO (DEPLOYMENT) IS TO EXECUTE FLEXIBLE DETERRENT OPTIONS (FDOS) TO REINFORCE ONGOING DIPLOMATIC EFFORTS. U.S. FORCES ARE TO AVOID COMBAT ACTION EXCEPT IN SELF-DEFENSE. NOTHING IN THESE ROE LIMITS A COMMANDER'S INHERENT AUTHORITY AND OBLIGATION TO USE ALL NECESSARY MEANS AVAILABLE AND TO TAKE ALL APPROPRIATE ACTION IN SELF-DEFENSE OF THAT COMMANDER'S UNIT AND OTHER U.S. FORCES IN THE VICINITY.

3. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. NEW USE OF FORCE MEASURES AUTHORIZED DURING PHASE TWO (DEPLOYMENT).

3.A. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). USE OF RIOT CONTROL AGENTS (RCA), INCLUDING CHEMICAL IRRITANTS
SUCH AS CAYENNE PEPPER SPRAY, IS AUTHORIZED IN SELF-DEFENSE UNDER THE FOLLOWING CIRCUMSTANCES:
3.A.1. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. IN RIOT CONTROL SITUATIONS IN AREAS UNDER DIRECT AND DISTINCT U.S. MILITARY CONTROL.
3.A.2. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. IN SITUATIONS IN WHICH CIVILIANS ARE USED TO MASK OR SCREEN ATTACKS AND CIVILIAN CASUALTIES CAN BE REDUCED OR AVOIDED.
3.A.3. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. IN RESCUE MISSIONS IN REMOTELY ISOLATED AREAS, OF DOWNED AIRCREWS AND PASSENGERS, AND ESCAPING PRISONERS.
3.A.4. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. IN REAR ECHELON AREAS OUTSIDE THE ZONE OF IMMEDIATE COMBAT TO PROTECT CONVOYS FROM CIVIL DISTURBANCES, TERRORISTS, AND PARAMILITARY ORGANIZATIONS.
3.A.5. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. USE OF RCA REQUIRES THE PRIOR APPROVAL OF CJTF 780. CJTF 780 MAY DELEGATE RCA RELEASE AUTHORITY TO COMMANDERS IN THE GRADE OF O5 OR ABOVE. CJTF 780 MAY FURTHER DELEGATE THE AUTHORITY TO USE CAYENNE PEPPER FOR INDIVIDUAL SELF-DEFENSE.
3.A.6. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. NOTWITHSTANDING THE FOREGOING AUTHORIZATIONS, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES WILL RCA BE USED AGAINST IDENTIFIED MEMBERS OF THE CENTRALIAN NATIONAL ARMED FORCES (CNAF), CENTRALIAN POLICE, OR CENTRALIAN PARAMILITARY UNITS.
3.B. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). ENTRY INTO THE TERRITORY, WATERS, AND AIRSPACE OF THE FOLLOWING COUNTRIES IS AUTHORIZED:
3.B.1. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. COUNTRY WEST, EXCEPT THOSE AREAS OF COUNTRY WEST UNDER CENTRALIAN CONTROL.
3.B.2. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. CENTRALIA AND THOSE AREAS OF COUNTRY WEST UNDER CENTRALIAN CONTROL UNDER THE FOLLOWING CIRCUMSTANCES:
3.B.2.A. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. AFTER H-72, TO CONDUCT SPECIAL RECONNAISSANCE (SR) MISSIONS, SUBJECT TO THE PRIOR APPROVAL OF USCINCSOUTH.
3.B.2.B. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. AFTER H-12, TO CONDUCT DIRECT ACTION (DA) MISSIONS, SUBJECT TO THE PRIOR APPROVAL OF USCINCSOUTH.
3.C. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). USE OF ALL NECESSARY MEANS AVAILABLE DURING THE CONDUCT OF SPECIAL OPERATIONS PRIOR TO H-HOUR IS AUTHORIZED.
3.C.1. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. THE TERM QUOTE ALL NECESSARY MEANS AVAILABLE ENDQUOTE REFERS TO ALL LAWFUL WEAPONS AND TACTICS AVAILABLE OTHER THAN NUCLEAR AND CHEMICAL WEAPONS OR MUNITIONS, WHICH ARE PROHIBITED UNLESS SPECIFICALLY AUTHORIZED BY THE NCA.
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

3.D.1. (U) COUNTRY WEST’S ARMED FORCES.
3.D.2. (U) ARMED FORCES OF THOSE STATES PARTICIPATING IN MARITIME INTERCEPTION OPERATIONS (MIO).
3.E. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). USE OF MINIMUM FORCE TO PROTECT CIVILIANS IN COUNTRY WEST IS AUTHORIZED.
3.E.1. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. THE TERM QUOTE MINIMUM FORCE ENDQUOTE REFERS TO THOSE MINIMUM ACTIONS, INCLUDING THE USE OF ARMED FORCE, SUFFICIENT TO BRING A SITUATION UNDER CONTROL OR TO DEFEND AGAINST A HOSTILE ACT OR HOSTILE INTENT. ALL ACTIONS MUST CEASE AS SOON AS THE TARGET COMPLIES WITH INSTRUCTIONS OR CEASES HOSTILE ACTION. THE FIRING OF WEAPONS IS TO BE CONSIDERED A MEANS OF LAST RESORT.
3.F. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). USE OF MINIMUM FORCE TO DEFEND FOREIGN PROPERTY THAT HAS BEEN DESIGNATED BY A COMMANDER AS MISSION ESSENTIAL IS AUTHORIZED.
3.F.1. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. MISSION ESSENTIAL PROPERTY IS PROPERTY THAT IS REQUIRED FOR A UNIT’S SELF-DEFENSE OR MISSION ACCOMPLISHMENT. EXAMPLES INCLUDE APODS, SPODS, C2 FACILITIES, AND POL.
3.G. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). CJTF 780 IS DELEGATED AUTHORITY TO JUDGE WHETHER A MAJOR ATTACK AGAINST U.S. FORCES, COUNTRY WEST’S ARMED FORCES, OR THE ARMED FORCES OF THOSE STATES PARTICIPATING IN MIO IS THE FIRST IN A SERIES OF ATTACKS AND, IN THIS EVENT, IS AUTHORIZED TO ATTACK ALL ENEMY UNITS THAT CONSTITUTE AN IMMEDIATE THREAT TO THOSE FORCES.
3.I. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). UNITS (SUCH AS RECONNAISSANCE AIRCRAFT) THAT HAVE SHOWN AN ACTIVE INTEGRATION WITH AN ATTACKING FORCE ARE DESIGNATED HOSTILE AND MAY BE ENGAGED.
3.J. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). TRAINING OR SPOTLIGHTING WITH A DIRECTED-ENERGY WEAPON OR DEVICE IS AUTHORIZED DURING THE CONDUCT OF SPECIAL OPERATIONS PRIOR TO H-HOUR.
LASER DESIGNATORS AND RANGE FINDERS TO SUPPORT PRECISION
GUIDED MUNITION (PGM) EMPLOYMENT.
3.K. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). USE
OF MINIMUM FORCE TO CAUSE VESSELS TO STOP AND SUBMIT TO
BOARD AND SEARCH TO CARRY OUT ASSIGNED TASKS IS AUTHORIZED.
3.L. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000).
ENTRY INTO COUNTRY WEST’S AND CENTRALIA’S TERRITORY,
WATERS, AND AIRSPACE FOR SEARCH AND RESCUE OPERATIONS (SAR)
IS AUTHORIZED.
VISUAL ILLUMINATION OF CONTACTS IS AUTHORIZED. USE OF
PYROTECHNICS REQUIRES CTF OR HIGHER APPROVAL.
3.N. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000).
AERIAL PHOTOGRAPHY OR AERIAL INSPECTION IS PERMITTED AS
REQUIRED FOR MISSION ACCOMPLISHMENT. APPROACH LIMITATIONS
SET BY MEASURE 000 APPLY.
3.O. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000).
EXCEPT AS OTHERWISE AUTHORIZED BY THESE ROE, DO NOT
APPROACH CENTRALIAN FORCES CLOSER THAN THREE NAUTICAL MILES
(6,540 METERS) WITHOUT THE PRIOR APPROVAL OF USCINCSOUTH.
ON-SCENE COMMANDER MAY TEMPORARILY DETAIN CIVILIANS WHO
POSE A CLEAR THREAT TO THE LIVES OR SAFETY OF OTHERS OR
THREATEN THE SUCCESS OF THE MISSION. AT THE EARLIEST
OPPORTUNITY, DETAINED PERSONS WILL BE TURNED OVER TO HOST
NATION AUTHORITIES OR RELEASED.
3.Q. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000).
AVOID COMBAT ACTION EXCEPT IN SELF-DEFENSE.
AVOID ANY FORM OF PROVOCATION OR AGGRESSIVE ACTION OR
MANEUVERING.
3.S. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). USE
OF MINIMUM FORCE IS AUTHORIZED TO PROTECT NATIONAL SECURITY
ASSETS OR MISSION ESSENTIAL PROPERTY.
3.S.1. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. THE TERM QUOTE NATIONAL
SECURITY ASSETS ENDQUOTE REFFERS TO U.S. ASSETS SPECIFICALLY
DESIGNATED AS VITAL TO NATIONAL SECURITY BECAUSE THEIR
LOSS, DAMAGE, OR COMPROMISE WOULD SERIOUSLY JEOPARDIZE THE
FULFILLMENT OF A NATIONAL DEFENSE MISSION. EXAMPLES
INCLUDE NUCLEAR WEAPONS; NUCLEAR C4 FACILITIES; AND
DESIGNATED RESTRICTED AREAS CONTAINING STRATEGIC
OPERATIONAL ASSETS, SENSITIVE CODES, OR SPECIAL ACCESS
PROGRAMS.
3.T. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). WARN
DESIGNATED UNITS OF INTERCEPTION OR AREA OF INTERCEPTION.
ISSUE DIVERSION INSTRUCTIONS. VESSELS INBOUND TO CENTRALIA
DECLARING FOR CENTRALIAN PORTS WITH CARGOES IN VIOLATION OF SANCTIONS WILL BE GIVEN THE OPTION OF DIVERTING TO A PORT OF THE VESSEL’S CHOICE NOT IN THE VICINITY OF CENTRALIA.

ESCORT DESIGNATED UNITS OUT OF THE INTERCEPTION AREA.

3.V. (U) EXERCISE FD 98–99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000).
SEIZE DESIGNATED UNITS AS NECESSARY TO ACCOMPLISH TASKS.

SEARCH OR BOARD DESIGNATED UNITS.

3.X. (U) EXERCISE FD 98–99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000).
SEARCH OR BOARDING PARTIES ARE TO BE ARMED.

3.Y. (U) EXERCISE FD 98–99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). IF WEATHER DOES NOT PERMIT BOARDING, DIRECT SHIPS TO THE NEAREST PORT OR LEEWARD SHELTER.

3.Z. (U) EXERCISE FD 98–99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000).
SEIZE DESIGNATED DOCUMENTS IN DESIGNATED UNITS.

3.AA. (U) EXERCISE FD 98–99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000).
SEIZE DESIGNATED CARGO IN DESIGNATED UNITS IF PRACTICABLE.

3.B.B. (U) EXERCISE FD 98–99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000).
USE OF WARNING SHOTS IS AUTHORIZED UNDER THE FOLLOWING CIRCUMSTANCES:


3.BB.2. (U) EXERCISE FD 98–99. THE TERM QUOTE WARNING SHOTS ENDQUOTE REFERS TO THE FIRING OF SHOTS OR DELIVERY OF ORDNANCE IN THE VICINITY OF A PERSON, VESSEL, OR AIRCRAFT AS A SIGNAL TO IMMEDIATELY CEASE ACTIVITY. WARNING SHOTS ARE USUALLY ONE STEP IN A SERIES OF ACTIONS DESIGNED TO CONTROL A SITUATION WITHOUT RESORTING TO DIRECTING DEADLY FORCE TO DISABLE OR DESTROY.

3.CC. (U) EXERCISE FD 98–99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). IN ALL SITUATIONS INVOLVING STOP AND SEARCH, USE PHOTOGRAPHIC OR VIDEO CAMERA RESOURCES TO RECORD LOG AND MANIFEST REVIEW AND/OR CARGO INSPECTION.

3.DD. (U) EXERCISE FD 98–99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). USE OF DISABLING FIRE IS AUTHORIZED SUBJECT TO THE FOLLOWING LIMITATIONS:

3.DD.1. (U) EXERCISE FD 98–99. DISABLING FIRE WILL BE EMPLOYED IN A MANNER LEAST LIKELY TO SINK THE VESSEL AND WILL NOT BE DIRECTED AT PERSONS ON BOARD.

3.DD.2. (U) EXERCISE FD 98–99. THE TARGET VESSEL WILL BE WARNED IN ADVANCE, IF PRACTICABLE, THAT DISABLING FIRE IS ABOUT TO BE EMPLOYED.

3.DD.3. (U) EXERCISE FD 98–99. USE OF DISABLING FIRE REQUIRES THE PRIOR APPROVAL OF USCINCSOUTH.

3.DD.4. (U) EXERCISE FD 98–99. THE TERM QUOTE DISABLING FIRE ENDQUOTE REFERS TO THE FIRING OF ORDNANCE BY SHIPS OR
AIRCRAFT AT THE STEERING OR PROPULSION SYSTEM OF A VESSEL. THE INTENT IS TO DISABLE WITH MINIMUM INJURY TO PERSONNEL OR DAMAGE TO VESSEL.

3.EE. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). BOARDING PARTY USE OF FORCE IS AUTHORIZED SUBJECT TO THE FOLLOWING LIMITATION: ANY USE OF FORCE BY BOARDING PARTIES MUST BE LIMITED TO THE MINIMUM NECESSARY AND DESIGNED TO ACHIEVE THE DESIRED RESULT WITH MINIMUM INJURY TO PERSONS AND PROPERTY.

3.FF. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). AIRCRAFT WILL OBSERVE U.S.-RECOGNIZED AIR DEFENSE IDENTIFICATION ZONE(S) (ADIZ) AND FOREIGN TERRITORIAL AIRSPACE IN ACCORDANCE WITH INTERNATIONAL CIVIL AVIATION ORGANIZATION (ICAO) RULES OF THE AIR. U.S. AIRCRAFT WILL NOT ENTER FOREIGN TERRITORIAL AIRSPACE, WARNING AREAS, OR EXCLUSION ZONES WITHOUT THE PRIOR APPROVAL OF THE JFACC OR HIS DESIGNATED REPRESENTATIVE. TRANSITS OF FOREIGN TERRITORIAL AIRSPACE, WARNING AREAS, OR EXCLUSION ZONES WILL BE PRE-COORDINATED WITH THE JOINT AIR OPERATIONS CENTER (JAOC) AND SENIOR CONTROL FACILITY WITH TRACKING AND DEFENSE RESPONSIBILITIES IN THE SECTOR WHERE THE TRANSIT WILL OCCUR. COORDINATION WILL INCLUDE TIME OF INGRESS; NUMBER AND TYPE OF AIRFRAME; IDENTIFICATION, FRIEND OR FOE (IFF) OR SELECTIVE IDENTIFICATION FEATURE (SIF) MODES AND CODES; AND CONFIRMED RADIO OR RADAR CONTACT. TRACKING OF FRIENDLIES WILL BE MAINTAINED TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT POSSIBLE.

3.FF.1. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ANY NATION MAY ESTABLISH A TEMPORARY WARNING AREA TO ADVISE OTHER NATIONS OF THE CONDUCT OF ACTIVITIES THAT ARE HAZARDOUS TO OVERFLIGHT AND/OR NAVIGATION. NOTICE OF THE ESTABLISHMENT OF SUCH AREAS MUST BE GIVEN IN ADVANCE, USUALLY IN THE FORM OF NOTICE TO AIRMEN (NOTAM) OR NOTICE TO MARINERS (NOTMAR). AIRCRAFT AND SHIPS OF OTHER NATIONS ARE NOT REQUIRED TO REMAIN OUTSIDE A DECLARED WARNING AREA, BUT ARE OBLIGATED TO REFRAIN FROM INTERFERING WITH ACTIVITIES THEREIN. AN EXCLUSION ZONE, BY CONTRAST, IS ESTABLISHED BY A SANCTIONING BODY (E.G., THE UNITED NATIONS SECURITY COUNCIL) TO PROHIBIT SPECIFIC ACTIVITIES IN A SPECIFIC GEOGRAPHIC AREA.

3.GG. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). ANY UNIDENTIFIED OBJECT IN OR APPROACHING AIRSPACE WITHIN A DESIGNATED AIR DEFENSE AREA OF RESPONSIBILITY (AOR) OR OTHER AREA IN WHICH U.S. FORCES ARE OPERATING WILL BE IDENTIFIED BY ANY MEANS AVAILABLE, INCLUDING VISUAL RECOGNITION, RADIO COMMUNICATION, FLIGHT PLAN CORRELATION, ELECTRONIC INTERROGATION, AND TRACK ANALYSIS.
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

3.HH. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). WHEN FEASIBLE, AIRBORNE OBJECTS THAT HAVE NOT BEEN SATISFACTORILY IDENTIFIED WILL BE INTERCEPTED FOR VISUAL IDENTIFICATION PURPOSES. INTERCEPTING PILOTS WILL OBSERVE STANDARD ICAO SIGNALS AND PROCEDURES.

3.II. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). IF AN INTERCEPTED AIRCRAFT IS IDENTIFIED AS A CIVIL OR MILITARY AIRCRAFT OF A FRIENDLY NATION, OR IT IS OTHERWISE CLEAR THAT THE AIRCRAFT POSES NO THREAT, APPROPRIATE ICAO VISUAL SIGNALS OR RADIO TRANSMISSIONS WILL BE USED TO INFORM THE AIRCRAFT THAT IT IS FREE TO PROCEED UNLESS OTHERWISE DIRECTED BY THE JFACC OR HIS DESIGNATED REPRESENTATIVE.

3.JJ. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). IF AN INTERCEPTED AIRCRAFT IS NOT IDENTIFIED AS FRIENDLY, THE INTERCEPTING PILOT MAY ADVISE THE INTRUDER TO DEPART THE AIRSPACE, ESCORT THE INTRUDER TO MONITOR ITS ACTIVITY, WARN THE INTRUDER OF HAZARDOUS SURFACE OR AIR ACTIVITY, OR ORDER THE INTRUDER TO DEPART OR LAND IF SO DIRECTED BY THE JFACC OR HIS DESIGNATED REPRESENTATIVE.

3.KK. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). CIVIL AIRCRAFT WILL NOT BE ORDERED TO LAND UNLESS THE JFACC OR HIS DESIGNATED REPRESENTATIVE DETERMINES THAT LANDING IS THE ONLY MEANS AVAILABLE TO ENSURE THE SECURITY OF THE DESIGNATED AIR DEFENSE AOR OR U.S. FORCES IN THE VICINITY. U.S. FORCES MAY ENGAGE CIVIL AIRCRAFT ONLY IN SELF-DEFENSE WHEN CLEAR EVIDENCE OF A HOSTILE ACT OR HOSTILE INTENT EXISTS. INTRUSION INTO RESTRICTED AIRSPACE, ALONE, DOES NOT CONSTITUTE HOSTILE INTENT.

3.LL. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). IF THE INTERCEPTED AIRCRAFT PERSISTS IN ITS FAILURE TO COMPLY WITH DIVERT OR LANDING INSTRUCTIONS, THE LEAD INTERCEPTING PILOT WILL INFORM THE CONTROLLER, WHO MAY RELAY THE ORDER FROM THE JFACC OR HIS DESIGNATED REPRESENTATIVE TO FIRE WARNING SHOTS. WARNING SHOTS WILL BE FIRED FROM A POSITION SO AS TO BE RECOGNIZED BY THE INTERCEPTED PILOT AS A WARNING WITHOUT GIVING THE IMPRESSION OF ACTUAL ATTACK. CAREFUL CONSIDERATION WILL BE GIVEN TO WHERE THE WARNING SHOT PROJECTILES WILL LAND. WARNING SHOTS ARE NOT AUTHORIZED IF THE PROJECTILES WILL LAND IN A POPULATED AREA OR AS A MEANS TO SIGNAL CIVIL AIRCRAFT.

3.MM. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). IF THE INTERCEPTED AIRCRAFT STILL FAILS TO COMPLY WITH INSTRUCTIONS, THE LEAD INTERCEPTING PILOT WILL INFORM THE CONTROLLER. THE CONTROLLER WILL REPORT THE FACTS TO THE JFACC OR HIS DESIGNATED REPRESENTATIVE, WHO MAY THEN DECLARE THE AIRCRAFT HOSTILE.
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

3.NN. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). U.S. FORCES MAY ENGAGE AIRCRAFT THAT COMMIT A HOSTILE ACT, DEMONSTRATE HOSTILE INTENT, OR ARE DECLARED HOSTILE BY PROPER AUTHORITY.

3.NN.1. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. INDICATORS OF HOSTILE INTENT FOR AN AIRCRAFT INCLUDE KNOWN CAPABILITY TO CARRY WEAPONS AND DISPLAYING A POSSIBLE ATTACK PROFILE OR SHIFTING SENSORS TO A WEAPONS GUIDANCE MODE; INTELLIGENCE INDICATIONS THAT THE AIRCRAFT INTENDS TO COMMIT A HOSTILE ACT; PERSISTENTLY MANEUVERING TO A POSITION TO EMPLOY WEAPONS AGAINST AN INTERCEPTING AIRCRAFT IN A DESIGNATED AIR DEFENSE AOR; AND/OR A FLIGHT PROFILE WHICH THREATENS THE SECURITY OF LAND OR SEABORNE FORCES.

3.NN.2. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. UNLESS OTHERWISE NOTIFIED, AN AIRBORNE OBJECT IDENTIFIED AS A MISSILE IS HOSTILE AND SHOULD BE ENGAGED.

4. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. CANCELED USE OF FORCE MEASURES DURING PHASE TWO (DEPLOYMENT). NONE.

5. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. PREVIOUS USE OF FORCE MEASURES REMAINING IN EFFECT DURING PHASE TWO (DEPLOYMENT). NONE.

6. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. REMARKS. PER ENCLOSED A TO REFERENCE A, THE USE OF FORCE IN SELF-DEFENSE IS NORMALLY A MEASURE OF LAST RESORT. WHEN TIME AND CIRCUMSTANCES PERMIT, A POTENTIALLY HOSTILE FORCE SHOULD BE WARNED AND GIVEN THE OPPORTUNITY TO WITHDRAW OR CEASE THREATENING ACTIONS. WHEN FORCE IS EMPLOYED IN SELF-DEFENSE, ENGAGEMENT IS AUTHORIZED ONLY UNTIL THE HOSTILE FORCE NO LONGER POSES AN IMMINENT THREAT.

6.A. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. COMMAND AND CONTROL WARFARE (C2W) AND INFORMATION WARFARE (IW). PER APPENDIX A TO ENCLOSED A OF REFERENCE A, DESTRUCTIVE ELECTRONIC WARFARE (EW) AND IW MEASURES OR MEASURES THAT MAY BE INTERPRETED AS HOSTILE INTENT BY FOREIGN FORCES ARE AUTHORIZED ONLY IN SELF-DEFENSE OR WHEN APPROVED BY USCINCSOUTH.

6.B. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. NAVAL MINES. PER APPENDIX B TO ENCLOSED A OF REFERENCE A, VESSELS PREPARING TO LAY MINES IN SUCH A MANNER AS TO IMPOSE UNLAWFUL RESTRICTIONS ON THE MOVEMENT OF U.S. MARITIME FORCES MAY, CONSIDERING ALL OTHER CIRCUMSTANCES AND INFORMATION KNOWN TO THE COMMANDER AT THAT TIME, LEAD TO THE DETERMINATION THAT HOSTILE INTENT EXISTS.

6.C. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. THE FOLLOWING SUPPLEMENTAL MEASURES APPLY TO MIO ONLY: 000, 000, 000...

7. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. THIS PARAGRAPH CONTAINS ROE FOR PHASE THREE (EMPLOYMENT/ DECISIVE OPS). THESE ROE ARE EFFECTIVE ON ORDER. THEY ARE PUBLISHED HERE TO ALLOW THE
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

MAXIMUM TIME AVAILABLE FOR DISSEMINATION AND TRAINING BY SUBORDINATE UNITS.


7.B. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. U.S. MILITARY POLICY DURING PHASE THREE (EMPLOYMENT/DECISIVE OPS) IS TO EMPLOY FORCES IN ORDER TO EXPEL CENTRALIAN FORCES FROM COUNTRY WEST, RESTORE COUNTRY WEST'S TERRITORIAL INTEGRITY, DEFEAT HOSTILE CENTRALIAN FORCES THROUGHOUT THE AOR, AND PROTECT U.S. CITIZENS AND OTHER NATIONAL INTERESTS. COMMANDERS MAY USE ANY LAWFUL WEAPON OR TACTIC AVAILABLE FOR MISSION ACCOMPLISHMENT UNLESS SPECIFICALLY CONSTRAINED BY AN APPROVED SUPPLEMENTAL ROE MEASURE. ALTHOUGH THESE ROE AUTHORIZE ENGAGEMENT OF CENTRALIAN FORCES, SOUND JUDGMENT MUST BE EXERCISED AT ALL LEVELS OF COMMAND IN DETERMINING THE DEGREE OF FORCE NECESSARY FOR MISSION ACCOMPLISHMENT. IN ADDITION TO ROE, A COMMANDER MUST CONSIDER THE ASSIGNED MISSION, THE CURRENT SITUATION, THE HIGHER COMMANDER’S INTENT, AND ALL OTHER AVAILABLE GUIDANCE IN DETERMINING HOW TO USE FORCE FOR MISSION ACCOMPLISHMENT. ANY USE OF FORCE, WHETHER IN SELF-DEFENSE OR FOR MISSION ACCOMPLISHMENT, MUST BE PROPORTIONAL TO THE THREAT (I.E., REASONABLE IN INTENSITY, DURATION, AND MAGNITUDE BASED ON ALL FACTS KNOWN TO THE COMMANDER AT THE TIME).


7.C.1. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). WITHIN THE JTF 780 JOA, TREAT AS HOSTILE AND ATTACK ALL CENTRALIAN NATIONAL ARMED FORCES (CNAF), CENTRALIAN POLICE, AND CENTRALIAN PARAMILITARY UNITS.

7.C.1.A. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. COMMANDERS WILL DEVELOP FIRE SUPPORT PLANS, TARGETING PROCEDURES, ENGAGEMENT CRITERIA, AND/OR OTHER MEASURES DEEMED APPROPRIATE TO COMPLY WITH USCINCSOUTH’S INTENT TO APPLY FORCE WITH PRECISION, LIMITING ENEMY CASUALTIES, COLLATERAL DAMAGE, AND RISK TO THE FORCE.
7.C.2. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO FIVE (005). OFFENSIVE MILITARY OPERATIONS ARE AUTHORIZED.
7.C.3. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). ENTRY INTO THE TERRITORY, WATERS, AND AIRSPACE OF COUNTRY WEST AND CENTRALIA IS AUTHORIZED.
7.C.4. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). USE OF MINIMUM FORCE TO PROTECT CIVILIANS IN COUNTRY WEST AND CENTRALIA IS AUTHORIZED.
7.C.4.A. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. THE TERM QUOTE MINIMUM FORCE ENDQUOTE REFERS TO THOSE MINIMUM ACTIONS, INCLUDING THE USE OF ARMED FORCE, SUFFICIENT TO BRING A SITUATION UNDER CONTROL OR TO DEFEND AGAINST A HOSTILE ACT OR HOSTILE INTENT. ALL ACTIONS MUST CEASE AS SOON AS THE TARGET COMPLIES WITH INSTRUCTIONS OR CEASES HOSTILE ACTION. THE FIRING OF WEAPONS IS TO BE CONSIDERED A MEANS OF LAST RESORT.
7.C.5. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). USE OF MINIMUM FORCE TO DEFEND THE [...] AND SUPPORTING FACILITIES, VESSELS, AND FOREIGN PROPERTY THAT HAS BEEN DESIGNATED BY A COMMANDER AS MISSION ESSENTIAL IS AUTHORIZED.
7.C.6. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). TRAINING OR SPOTLIGHTING WITH A DIRECTED-ENERGY WEAPON OR DEVICE IS AUTHORIZED DURING THE CONDUCT OF SPECIAL OPERATIONS.
7.C.7. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). PURSUIT OF HOSTILE FORCES INTO THE TERRITORY, WATERS, OR AIRSPACE OF FOREIGN COUNTRIES OTHER THAN COUNTRY WEST OR CENTRALIA REQUIRES THE PRIOR APPROVAL OF USCINCSOUTH.
7.C.8. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). BEYOND VISUAL RANGE (BVR) LAUNCH OF AIR-TO-AIR WEAPONS IS AUTHORIZED FOR ANY TRACK EMITTING A HOSTILE SIGNATURE IF THAT EMISSION CAN BE CORRELATED WITH A VALID AIR PICTURE
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

CAPABLE OF ISOLATING A SPECIFIC AIRCRAFT FLIGHT OR PACKAGE POSSESSING THE HOSTILE SIGNATURE AND THERE IS NO OBSERVABLE FRIENDLY CRITERIA.


7.C.9. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). ATTACK ANY UNIDENTIFIED SUBMARINE CONTACT WITHIN TEN NAUTICAL MILES OF U.S. SURFACE VESSELS THAT IS CLASSIFIED AS PROSUB OR HIGHER.

7.C.10. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). USE OF ALL TYPES OF CONVENTIONAL WEAPONS IS PERMITTED AS REQUIRED IN ORDER TO NEUTRALIZE OR DESTROY HOSTILE FORCES.

7.C.11. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). COLLATERAL DAMAGE TO CIVILIAN OBJECTS AND INCIDENTAL INJURY OR DEATH OF CIVILIANS IS TO BE KEPT TO THE MINIMUM POSSIBLE.

7.C.12. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). THE ON-SCENE COMMANDER MAY TEMPORARILY DETAIN CIVILIANS WHO POSE A CLEAR THREAT TO THE LIVES OR SAFETY OF OTHERS OR THREATEN THE SUCCESS OF THE MISSION. AT THE EARLIEST OPPORTUNITY, DETAINED PERSONS WILL BE TURNED OVER TO HOST NATION AUTHORITIES OR RELEASED. CIVILIANS SUSPECTED OF COMMITTING HOSTILE ACTS AGAINST FRIENDLY FORCES WILL BE DETAINED UNTIL AN ARTICLE 5 TRIBUNAL DETERMINES THEIR STATUS PER THE GENEVA CONVENTION ON PRISONERS OF WAR.

7.C.13. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). AIR OPERATIONS NEAR FRIENDLY FORCES OR CIVILIANS.

7.C.13.A. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. COMMANDERS WILL ENSURE THAT ALL PILOTS RECEIVE AN AIR OR GROUND BRIEFING ON THE DISPOSITION OF FRIENDLY FORCES AND CIVILIANS PRIOR TO EACH MISSION.


7.C.14. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). USE OF COMMAND-DETONATED LAND MINES IS AUTHORIZED.
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

7.C.15. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). UNOBSERVED, INDIRECT FIRE IS NOT AUTHORIZED AGAINST TARGETS IN POPULATED AREAS.

7.C.15.A. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. THE TERM QUOTE OBSERVED FIRE ENDQUOTE REFERS TO FIRE FOR WHICH THE POINT OF IMPACT OR BURST CAN BE SEEN BY AN OBSERVER. USE OF A FIRE CONTROL RADAR TO PROVIDE TARGET INFORMATION TO A WEAPON SYSTEM DOES NOT CONSTITUTE OBSERVED FIRE BECAUSE THE FIRE CONTROL RADAR DOES NOT ENABLE AN OBSERVER TO SEE THE POINT OF IMPACT OR BURST. THE PURPOSE OF THIS RESTRICTION IS TO LIMIT COLLATERAL DAMAGE AND RISK TO FRIENDLY FORCES.

7.C.16. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). USE OF NON-SELF-DESTROYING, NON-SELF-DEACTIVATING (DUMB) ANTI-PERSONNEL AND ANTI-ARMOR LAND MINES IS NOT AUTHORIZED.

7.C.17. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). USE OF SELF-DESTROYING, SELF-DEACTIVATING (48 HOURS OR LESS) ANTI-PERSONNEL AND ANTI-ARMOR LAND MINES IS AUTHORIZED, SUBJECT TO PRIOR APPROVAL OF CJTF 780.

7.C.18. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). USE OF BOOBY TRAPS IS NOT AUTHORIZED.


7.D.1. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). ENTRY INTO THE TERRITORY, WATERS, AND AIRSPACE OF THE FOLLOWING COUNTRIES IS AUTHORIZED:


7.D.1.B. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. CENTRALIA AND THOSE AREAS OF COUNTRY WEST UNDER CENTRALIAN CONTROL UNDER THE FOLLOWING CIRCUMSTANCES:

7.D.1.C. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. AFTER H-72, TO CONDUCT SPECIAL RECONNAISSANCE (SR) MISSIONS, SUBJECT TO THE PRIOR APPROVAL OF USCINCOSOUTH.

7.D.1.D. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. AFTER H-12, TO CONDUCT DIRECT ACTION (DA) MISSIONS, SUBJECT TO THE PRIOR APPROVAL OF USCINCOSOUTH.

7.D.2. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). USE OF ALL NECESSARY MEANS AVAILABLE DURING THE CONDUCT OF SPECIAL OPERATIONS PRIOR TO H-HOUR IS AUTHORIZED.

7.D.2.A. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. THE TERM QUOTE ALL NECESSARY MEANS AVAILABLE ENDQUOTE REFERS TO ALL LAWFUL WEAPONS AND TACTICS AVAILABLE OTHER THAN NUCLEAR AND CHEMICAL WEAPONS OR MUNITIONS, WHICH ARE PROHIBITED UNLESS SPECIFICALLY AUTHORIZED BY THE NCA.

7.D.3. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). USE OF MINIMUM FORCE TO PROTECT CIVILIANS IN COUNTRY WEST IS AUTHORIZED.
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

7.D.3.A. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. THE TERM "QUOTE MINIMUM FORCE ENDQUOTE" REFERS TO THOSE MINIMUM ACTIONS, INCLUDING THE USE OF ARMED FORCE, SUFFICIENT TO BRING A SITUATION UNDER CONTROL OR TO DEFEND AGAINST A HOSTILE ACT OR HOSTILE INTENT. ALL ACTIONS MUST CEASE AS SOON AS THE TARGET COMPLIES WITH INSTRUCTIONS OR CEASES HOSTILE ACTION. THE FIRING OF WEAPONS IS TO BE CONSIDERED A MEANS OF LAST RESORT.

7.D.4. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). USE OF MINIMUM FORCE TO DEFEND FOREIGN PROPERTY THAT HAS BEEN DESIGNATED BY A COMMANDER AS MISSION ESSENTIAL IS AUTHORIZED.


7.D.5. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). CJTF 780 IS DELEGATED AUTHORITY TO JUDGE WHETHER A MAJOR ATTACK AGAINST U.S. FORCES, COUNTRY WEST’S ARMED FORCES, OR THE ARMED FORCES OF THOSE STATES PARTICIPATING IN MIO IS THE FIRST IN A SERIES OF ATTACKS AND, IN THIS EVENT, IS AUTHORIZED TO ATTACK ALL ENEMY UNITS THAT CONSTITUTE AN IMMEDIATE THREAT TO THOSE FORCES.


7.D.7. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). UNITS (SUCH AS RECONNAISSANCE AIRCRAFT) THAT HAVE SHOWN AN ACTIVE INTEGRATION WITH AN ATTACKING FORCE ARE DESIGNATED HOSTILE AND MAY BE ENGAGED.

7.D.8. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). TRAINING OR SPOTLIGHTING WITH A DIRECTED-ENERGY WEAPON OR DEVICE IS AUTHORIZED DURING THE CONDUCT OF SPECIAL OPERATIONS PRIOR TO H-HOUR.


7.D.10. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). AERIAL PHOTOGRAPHY OR AERIAL INSPECTION IS PERMITTED AS REQUIRED FOR MISSION ACCOMPLISHMENT. APPROACH LIMITATIONS SET BY MEASURE 000 APPLY.
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

7.D.11. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). EXCEPT AS OTHERWISE AUTHORIZED BY THESE ROE, DO NOT APPROACH CENTRALIAN FORCES CLOSER THAN THREE NAUTICAL MILES (6540 METERS) WITHOUT THE PRIOR APPROVAL OF USCINCSOUTH.


7.D.14. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). AVOID COMBAT ACTION EXCEPT IN SELF-DEFENSE.

7.D.15. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). AVOID ANY FORM OF PROVOCATION OR AGGRESSIVE ACTION OR MANEUVERING.


7.E.1. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. THE FOLLOWING SUPPLEMENTAL MEASURES APPLY TO MIO ONLY: 000, 000, 000...

7.E.2. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). USE OF RIOT CONTROL AGENTS (RCA), INCLUDING CHEMICAL IRITANTS SUCH AS CAYENNE PEPPER SPRAY, IS AUTHORIZED IN SELF-DEFENSE UNDER THE FOLLOWING CIRCUMSTANCES:


7.E.2.B. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. IN SITUATIONS IN WHICH CIVILIANS ARE USED TO MASK OR SCREEN ATTACKS AND CIVILIAN CASUALTIES CAN BE REDUCED OR AVOIDED.

7.E.2.C. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. IN RESCUE MISSIONS IN REMOTELY ISOLATED AREAS, OF DOWNED AIRCREWS AND PASSENGERS, AND ESCAPING PRISONERS.

7.E.2.D. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. IN REAR ECHELON AREAS OUTSIDE THE ZONE OF IMMEDIATE COMBAT TO PROTECT CONVOYS FROM CIVIL DISTURBANCES, TERRORISTS, AND PARAMILITARY ORGANIZATIONS.

7.E.2.E. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. USE OF RCA REQUIRES THE PRIOR APPROVAL OF CJTF 780. CJTF 780 MAY DELEGATE RCA RELEASE AUTHORITY TO COMMANDERS IN THE GRADE OF O5 OR ABOVE. CJTF 780 MAY FURTHER DELEGATE THE AUTHORITY TO USE CAYENNE PEPPER FOR INDIVIDUAL SELF-DEFENSE.

APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

FORCES (CNAF), CENTRALIAN POLICE, OR CENTRALIAN PARAMILITARY UNITS.


7.E.3.A. (U) COUNTRY WEST’S ARMED FORCES.
7.E.3.B. (U) ARMED FORCES OF THOSE STATES PARTICIPATING IN MARITIME INTERCEPTION OPERATIONS (MIO).

7.E.4. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). USE OF MINIMUM FORCE TO CAUSE VESSELS TO STOP AND SUBMIT TO BOARD AND SEARCH TO CARRY OUT ASSIGNED TASKS IS AUTHORIZED.

7.E.5. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). VISUAL ILLUMINATION OF CONTACTS IS AUTHORIZED. USE OF PYROTECHNICS REQUIRES CTF OR HIGHER APPROVAL.

7.E.6. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). USE OF MINIMUM FORCE IS AUTHORIZED TO PROTECT NATIONAL SECURITY ASSETS OR MISSION ESSENTIAL PROPERTY.

7.E.6.A. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. THE TERM QUOTE NATIONAL SECURITY ASSETS ENDQUOTE REFERS TO U.S. ASSETS SPECIFICALLY DESIGNATED AS VITAL TO NATIONAL SECURITY BECAUSE THEIR LOSS, DAMAGE, OR COMPROMISE WOULD SERIOUSLY JEOPARDIZE THE FULFILLMENT OF A NATIONAL DEFENSE MISSION. EXAMPLES INCLUDE NUCLEAR WEAPONS; NUCLEAR C4 FACILITIES; AND DESIGNATED RESTRICTED AREAS CONTAINING STRATEGIC OPERATIONAL ASSETS, SENSITIVE CODES, OR SPECIAL ACCESS PROGRAMS.

7.E.7. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). WARN DESIGNATED UNITS OF INTERCEPTION OR AREA OF INTERCEPTION. ISSUE DIVERSION INSTRUCTIONS. VESSELS INBOUND TO CENTRALIA DECLARING FOR CENTRALIAN PORTS WITH CARGOES IN VIOLATION OF SANCTIONS WILL BE GIVEN THE OPTION OF DIVERTING TO A PORT OF THE VESSEL’S CHOICE NOT IN THE VICINITY OF CENTRALIA.


7.E.9. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). SEIZE DESIGNATED UNITS AS NECESSARY TO ACCOMPLISH TASKS.

7.E.10. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). SEARCH OR BOARD DESIGNATED UNITS.

7.E.11. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). SEARCH OR BOARDING PARTIES ARE TO BE ARMED.

7.E.12. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). IF WEATHER DOES NOT PERMIT BOARDING, DIRECT SHIPS TO THE NEAREST PORT OR LEEWARD SHELTER.

7.E.13. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). SEIZE DESIGNATED DOCUMENTS IN DESIGNATED UNITS.
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

7.E.14. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). SEIZE DESIGNATED CARGO IN DESIGNATED UNITS IF PRACTICABLE.

7.E.15. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). USE OF WARNING SHOTS IS AUTHORIZED UNDER THE FOLLOWING CIRCUMSTANCES:


7.E.15.B. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. THE TERM QUOTE WARNING SHOTS ENDQUOTE REFERS TO THE FIRING OF SHOTS OR DELIVERY OF ORDNANCE IN THE VICINITY OF A PERSON, VESSEL, OR AIRCRAFT AS A SIGNAL TO IMMEDIATELY CEASE ACTIVITY. WARNING SHOTS ARE USUALLY ONE STEP IN A SERIES OF ACTIONS DESIGNED TO CONTROL A SITUATION WITHOUT RESORTING TO DIRECTING DEADLY FORCE TO DISABLE OR DESTROY.

7.E.16. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). IN ALL SITUATIONS INVOLVING STOP AND SEARCH, USE PHOTOGRAPHIC OR VIDEO CAMERA RESOURCES TO RECORD LOG AND MANIFEST REVIEW AND/OR CARGO INSPECTION.

7.E.17. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). USE OF DISABLING FIRE IS AUTHORIZED SUBJECT TO THE FOLLOWING LIMITATIONS:

7.E.17.A. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. DISABLING FIRE WILL BE EMPLOYED IN A MANNER LEAST LIKELY TO SINK THE VESSEL AND WILL NOT BE DIRECTED AT PERSONS ON BOARD.

7.E.17.B. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. THE TARGET VESSEL WILL BE WARNED IN ADVANCE, IF PRACTICABLE, THAT DISABLING FIRE IS ABOUT TO BE EMPLOYED.


7.E.17.D. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. THE TERM QUOTE DISABLING FIRE ENDQUOTE REFERS TO THE FIRING OF ORDNANCE BY SHIPS OR AIRCRAFT AT THE STEERING OR PROPULSION SYSTEM OF A VESSEL. THE INTENT IS TO DISABLE WITH MINIMUM INJURY TO PERSONNEL OR DAMAGE TO VESSEL.

7.E.18. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). BOARDING PARTY USE OF FORCE IS AUTHORIZED SUBJECT TO THE FOLLOWING LIMITATION: ANY USE OF FORCE BY BOARDING PARTIES MUST BE LIMITED TO THE MINIMUM NECESSARY AND DESIGNED TO ACHIEVE THE DESIRED RESULT WITH MINIMUM INJURY TO PERSONS AND PROPERTY.

APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

His designated representative. Transits of foreign territorial airspace, warning areas, or exclusion zones will be pre-coordinated with the joint air operations center (JACC) and senior control facility with tracking and defense responsibilities in the sector where the transit will occur. Coordination will include time of ingress; number and type of airframe; identification, friend or foe (IFF) or selective identification feature (SIF) modes and codes; and confirmed radio or radar contact. Tracking of friendlies will be maintained to the maximum extent possible.

7.E.19.A. (U) Exercise FD 98-99. Any nation may establish a temporary warning area to advise other nations of the conduct of activities that are hazardous to overflight and/or navigation. Notice of the establishment of such areas must be given in advance, usually in the form of notice to airmen (NOTAM) or notice to mariners (NOTMAR). Aircraft and ships of other nations are not required to remain outside a declared warning area, but are obligated to refrain from interfering with activities therein. An exclusion zone, by contrast, is established by a sanctioning body (e.g., the United Nations Security Council) to prohibit specific activities in a specific geographic area.

7.E.20. (U) Exercise FD 98-99. Zero Zero Zero (000). Any unidentified object in or approaching airspace within a designated air defense area of responsibility (AOR) or other area in which U.S. forces are operating will be identified by any means available, including visual recognition, radio communication, flight plan correlation, electronic interrogation, and track analysis.

7.E.21. (U) Exercise FD 98-99. Zero Zero Zero (000). When feasible, airborne objects that have not been satisfactorily identified will be intercepted for visual identification purposes. Intercepting pilots will observe standard ICAO signals and procedures.

7.E.22. (U) Exercise FD 98-99. Zero Zero Zero (000). If an intercepted aircraft is identified as a civilian or military aircraft of a friendly nation, or it is otherwise clear that the aircraft poses no threat, appropriate ICAO visual signals or radio transmissions will be used to inform the aircraft that it is free to proceed unless otherwise directed by the JFACC or his designated representative.

7.E.23. (U) Exercise FD 98-99. Zero Zero Zero (000). If an intercepted aircraft is not identified as friendly, the intercepting pilot may advise the intruder to depart.
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

THE AIRSPACE, ESCORT THE INTRUDER TO MONITOR ITS ACTIVITY, WARN THE INTRUDER OF HAZARDOUS SURFACE OR AIR ACTIVITY, OR ORDER THE INTRUDER TO DEPART OR LAND IF SO DIRECTED BY THE JFACC OR HIS DESIGNATED REPRESENTATIVE.

7.E.24. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). CIVIL AIRCRAFT WILL NOT BE ORDERED TO LAND UNLESS THE JFACC OR HIS DESIGNATED REPRESENTATIVE DETERMINES THAT LANDING IS THE ONLY MEANS AVAILABLE TO ENSURE THE SECURITY OF THE DESIGNATED AIR DEFENSE AOR OR U.S. FORCES IN THE VICINITY. U.S. FORCES MAY ENGAGE CIVIL AIRCRAFT ONLY IN SELF-DEFENSE WHEN CLEAR EVIDENCE OF A HOSTILE ACT OR HOSTILE INTENT EXISTS. INTRUSION INTO RESTRICTED AIRSPACE, ALONE, DOES NOT CONSTITUTE HOSTILE INTENT.

7.E.25. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). IF THE INTERCEPTED AIRCRAFT PERSISTS IN ITS FAILURE TO COMPLY WITH DIVERT OR LANDING INSTRUCTIONS, THE LEAD INTERCEPTING PILOT WILL INFORM THE CONTROLLER, WHO MAY RELAY THE ORDER FROM THE JFACC OR HIS DESIGNATED REPRESENTATIVE TO FIRE WARNING SHOTS. WARNING SHOTS WILL BE FIRED FROM A POSITION SO AS TO BE RECOGNIZED BY THE INTERCEPTED PILOT AS A WARNING WITHOUT GIVING THE IMPRESSION OF ACTUAL ATTACK. CAREFUL CONSIDERATION WILL BE GIVEN TO WHERE THE WARNING SHOT PROJECTILES WILL LAND. WARNING SHOTS ARE NOT AUTHORIZED IF THE PROJECTILES WILL LAND IN A POPULATED AREA OR AS A MEANS TO SIGNAL CIVIL AIRCRAFT.


7.E.27. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. ZERO ZERO ZERO (000). U.S. FORCES MAY ENGAGE AIRCRAFT THAT COMMIT A HOSTILE ACT, DEMONSTRATE HOSTILE INTENT, OR ARE DECLARED HOSTILE BY PROPER AUTHORITY.

7.E.27.A. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. INDICATORS OF HOSTILE INTENT FOR AN AIRCRAFT INCLUDE KNOWN CAPABILITY TO CARRY WEAPONS AND DISPLAYING A POSSIBLE ATTACK PROFILE OR SHIFTING SENSORS TO A WEAPONS GUIDANCE MODE; INTELLIGENCE INDICATIONS THAT THE AIRCRAFT INTENDS TO COMMIT A HOSTILE ACT; PERSISTENTLY MANEUVERING TO A POSITION TO EMPLOY WEAPONS AGAINST AN INTERCEPTING AIRCRAFT IN A DESIGNATED AIR DEFENSE AOR; AND/OR A FLIGHT PROFILE WHICH THREATENS THE SECURITY OF LAND OR SEABORNE FORCES.
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

7.E.27.B. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. UNLESS OTHERWISE NOTIFIED, AN AIRBORNE OBJECT IDENTIFIED AS A MISSILE IS HOSTILE AND SHOULD BE ENGAGED.

7.F. (U) EXERCISE FD 98-99. REMARKS. NONE.
DECL/OADR//
Multinational Force Observer Mission ROE (Sinai)

Mid 1980s, as Disseminated to 101st Abn Div (AASLT) Battalions Given the Mission

Annex F (Rules of Engagement) to TF MFO Operations SOP

1. DEALING WITH INCIDENTS

   a. While carrying out their tasks and duties, MFO units and personnel could be confronted with opposition requiring them to employ forceful means. The opposition could result from misunderstandings, it could be spontaneous or it could be planned and deliberate.

   b. Incidents will be dealt with in an orderly, determined and disciplined manner, always showing respect for individuals and never applying more forceful means than strictly necessary.

   c. The MFO shall seek to prevent incidents.

      (1) By observing the fact that the MFO is carrying out its duties and exercising its given rights within the territories of sovereign states.

      (2) By respecting fully the local codes of behavior and morality.

      (3) By showing good behavior and discipline both on and off duty.

      (4) By taking particular care not to unnecessarily arouse irritation while exercising MFO duties.

      (5) By not imposing greater restrictions on the free movement of people and goods within the area of operations than required for the fulfillment of the MFO mission and tasks.

   d. Observation will, when necessary, be facilitated by slowing movement, rather than by halt and search procedures. The halting of individuals, vehicles and equipment will be used only when it is considered likely that these subjects are potential violators of the Treaty
provisions in order to inform them that a violation may occur, is in process, or to investigate further.

e. Incidents may occur where containment of people or goods is necessary until the investigation is completed and until local authorities are in place.

f. All possible acts or threats of belligerence, hostility or violence by individuals as described in the Treaty, Article III (2), a shall immediately be reported to the police of the appropriate party through designated channels.

2. THE USE OF FORCE – DEFINITIONS

a. The term “force”, in this directive, encompasses those physical means that the MFO possesses in order to fulfill its mission and tasks stipulated in the Treaty of Peace of 26 March 1979, and in the Protocol of 3 August 1981. Force can be applied in a passive or active manner.

b. The “use of passive force” is the employment of physical means which will normally not result in physical harm to individuals, installations and equipment. Examples of possible use of passive force are the use of vehicles to prevent passage of persons or vehicles, or the removal of unauthorized persons from MFO installations or positions.

c. The “active use of force” is the employment and use of means that may result in physical harm to individuals, installations and equipment. Examples of active use of force are the use of batons and rifle butts and, in extreme cases, weapons fire.

d. The deployment and show of physical force are not considered as use of force.

3. PRINCIPLES FOR THE USE OF FORCE

a. The MFO will, to the utmost, seek to fulfill its mission and tasks without resorting to the active use of force.

b. Active use of force is authorized only as a last resort when other means have failed.
c. Active use of force is authorized only in self-defense and in resisting forceful attempts to prevent MFO personnel from discharging their duties. Only minimum force should be applied. Example of situations which require the use of active force by MFO personnel are:

(1) In self-defense, including attempts to disarm MFO personnel.

(2) When attempts are made to force MFO personnel from occupied positions.

(3) When MFO premises are entered by force.

(4) When armed attempts are made to abduct MFO personnel.

(5) When supporting MFO personnel who are under siege or armed attack.

d. Only when MFO units or individuals are being subjected to direct attack by forceful means may weapons be fired without prior warning.

(1) In all other instances, a vocal warning should be given and two warning shots should be fired before resorting to aimed fire.

(2) Observing the principles of minimum force, fire should always be discriminate. The aim should be to stop the violator with minimum damage. Fire should be terminated as soon as the situation permits.

e. When the use of active force is considered, the senior officer, NCO or private on the scene is responsible for ordering or executing the actions deemed necessary.

f. Since guidance cannot cover all possible situations which may be encountered, common sense good judgment by the personnel on the scene are of greatest importance.
This Page Intentionally Left Blank
RULES OF ENGAGEMENT

GENERAL

1. The conduct of military operations is controlled by the provisions of international and national law. Within this legal framework it is for the United Nations (UN) to set out the parameters within which the UN Forces can operate. Rules of Engagement (ROE) are the means by which the UN can provide political direction and guidance to commanders at all levels governing the use of force. They are approved by the UN and may only be changed with their authority.

2. The United Nations has stated, in the Report of The secretary-general pursuant to Security Council Resolution 721 (1991) dated 11 December 1991, ANNEXE III, para 4: "Those personnel who were armed would have standing instructions to use of force to the minimum extent necessary and normally only in self-defence.” The UNPROFOR is equipped with weapons for defensive purposes only. The use of weapons is authorized normally only in self-defence. Deterrence and retaliation are forbidden. Self-defence includes resistance to attempts by forceful means to prevent the Force from discharging its duties under the mandate for the UNPROFOR. In applying these rules the principle of minimum force is to be strictly adhered to.

3. The ROE stated in this document apply to all nations contributing to the UNPROFOR. The ROE are written in form of prohibitions or permissions. Issued as prohibitions, they are orders not to take specific actions. Issued as permissions, they will be guidance to commanders that certain specifications may be taken if they are judged necessary to achieving the aim of the nations.

DEFINITIONS

The following definitions are used:

SELF DEFENCE:
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

Action to protect oneself or one’s unit, when faced with an instant of overwhelming need, leaving no choice of means and no time for deliberations.

HOSTILE INTENT:

Hostile intent is an action which appears to be preparatory to an aggressive action against personnel or equipment of Peacekeeping and/or property under their responsibility.

HOSTILE ACT:

A hostile act is any aggressive action against personnel or equipment of Peacekeeping Forces and/or property under their responsibility. When deciding on appropriate reaction by Peacekeeping Forces, it has to be kept in mind that the use of armed force is only permitted in the presence of an attack or imminent attack.

MINIMUM FORCE:

The minimum authorized degree of force which is necessary, reasonable and lawful in the circumstances.

COLLATERAL DAMAGE:

Damage to persons or property adjacent to, but not part of an authorized target.

POSITIVE IDENTIFICATION:

Assured identification by a specific means can be achieved by any of the following methods: visual, electronic support measures, track behavior, flight plan correlation, thermal imaging, passive acoustic analysis, or identification friend or foes (IFF) procedures.

ARMED FORCE:

The use of firearms including warning shots.

UNARMED FORCES:

The use of physical force short of firearms, such as batons, shields, CS-gas (when not delivered by firearms). This directive will not discuss further unarmed force.
4. Changes to these rules will be issued to suit each operational situation as it occurs or to implement changes in political policy. The classification of these rules is UN RESTRICTED.

AUTHORITY.

5. UNPROFOR personnel may use their weapons:

   a. To defend themselves, other UN personnel, or persons and areas under their protection against direct attack, acting always under the order of the senior officer/soldiers at the scene.

   b. To resist attempts by forceful means to prevent the Force from discharging its duties, acting under the personal authority of the Force Commander only.

   c. To resist deliberate military or para-military incursions into the United Nations Protected Areas (UNPA).

CHALLENGING PROCEDURE:

1. The following challenging procedure is to be followed in all cases except as outlined in paragraph 3 unless the requirement to fire immediately in self-defence dictates otherwise:

   a. Warn the aggressor to stop:

      "STOP OR I FIRE"

      or in Croatian

      "UJEDINJENE NACUE STANI ILI PUCAM"

   b. Repeat the warning as many times as possible to insure that the aggressor has understood the situation.

   c. Charge weapons if not already authorized.

   d. Fire warning shots in the air.

   e. If the warnings are ignored open fire, initially with single aimed shots until the protection task is complete. The use of automatic fire is a last resort.
PRINCIPLES FOR OPENING FIRE:

2. When it becomes necessary to open fire, other than as authorized in Rule 3, Option D, the following principles apply:
   
a. Action which may reasonably be expected to cause collateral damage is prohibited.

   b. Fire is to be used only until the aggressor has stopped firing.

   c. Retaliation is forbidden.

   d. Minimum force is to be used at all time.

OPENING FIRE WITHOUT CHALLENGING

3. The only circumstances in which it is permissible to open fire without challenging are if an attack by an aggressor comes so unexpectedly that even a moment’s delay could:

   a. Lead to death or serious injury to the UN personnel.

   b. Lead to death or serious injury to persons whom it is the UNPROFOR duty to protect.

   c. The property which UNPROFOR has been ordered to guard with firearms is actually under attack.

SEARCH PROCEDURES

1. Searchers are not to humiliate nor to embarrass.

2. The object of the search must be clearly stated in orders.

3. Females will be searched only by scanners or Military Police of the same sex.

4. Beasts of burdens must be searched.

5. Searchers must be neither unfriendly nor overbearing.

6. A searcher will always be covered by a comrade.
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

7. Searchers will be promptly and fully reported.

RULES OF ENGAGEMENT

Rule No. 1: AUTHORITY TO CARRY ARMS

OPTION A: No authority.

OPTION B: Authority granted to carry weapons.

Rule No. 2: STATUS OF WEAPONS

OPTION A: Weapons will be carried with loaded magazines.

OPTION B: Weapons will be carried charged and made safe.

Rule No. 3: RESPONSE TO HOSTILE INTENT OR HOSTILE ACT (WITHOUT USE OF FIRE)

OPTION A: Observe and report. Withdraw in order to preserve own Force.

OPTION B: Stay in place. Make contact and establish liaison with opposing Force(s) and/or local authorities concerned.

OPTION C: Observe and report, stay in place, warn aggressor of intent to use force and demonstrate resolve by appropriate means without opening fire.

OPTION D: Observe and report, stay in place, warn aggressor of intent to use force and demonstrate resolve by appropriate means. Demonstrative use of fire power is authorized.

Rule No. 4: DISARMAMENT OF PARAMILITARY, CIVILIAN AND SOLDIERS

OPTION A: No authorization granted.

OPTION B: Authorization is granted if failure to do so prevents the UNPROFOR from carrying out its task. In doing so use minimum necessary and proportional force up to and including use of fire, if intent so warrants, or a hostile
act is committed. Hand over to appropriate authorities at the earliest opportunity.

Rule No. 5: INTERVENTION AND WARNING SHOTS

OPTION A: Intervention is prohibited.

OPTION B: Intervention against positively identified and designated targets by firing or indirect fire as part of the warning process is permitted.

Rule No. 6: CONTROL OF WEAPONS SYSTEMS

OPTION A: Manning, preparation, movement and firing of weapons in the presence of forces in conflict is prohibited.

OPTION B: Designated activity (See NOTE) in the presence of the forces in conflict is permitted.

NOTE:

Designated activities in this rule will be signalled from the following list, using the numbered prefix:

(1) Overt massing of weapons.

(2) Movement of weapons.

(3) Firing of weapons.

(4) Others (to be specified).

In the normal, daily situation the following ROE status applies:

a. Rule No 1, OPTION B.

b. Rule No 2, OPTION A.

c. Rule No 3, OPTION B.

d. Rule No 4, OPTION B.

e. Rule No 5, OPTION A.

f. Rule No 6, OPTION A.
References:


G. Presidential Policy Statement Regarding the Use of Landmines, 16 May 96.

H. DOD Dir 5100.77, DOD Law of War Program, 10 Jul 79.

I. CJCSI 3121.01, Standing Rules of Engagement for U.S. Forces, 1 Oct 94.


K. AR 190-14, Carrying of Firearms and Use of Force for Law Enforcement and Security Duties, 12 Mar 93.
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

L. FM 7-8, The Infantry Platoon and Squad (Appendix N), 31 Dec 80.

M. FM 20-32, Mine/Countermine Operations, 30 Sep 92, with Update 1, 17 Aug 94.

N. FM 27-10, The Law of Land Warfare, 18 Jul 56, with C1, 15 Jul 76.

O. DA Pam 27-1, Treaties Governing Land Warfare, 7 Dec 56.

1. SITUATION.

   a. General.

      (1) International and national law governs the conduct of JTF forces during Peacetime, Contingency Operations, and Armed Conflict. The provisions of applicable treaties and other international agreements and an analysis of the principles of and rules of warfare are contained in references above. The references above, coupled with customary international law, compromise the Law of Armed Conflict (LOAC). Rules of Engagement (ROE) for military operations are based upon specific authority granted by the United States National Command Authority (NCA) for these ROE. Commanders and staff will apply these principles as applicable in the following areas:

         (a) Targeting.

         (b) Strategems.

         (c) Employment and coordination of weapon systems.

         (d) Treatment of civilian personnel and property.

         (e) Treatment of detained persons.

         (f) Wounded, sick, medical units, and personnel and facilities.

      (2) Commanders will ensure that all policies, plans, orders, target lists, and procedures concerning the
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

conduct of Peacetime Operations are consistent with applicable international and national law. Legal review and guidance from servicing Staff Judge Advocate (SJA) and operational law teams will be obtained prior to implementation of the above as the tactical situation permits.

(3) NOTHING IN THESE ROE NEGATES A COMMANDER'S OBLIGATION TO TAKE ALL NECESSARY AND APPROPRIATE ACTION FOR HIS UNIT'S SELF-DEFENSE. NOTHING IN THESE ROE INFRINGE UPON THE RIGHT OF AN INDIVIDUAL SOLDIER TO EXERCISE SELF-DEFENSE.

(4) Unless otherwise prohibited in these ROE, nothing shall limit JTF forces in the use of all lawful technology to accomplish our missions.

(5) Responsibility for force protection rests with commanders at all levels.

b. Enemy Forces.

(1) Forces and individuals may be established as enemy either by their status, through their being declared a hostile force by the U.S. National Command Authority (NCA), or by their conduct, through their commission of a hostile act or their demonstration of hostile intent against JTF forces, friendly forces, or persons or property under the protection of JTF forces.

(2) No forces have been declared hostile by U.S. NCA. JTF (MOJAVE) will provide through FRAGO to subordinate commands any change to this paragraph.

(3) Once a force has been declared hostile, JTF forces may engage with any lawful use of force without observing a hostile act or demonstration of hostile intent (ie, the basis for engagement shifts from conduct to status).

c. Friendly Forces.

(1) OPLAN 99-09-01.

(2) Higher Headquarters ROE. JTF (MOJAVE) ROE have been coordinated with the government of the Republic
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

of MOJAVE (RM) and approved by CINCIRCOM and the U.S. National Command Authority.

(3) Adjacent Units’ ROE. Adjacent units will implement the JTF (MOJAVE) ROE.

(4) Protected Designated International Organizations. The personnel of the following organizations have been designated as Persons Under Protection by the COMJTF (MOJAVE):

1. United Nations (UN) personnel.

2. Other persons designated by the COMJTF (MOJAVE).

2. MISSION. OPLAN 99-09-01.

3. EXECUTION.

   a. Commander’s Intent/Guidance.

      (1) Use of Force (Non-Combatants).

         (a) The use of unnecessary or illegal force undermines the credibility and acceptability of a force to the host nations or the parties of a dispute.

         (b) The use of force must be carefully controlled and restricted in its application. All practical means will be employed to limit the risk to the lives and property of friendly forces and civilians and to avoid the use of unnecessary force, consistent with mission accomplishment and protection of U.S. forces.

         (c) If force as a last resort must be used, much will depend on how well the commanders and staffs have considered likely scenarios and prepared themselves and their soldiers to meet such a contingency. Planning should be influenced by the following guidelines:

            1. Firmness. The will and ability to use force as a last resort are essential if a military operation is to survive hostile threats and actions.

            2. Preliminary Warning. At an early stage of the force's deployment, the Host Nation (Republic
of MOJAVE) must be informed, in general terms, of the circumstances in which the JTF force might be obliged to use force and of their warning procedures.

3. Anticipation. Intelligent anticipation based on good information will often permit a timely reaction to a threatened area before the danger becomes serious. If a situation develops in which force is likely to be employed, the way in which it is to be used should be planned as thoroughly as possible.

4. Passive Force. If tactical forces are deployed in sufficient strength and obviously in control of the situation, the use of passive force to gain compliance of the parties of the dispute may be sufficient.

5. Joint Action. Should it appear the tactical units may be unable to contain the situation, the prompt arrival of the reactionary force will demonstrate collective determination and discourage further aggressive actions and gain compliance. It is imperative that commanders maintain the initiative and inform their higher commanders so all measures can be applied to the situation. Speed is achieved by good planning, communication, anticipation, and rehearsals.

(d) Briefing the Soldiers. All soldiers must be briefed on arrival in the area of operations on the following points and kept up-to-date subsequently:

1. Rules of Engagement. Cards outlining the rules of engagement and action to be taken after the use of force should be issued to every soldier.

2. The Potential Threat.

3. Actions for foreseeable emergencies when force may have to be used.

(2) Use of Force (Combatants). The use of force in the conduct of military operations is governed by U.S. and international law, including the Law of Armed Conflict (LOAC). JTF forces will comply with U.S. and international law and the lawful orders of their commanders regarding the use of force. JTF forces will prevent and report LOAC and ROE violations.
b. Tasks.

(1) All subordinate units.

(a) Conduct all operations in compliance with the ROE, U.S. national law and the Law of Armed Conflict (LOAC).

(b) Transmit the Rules of Engagement and any interim changes immediately to the lowest echelon concerned.

(c) Conduct ROE training as described in coordinating instructions and Tab 1 to Appendix 3, (Situational Training Exercises) prior to initiating operations in RM. Report to this headquarters completion of ROE training.

(d) Observe restrictions on the use of force against persons, property, and places protected under LOAC and these ROE. Report immediately to this headquarters any use of force, friendly or enemy, against persons, property, or places protected under LOAC or these ROE.

(e) Observe territorial constraints depicted in scheme of maneuver, (Operations Overlay Annex). Report immediately to this headquarters any entry into an adjacent unit’s area of operations. Notify the adjacent unit.

(2) Observe airspace constraints depicted in (Army Airspace Command and Control (A2C2) Annex). Report immediately to this headquarters any violations of those airspace constraints.

b. Concept of Operation. OPLAN 99-09-01.

(1) Use of Force (Hostile Force/Enemy). JTF Forces will employ aggressive force to quickly defeat enemy forces with minimal friendly and noncombatant losses.

(2) Use of Force (Non-Combatants).

(a) Public Order and Safety. Force may be used to maintain essential public order and safety in order to accomplish the mission. In the absence of legitimate
and effective Host Nation authorities, JTF forces have a limited duty to maintain public order and safety.

1. Detention. JTF forces may employ a graduated escalation of force, up to and including deadly force, to detain the assailant in major violent crimes that occur in the presence of JTF forces.

(b) Self-Defense. JTF forces have the right to use force in self-defense, either as individuals or as a unit. This right may not be denied to JTF forces.

1. The right to self-defense includes the right of the individual to use force to protect himself and go to the defense of others in danger of serious injury or death.

2. The right to self-defense includes the right of the individual to prevent the arrest, abduction or disarmament of JTF force members.

3. The right to self-defense includes the right to position defense. JTF forces are not required to withdraw or surrender their position, personnel or equipment merely to avoid an authorized and legitimate use of force.

4. The right to self-defense includes anticipatory self-defense. Where evidence, particularly intelligence, clearly indicates that a hostile attack is imminent, JTF forces may strike first. The approval authority for any preemptive strike outside the territorial boundaries of the Republic of MOJAVE is CINCIRCOM.

5. The right to self-defense includes the right to use indirect fire to respond to mortar or sniper attack, provided:
   a. Observers have positive identification of the target.
   b. Observers confirm target is source of hostile fire.
   c. There is minimal risk of injury to friendly forces or innocent civilians.

B-15-7
6. Minimum Necessary Force Required For Self-Defense. Military attacks against civilians and other noncombatants are forbidden. It may be necessary, however, to use minimum force against civilians and other noncombatants in self-defense in response to a hostile act or hostile intent, to maintain essential public order and safety, or to prevent interference with the military mission or the mission of designated international organizations. If force is required in confrontations with civilians and other noncombatants, JTF forces will use only the minimum force required to achieve the immediate objective. Whenever time and circumstances permit, JTF forces will challenge and warn civilians and noncombatants prior to using force, and if force is necessary, use an escalating scale of force. In all cases where force is used to maintain essential public order and safety, such force must not only be applied impartially, but seen to be used impartially.

7. Hostile Act. A hostile act is a use of force against JTF or friendly forces, or persons or property under the protection of JTF forces, that is likely to cause serious permanent injury or death or significant property damage. Examples of a hostile act, include, but are not limited to:

   a. A forcible attempt to disarm JTF or friendly forces.

   b. A sniper who fires at JTF or friendly forces.

   c. A person who emplaces, throws, or detonates an explosive device.

   d. After receiving a clear warning to stop, a person deliberately drives a vehicle at JTF or friendly forces and there is no other way of stopping him/her.

8. Hostile Intent. Hostile intent is a threat of imminent use of force against JTF or friendly forces, or persons or property under the protection of JTF forces, that is likely to cause serious permanent injury or death or significant property damage. Hostile intent may be judged by the threatening force or individual’s capability and preparedness to inflict damage, or by
evidence, particularly intelligence, that clearly indicates that a surprise strike is imminent. Examples of hostile intent, include, but are not limited to:

a. Pointing a weapon at a JTF or friendly soldier.

b. Lighting or attempting to light or attempting to throw an incendiary device.

c. Driving a vehicle in the direction of soldiers, or a perimeter in a way that would endanger lives.

d. Establishing an ambush site.

e. Emplacing an explosive device.

9. JTF leaders at all levels have a duty to use all necessary means available to safeguard and defend their unit, consistent with mission accomplishment.

(c) Prohibition of Reprisals. JTF forces will not use force to punish. Unless directed by the U.S. NCA, JTF forces will not violate the LOAC in retribution for enemy violations of the LOAC.

(d) Graduated Escalation of Force. A graduated escalation of force is a series of actions taken by a member of the U.S. forces to halt, turn back, deter or detain a civilian or other noncombatant in circumstances where the use of force is authorized. A graduated escalation of force is initiated with a challenge and warning, unless the use of the challenge and warning would unreasonably endanger the soldier or others, and progresses through increasing levels of force until the soldier achieves his goal or he reaches the maximum level of authorized force. Only the minimum force necessary, reasonable and lawful under the circumstances to protect JTF forces or accomplish the lawful JTF mission is to be used. Once the attack or violation ceases, the minimum necessary force must cease as well.

1. Challenge and Warning. The challenge and warning is an aggressive verbal and physical display intended to communicate the desired action clearly to the civilian. The initial verbal challenge and warning
identifies the soldier as a member of the U.S. forces and indicates the desired action, for example, “Stop, U.S. Army,” or “Go back, U.S. Army.” The challenge will be announced in the language(s) of the indigenous population by loudspeaker or shouting. The physical action will support the verbal message, for example, the non-dominant hand held up indicating “stop,” or pointing away, “go back.” The challenge and warning is repeated for clarity.

2. Display of Weapon. If the initial challenge and warning fail, the soldier will display his weapon by bringing it to the ready, disengaging the safety, or making some other gesture to indicate his ability to employ superior force. The soldier will again issue a verbal challenge and warning, but will gesture with his weapon rather than his free hand. The verbal challenge and warning will be given as many times as the situation permits.

3. Non-Lethal Force. If the weapon display fails, the soldier will employ non-lethal force. Non-lethal force describes measures of force that when properly applied are not likely to cause serious permanent injury or death or significant property damage. Non-lethal force may include a Show of Force, including the use of riot control formations and the physical removal of unauthorized persons from JTF positions, or, the use of vehicles to block access/passage. Non-lethal force may also include manual restraint, truncheon or riot baton, and high-pressure water hoses.

4. Aim Weapon and Issue Final Challenge/Warning Shot. If deadly force is authorized, and if time and circumstances permit, the soldier will aim his weapon at the civilian or noncombatant and issue a final challenge and warning, repeating that the soldier will kill the civilian if he fails to comply with the soldier’s instructions, for example, “U.S. Army, Stop or I will fire.” A well-aimed warning shot may be used in conjunction with the final challenge, if time and circumstances permit. Such warning shot should be aimed at the ground in order to prevent collateral damage or injury to nearby civilians and their property.

5. Deadly Force. If the final warning fails, and if authorized, the soldier will use deadly force. Deadly force is force likely to cause
serious permanent injury or death or significant property
damage. Under some circumstances, deadly force may be the
minimum necessary force. In applying deadly force, open
fire with only single, aimed shots, using the minimum
number required and fire no more rounds then necessary.
Take all reasonable precautions not to injure anyone other
than the intended target. JTF forces are authorized to use
deadly force against civilians and noncombatants ONLY:

a. In self-defense against a
hostile act or clear hostile intent against JTF or friendly
forces, or persons or property under the protection of JTF
forces;

b. To prevent damage, destruction
or theft of personal weapons, weapons systems, munitions,
classified information and equipment, communications
equipment, military vehicles, and any other mission-
essential military property, equipment or supplies whose
loss would increase the risk of grave injury or death to
members of JTF or friendly forces or to persons or property
under the protection of JTF forces;

c. To prevent unauthorized entry
into a secure JTF military area, or;

d. To stop or prevent major
violent crimes, or to detain the assailant in major violent
crimes witnessed by JTF forces.

e. To protect the personnel of
designated international organizations and the mission-
essential equipment of those organizations.

6. Apply first aid to casualties and
evacuate them to the hospital.

7. Immediately report the incident to
your higher headquarters. Report immediately the use of
deadly force against any noncombatants through the Brigade
Judge Advocate to Cdr, 52d Inf Div (M), Attn: SJA.

(3) Civilians. JTF forces will respect the
noncombatant status of civilians and take reasonable
measures to protect the civilian population from the
dangers inherent in military operations. JTF forces will
not interfere with the normal day-to-day activities of the
local population unless valid security considerations require such action. JTF forces will treat all civilians with dignity and respect. Looting and crimes against civilians are prohibited and will be immediately reported through intermediate chain of command to HQ, 52 ID (M); ATTN: SJA. Soldiers at all levels are responsible for reporting crimes against civilians.

(a) Identification of Civilians. JTF forces may briefly stop and identify all persons in areas of active JTF operations. This authority includes stopping vehicles to verify the identity of vehicles and their occupants.

(b) Search of Civilians and Civilian Property.

1. JTF forces may search:
   a. Persons and property in transit in areas of active JTF operations;
   b. Persons and property, incident to detention, or;
   c. Persons and property where there is good reason to suspect the presence of weapons, munitions, military equipment or information whose loss would increase the risk of grave injury or death to members of JTF or friendly forces or to persons or property under the protection of JTF forces. In the absence of any hostile act or criminal activity, persons who voluntarily release weapons or ordnance to JTF forces will be released.

2. Whenever possible, civilian females will not be searched by male soldiers. If it is necessary for a male soldier to search a civilian female, the male soldier will use a search wand, if available.

3. JTF forces will not search properly credentialed diplomatic personnel unless the diplomatic personnel engage in hostile acts or demonstrate hostile intent. Report immediately to this headquarters any contact with diplomatic personnel.
4. JTF forces will not search UN or Non-Government Organization (NGO) vehicles without authorization from COMJTF (MOJAVE).

(c) Detention of Civilians. JTF forces may detain any person who interferes with the accomplishment of the mission, or, when there is good cause to believe that the individual poses a significant threat to the security of JTF forces, facilities or convoys. JTF forces will use the minimum force necessary to detain the individual. Deadly force is not authorized to detain civilians or other noncombatants unless they have committed a hostile act or clearly demonstrated hostile intent toward JTF or friendly forces, or JTF forces observe them in the commission or attempted commission of a major violent crime. If JTF forces detain a civilian or any other noncombatant, they will evacuate such person(s) to designated sites for turnover to the military police (MP). All detainees will be accorded humane treatment under the provisions of the Geneva Convention until such time as their proper status is determined by proper authorities. The detaining element(s) will notify Republic of MOJAVE (RM) law enforcement authorities, such as the local constable, police or mayor, so that Host Nation authorities may assume custody of the detained person as soon as possible in accordance with the Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA). Report immediately the detention of any noncombatants through the Brigade Judge Advocate to Cdr, 52d Inf Div (M), Attn: SJA.

(d) Host Nation Authorities. Whenever time and circumstances permit, JTF forces will contact Republic of MOJAVE (RM) law enforcement authorities for assistance if a person or a group of people appear likely to interfere with the military mission. RM authorities have the responsibility to maintain law and order in their own country and are required by the SOFA to prevent interference with the military mission.

(e) Medical Treatment of Civilians. JTF forces may provide emergency medical care to preserve the life, limb or sight of noncombatants and civilians, regardless of the source of the injury. Civilians and noncombatants injured as a result of combat involving JTF forces will receive immediate emergency care and will be triaged, evacuated and treated with members of the JTF force, regardless of whether their injuries were caused by JTF or enemy action.
(f) Civilian Personal Property. Private property of Mojavian civilians will not be requisitioned (seized) by JTF forces unless required by immediate military necessity. If in any way possible, unit-contracting officers should purchase the property required through proper contracting procedures. The authority to requisition private property of Mojavian civilians is delegated to company and detachment commanders, and may not be further delegated. Intermediate commanders may withhold requisition authority. Clear permanent records will be made of all property requisitioned, and receipts for the property will be issued to the owner. Report immediately any requisitions made through intermediate headquarters (ATTN: SJA) to Cdr, 52d Inf Div (M), Attn: SJA.

(4) Point Target and Geographic Restrictions—General Guidelines.

(a) The authority to engage hostile forces in or near buildings dedicated to religion, art, science, or charitable purposes, historic monuments, or hospitals or other places used to gather the sick or injured is withheld to ground force tactical commanders, battalion commander or above, unless the action is required for immediate self-defense.

(b) The authority to engage hostile forces in or near public works facilities such as power stations, dams, and water treatment plants is withheld to ground force tactical commanders, brigade commander or above, unless the action is required for immediate self-defense.

(c) No air or ground fires will occur within one (1) kilometer of international borders without approval of COMJTF (MOJAVE). However, if JTF forces receive fire from across international borders they may return fire in self-defense until appropriate cover can be obtained.

(d) JTF forces and persons accompanying or supporting Mojavian forces may enter territorial land, airspace, and waters of MOJAVE. Entry into the territorial land, airspace, and waters of BAJA, KRASNOVIA, AND PARUMPHIA is not authorized without COMJTF (MOJAVE) approval. COMJTF (MOJAVE) may establish off-limits areas.
Proportional force may be used to prevent unauthorized access.

(e) Except for JTF forces conducting Search and Rescue Operations, JTF forces are not permitted to enter territorial land, sea, or airspace of any other nation.

(f) If JTF forces inadvertently enter territorial land, sea, or airspace of any other nation, those elements may use force in self-defense to withdraw.

(g) JTF forces performing Search and Rescue Missions shall use force as necessary to include intrusion into any land territory, sea or airspace to ensure the recovery of survivors.

(h) JTF forces engaged in ground or air operations in the vicinity of the international borders will be briefed on the exact location of the border.

(5) Populated Areas and Urban Terrain (Air/Indirect Fires). Populated areas include all cities, built-up urban areas, those areas designated on operational overlays as populated areas, or those areas where civilians are known to reside or are currently located.

(a) Intermingling of friendly and enemy forces and noncombatants, high weapons density, complex concealment, short engagement ranges, high penetrating power of weapons and other factors increase the risks of fratricide, injury and death of noncombatants, and collateral damage during operations in urban terrain. Leaders at all levels will take appropriate actions to limit these risks without compromising operations.

(b) Before initiating fires or conducting an assault on enemy forces lodged in populated areas, commanders will make reasonable attempts to secure the evacuation of noncombatants using leaflets, loudspeakers or other appropriate means, if the tactical situation permits.

(c) The authority to employ direct fire weapons of rotary-wing aircraft in populated areas is delegated to brigade commanders, and may be further delegated to the ground tactical commander, but not below the level of a company commander. The ground tactical
commander will exercise direct, personal control of such fires and will make every reasonable effort to mitigate collateral damage and the risk of fratricide and injury or death of noncombatants.

(d) The authority to employ indirect fire weapons in populated areas is delegated to brigade commanders, and may be further delegated to the ground tactical commander, but not below the level of a company commander. The ground tactical commander will exercise direct, personal control of such fires and will make every reasonable effort to mitigate collateral damage and the risk of fratricide and injury or death of noncombatants. To this end, the ground tactical commander will consider the use of specialized munitions in indirect or direct fire mode.

(6) Weapons Systems or Classes.

(a) Aircraft

1. This subparagraph defines operational restrictions and ROE for the employment of fixed and rotary wing aircraft in support of JTF forces. This subparagraph applies to all Close Air Support (CAS) missions, but does not apply to Air-Interdiction (AI). COMAFFOR may prescribe additional ROE for Defensive and Offensive Counter-Air (DCA and OCA) and AI.

2. The responsibility for initiation of identification between ground forces and aircraft is a mutual one governed by local orders based on the following:

   a. Aircrew is responsible for determining the hostile character of ground forces before attacking.

   b. Aircrew is responsible for establishing their friendly character to ground forces when challenged or engaged by friendly ground forces.

   c. Ground forces are responsible for establishing the hostile character of aircraft before opening fire on them. The only exception to this principle occurs when the order weapons free is in force.
d. Ground forces are responsible for establishing their friendly character when challenged or attacked by friendly aircraft.

e. All pilots will receive a briefing on the disposition of friendly and enemy forces, noncombatants, and protected targets prior to each mission.

(b) Air Support missions require:

1. Aircraft employed under the control of, or in direct communications with, a forward air controller (FAC) or Forward Observer (FO) who has visual contact with the target and can define the target area and locations of friendly forces and civilians.

2. A target area that is visually or otherwise clearly marked or identifiable.

3. Two-way radio communication between the FAC/FO and the aircraft, and between the FAC/FO and the friendly forces on the ground.

4. Air attacks directed against known or suspected enemy targets in populated areas must be executed so as to mitigate collateral damage and the risk of fratricide and injury or death of noncombatants.

5. Engagement approval authority to conduct air attacks (except direct fire weapons of rotary-wing aircraft) in populated areas is COMJTF (MOJAVE). Prior to initiating air attacks against populated areas attempts will be made with leaflets, loudspeakers, or other means available to secure the evacuation of civilians, if the tactical situation permits.

6. Jettison munitions only in designated jettison areas in daylight (VFR) or under positive radar control (night/IFR conditions) except when an emergency threatens injury to the crew or serious damage to the aircraft.

(c) Chemical Weapons.

1. The use of any Riot Control Agents (RCA) is not authorized.
2. The use of lethal or incapacitating chemical agents is not authorized.

3. The use of herbicides or defoliants chemicals is not authorized.

(d) Incendiary Weapons. Air launched or indirect-fire incendiary weapons or rounds (e.g., WP) will not be used in populated areas except in extraordinary circumstances and then only unless ordered or authorized by COMJTF (MOJAVE). For the purposes of this paragraph, air launched or indirect incendiary weapons or rounds do not include illumination rounds.

(e) Indirect Fires. This subparagraph applies to direct and indirect fire weapons including Naval gunfire.

1. Every reasonable effort will be made to provide visual observation of indirect fires regardless of the target location. Risks of fratricide, injury or death to noncombatants, and unnecessary collateral damage all increase significantly with the use of unobserved indirect fires. Unobserved indirect fires will be employed only when absolutely necessary for mission accomplishment.

2. Unobserved indirect fires will not be employed against targets in populated areas unless at least one of the following conditions is satisfied:

   a. The use of indirect fires is a last resort, essential to the immediate and final self-defense of a unit in contact, or

   b. The use of unobserved indirect fires is ordered or approved by COMJTF (MOJAVE).

3. Unobserved indirect fires may be directed against clearly identified targets in uninhabited areas if deemed essential by the tactical commander directing the fires. Every reasonable effort will be made to mitigate collateral damage and the risk of injury or death of noncombatants.

4. Unless in self-defense, the engagement authority for use of indirect fire missions is
delegated to brigade commanders, and may be further
delegated the ground tactical commander, but not below the
level of a company commander.

5. The authority to employ mortars is
delegated to brigade commanders, and may be further
delegated to the ground tactical commander, but not below
the level of a company commander. The ground tactical
commander will exercise direct, personal control of such
fires and will make every reasonable effort to mitigate
collateral damage and the risk of fratricide and injury or
death of noncombatants.

(f) Mines and Other Similar Explosive
Devices.

1. While mines and other similar
explosive devices properly employed are effective
battlefield systems, their use has come under increasing
domestic and international condemnation. Risks of
fratricide and injury or death of noncombatants increase
significantly with the indiscriminate use of mines and
similar devices.

2. JTF forces will not use “dumb”
antipersonnel mines, including the M-14 and M-16
antipersonnel mines. JTF forces will also not employ booby
traps or trip guns. An observed or command
detonated/controlled means of force (i.e., command
detonated Claymore mine) is not limited by this rule.

3. Emplacement of mines and other
similar explosive devices will be recorded in accordance
with FM 20-32. Mines and other similar explosive devices
will be detonated, deactivated or recovered as soon as the
necessity for their use has passed. All mines and other
similar explosive devices will be emplaced so as not to
endanger noncombatants performing their normal, routine
activities.

4. Remotely emplaced mines will be
short-duration only. Remotely emplaced minefields will be
recorded, and when emplaced near a populated area, will be
marked in accordance with FM 20-32 and maintained under
continuous observation until detonated, deactivated or
recovered.
5. With the exception of ADAM/RAAMS and GATOR, all U.S. mines and minefields emplaced in areas under JTF forces control will be marked in accordance with FM 20-32 and will be maintained under continuous observation until detonated, deactivated or recovered.

6. If the tactical situation permits, units that emplace mines and other similar explosive devices will conduct a thorough mine awareness campaign among the civilian population likely to be affected by the emplacement.

(g) Air Defense Guidelines.

1. Surface to Air fires will be controlled through a combination of positive and procedural controls to the extent possible without hindering the effective protection of the defended forces.

2. Only those aircraft supporting the JTF NO-FLY zone are permitted to fly over friendly forces staging areas.

3. Positive control will be exercised through air command and control agencies. Control will be implemented by providing Air Defense Warning Conditions, Weapons Readiness States (Alert States), Weapons Control Orders, and Engagement Commands to Air Defense Capable Units.

4. Surface-to-air missiles will engage aircraft only when they demonstrate hostile intent or commit a hostile act. Except during cases of self-defense, the engagement authority is the designated air defense commander.

5. An aircraft whose track can be positively identified as originating in enemy-controlled territory and which satisfies controller criteria as potentially hostile or whose track proceeds in a manner that clearly correlates to hostile intent, may be engaged.

6. JTF units that encounter unidentified, non-friendly forces may engage them in any of the following situations:
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

a. The aircraft is observed committing a hostile act, or
b. The aircraft is exhibiting a hostile intent, i.e. flying an attack profile against friendly aircraft, ground units, or naval vessels, or
c. The aircraft’s track can be positively identified as originating in Krasnovian-controlled territory and satisfies controller criteria as being potentially hostile or its track proceeds in a manner that clearly correlates to hostile intent, or
d. The aircraft is declared hostile by a controlling authority

7. Neutral Vessels/Aircraft. Vessels, ground units, or aircraft with neutral state markings lose their neutral status and may be engaged if they exhibit hostile intent or commit a hostile act.

8. Aircraft and ADA systems, equipped with Identification Friend or Foe (IFF) interrogation equipment, which is capable of providing positive discrimination between friend or foe, may be authorized to engage on the basis of that information in reaching/confirming the engagement decision.

9. Commanders will insure that the following three requirements are met prior to engaging a target Beyond Visual Range (BVR) with air defense weapons:

a. Absence of a friendly ID. A potential target is electronically interrogated to determine if it is responding with the appropriate friendly IFF.

b. Positive Hostile ID. Accomplished by electronic means, the aircraft’s track can be positively identified as originating in enemy-controlled territory, or by the aircraft operating in an announced non-flying zone.

c. No known friendly force in the vicinity of the target.

(7) Psychological Operations (PSYOP). PSYOP operations may be conducted in accordance with DOD
directive 3321.1. PSYOP objectives include, but are not limited to:

(a) Discourage hostile forces' decisions to initiate or continue threats, use of force, or open hostilities.

(b) Establish the potential to achieve surprise and superiority, maintain security, and gain the initiative.

(c) Reduce the effectiveness of hostile intelligence systems.

(d) Discourage enemy escalation of hostilities both in geographic extent and types of weapons used.

c. Coordinating Instructions.

(1) Mitigation of Fratricide/Collateral Damage. JTF Forces will make every reasonable effort to reduce the risks of fratricide. Report immediately any JTF fratricides to Cdr, 52 ID (M), Attn: SJA. JTF Forces will also make every reasonable effort to reduce injury or death of noncombatants and to mitigate damage to persons or property adjacent to, but not part of, an authorized target or objective (collateral damage).

(2) Confiscation. CINCIRCOM may order the confiscation of crew served weapons, munitions, military vehicles and other equipment from hostile forces in the disputed zone. If this order is given, commanders are authorized to use all necessary force to confiscate such items and deliver them to designated collection points. Upon coordination with higher headquarters, commanders may render inoperable armored vehicles, artillery, anti-tank weapons, and mines if it is impracticable to remove them to a collection point. Further definition of contraband for irregular forces and civilians is contained in Appendix 2 to this Annex.

(3) ROE Changes. These Rules of Engagement (ROE) constitute limitations on permissible conduct by JTF forces participating in this and associated operations. Proposed changes to these ROE should be forwarded through the JTF J5 to USIRCOM. Subordinate commanders will not
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

modify or interpret these ROE except to impose additional restrictions as appropriate. Commanders will ensure that these ROE are implemented by instructions disseminated to the lowest level possible.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT. (Service Support Annex).

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL. OPLAN 99-09-01.

Appendixes:
1- Individual Soldier Rules of Engagement.
2- Procedures for dealing with civilians, checkpoints, and contraband.
3- ROE Training (Tab 1).
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

APPENDIX 1 (INDIVIDUAL SOLDIER ROE) TO ANNEX E (RULES OF ENGAGEMENT (ROE)) TO 52 ID (M) OPLAN 99-09-01

The following is a sample soldier’s card. This may be used by subordinate commanders.

Soldier’s Card

FRONT

JTF MOJAVE ROE

RIGHT OF SELF-DEFENSE: You may use the minimum necessary force, including deadly force, to defend yourself.

GENERAL RULES:
1. Use minimum force to accomplish your mission.
2. Hostile forces who want to surrender will not be harmed.
3. Treat everyone, including civilians and EPWs, humanely.
You may identify, detain and report civilians in your AO.
4. Collect and care for wounded whether friend or foe.

ESCALATION OF FORCE: ANSwER
The following steps should be used in response to a hostile act/intent (if time and circumstances permit):
1. **Announce Warning.** Shout “U.S. Army, Stop or I will Shoot!”
2. **Non-lethal Force.** Physically restrain/block access, or detain if doing so would not endanger JTF forces.
3. **Sight Weapon.** Lock and Load weapon and place it on Safe. Issue final verbal warning.
4. **Well-aimed Warning Shot into Ground.**
5. **Remove the Threat when ROE allow—shoot to kill.**
   a. Fire only aimed shots.
   b. Fire no more rounds than necessary.
   c. Take reasonable efforts not to destroy property.
   d. Stop firing as soon as the situation permits.

Unclassified
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

JTF MOJAVE ROE

USE OF DEADLY FORCE:
1. A declared hostile force is your enemy. Use deadly force against the enemy unless they are wounded or surrendering.
2. Until a force has been declared hostile, you may open fire only if you, friendly forces, or persons under your protection are threatened with deadly force. This means you may open fire against an individual who:
   a. Fires or aims his weapon at you, Allied forces, or persons under your protection;
   b. Plants, throws, or prepares to throw an explosive or incendiary device at you or persons under your protection;
   c. Deliberately drives a vehicle at you;
   d. Attempts to take possession of U.S. or Allied weapons, ammunition, classified equipment or documents, or other protected property; and
   e. Unlawfully commits, or is about to commit, an act which endangers life or is likely to cause serious bodily harm, in circumstances where there is no other way to prevent the act.

MOBS: Civilian crowds, hostile elements, mobs or rioters interfering with JTF forces shall be controlled using minimum necessary force. When circumstances permit, attempt the following steps to control:
1. Repeated Warnings to demonstrators.
2. Show of force, including riot control formation.
3. Blocking of access.
4. Well-aimed warning shots (if deadly force is permitted)
5. Other reasonable proportionate uses of force.

Unclassified
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

APPENDIX 2 (PROCEDURES FOR DEALING WITH CIVILIANS, CHECKPOINTS, AND CONTRABAND) TO ANNEX E (RULES OF ENGAGEMENT (ROE)) TO 52 ID (M) OPLAN 99-09-01

The following constitutes a guide for all soldiers, particularly those who will likely deal directly with the MOJAVIAN population, on the proper procedures for dealing with civilians while deployed to the Republic of MOJAVE. It is intended to supplement Annex E (ROE) and provide additional guidance. Inconsistencies between this Appendix and Annex E (ROE) will be resolved in favor of Annex E (ROE).

1. RELATIONS WITH CIVILIANS.

   a. The civilians you encounter are lawful residents of the host country. Treat them with dignity and respect. JTF forces will not point, aim, or train weapons at civilians. In regard to civilians, JTF forces may:

      (1) Limit civilian access to controlled areas.

      (2) Stop civilians at checkpoints.

      (3) Stop any civilians in your AO and check for identification.

      (4) Assist dislocated civilians and refugees in moving through your AO.

      (5) Seize contraband possessed by civilians.

      (6) Detain civilians whom:

         (a) Commit criminal acts in your AO.

         (b) Cannot provide identification.

         (c) Impede accomplishment of your mission.

         (d) Are listed on the MOJAVIAN “Black List”.

B-15-26
(7) Use only the minimum force necessary to physically move or detain civilians who are impeding JTF personnel or vehicles on any route in your AO.

(8) Engage in crowd control as required to accomplish your mission.

(9) With the approval of the tactical commander, provide requested assistance to local police and military forces.

c. With regard to civilians JTF forces may NOT:

(1) Use deadly force except in self-defense or defense of others assigned to your care.

(2) Restrict the movement of civilians except as required by military necessity.

2. AUTHORITY OF JTF FORCES AT CHECKPOINTS:

a. Commanders may establish checkpoints at any location in their assigned AO as necessary to accomplish the mission. Use checkpoints to control or prevent access on routes in the AO.

b. Additional guidance on checkpoints.

(1) ROE applies as published.

(2) Follow challenge procedures found in Annex E.

(3) Request identification from all persons. Detention is authorized for anyone without proper identification or whose status is unknown. Take measures to safeguard vehicles of persons detained. Vehicles belonging to UN forces and non-government organizations are not subject to search without approval of the tactical commander.

(5) You may require occupants to get out of the vehicle at the checkpoint.

(6) Visually inspect civilian vehicle interiors through windows or by opening exterior doors. Visually inspect the vehicle's undercarriage. You may require the driver to open the trunk and engine compartment for
inspection. Soldiers may enter vehicles to seize contraband. Searches of closed containers inside civilian vehicles are not authorized unless contraband has been found.

(7) If a civilian vehicle stops but reverses direction and departs the checkpoint, allow the vehicle to withdraw.

(8) If a civilian vehicle does not stop on your order and is approaching a barrier, checkpoint, or controlled area you may disable the vehicle by fire.

c. During operations JTF forces may encounter other legal checkpoints in their AO. The local government and military forces of MOJAVE have the right to establish checkpoints to monitor activities throughout their country. The status of forces agreement provides for passage of JTF forces with minimal interference. Should problems be encountered at such a checkpoint they should be referred to the chain of command for resolution. Do not use force to obtain passage through checkpoints without first obtaining approval from HQ, 52d ID; ATTN: G5.

3. RULES OF CONTRABAND.

a. Civilians may not possess the following contraband:

(1) Crew served weapons and ammunition for these weapons.

(2) Rockets, recoilless rifles, RPGs, light anti-tank weapons, or similar weapons.

(3) Explosives, grenades, mines, or similar munitions.

(4) Foodstuffs in excess of 50lbs per person.

(5) Privately owned weapons (pistols, hunting rifles, and automatic rifles) in excess of two per adult.

(6) Any ammunition in excess of 200 rounds per privately owned weapon.
b. Privately owned weapons (except those in excess of two per adult) are not contraband.

c. JTF forces may seize contraband. Contraband will be tagged and handled as captured materials.

4. OBLIGATION OF JTF FORCES TO PREVENT CRIMES AGAINST HUMANITY.

a. There are criminal acts that because of their gravity warrant the use of all available means to halt them. JTF forces have a duty to prevent these acts by assisting host nation police forces or acting on their own initiative. These acts include:

(1) Executions.

(2) Attacks on civilians.

(3) Attacks on UN officials.

(4) Rapes.

b. In taking action, the principles and procedures in these ROE apply.
APPENDIX 3 (ROE TRAINING) TO ANNEX E (RULES OF ENGAGEMENT (ROE)) TO 52 ID (M) OPLAN 99-09-01

All commanders must instruct their forces carefully as to the ROE and to the laws that govern armed conflict, emphasizing the following:

1. All military operations, particularly in built-up areas or populated areas will be conducted using only that degree of force necessary and proportionate to accomplish the military mission.

2. In the conduct of all operations, every effort will be made to avoid injury to noncombatants and damage to civilian property.

3. Care will be taken to prevent damage to all specially protected property such as hospitals, schools, churches, cultural monuments, and similar facilities. Such facilities are not to be attacked unless they are being used by the enemy for military operations. If the tactical situation permits, when hostile forces are using such facilities for military purposes, approval will be obtained from the engagement authority prior to taking facilities under fire. Hospitals are to be given special protection. If the enemy uses a hospital for hostile purposes, it may be engaged after permission has been obtained and due warning has been given. No attack may be conducted until a reasonable time has expired.

4. Medical service emblems (the Red Cross, Red Crescent, and the Red Shield of David) will be respected and the personnel and facilities under their protection will not be attacked, harmed, or hindered in the conduct of their humanitarian functions.

5. Looting is prohibited. Personnel must make every effort to avoid the appearance of looting and participating in the spoils of war. Personal private property found in the AO is NEVER a war trophy. Captured ammunition, firearms, and cash become the property of the United States Government.

6. No person will kill or wound any enemy who has surrendered, is unfit for combat by reasons of sickness, wounds, shipwreck, or is descending by parachute from a disabled aircraft. Anyone expressing a clear intention to
surrender and not trying to escape capture may not be attacked. It is forbidden to declare that no quarter will be given or that no prisoners will be taken. Captured and detained personnel will be afforded humane treatment. Medical care will be provided for sick or wounded captives on the same basis as provided to JTF forces. Use captured enemy medical supplies on prisoners prior to using JTF supplies. JTF supplies will be used to treat prisoners when captured supplies are not available.

7. ROE will be incorporated into every OPLAN and OPORD. Where time permits, ROE cards will be prepared and distributed to all personnel. The three (3) situational training exercises provided in Tab 1 to this Appendix will be briefed to all soldiers prior to deployment into the Republic of Mojave.

8. Commanders are responsible for educating their personnel about the law of war and to prevent war crimes. Commanders at all levels must ensure that all personnel seek clarification of orders that appear to violate the law of war. Personnel should be informed that obeying a superior's orders is NOT a legal defense to a war crime.

9. Always report all violations of the law of war or the ROE through the chain of command to the appropriate authority. All war crimes and similar criminal violations will be reported immediately through command channels to the proper authority.
SITUATION 1: A soldier is walking from the latrine toward his work area in the BSA. The BSA is located within the territorial boundaries of the Republic of MOJAVE. The Krasnovian People’s Army (KPA) has invaded the Republic of MOJAVE and the unit has been issued a FRAGO informing them that the KPA is now a hostile force. The BSA is protected by a low earth berm and a single strand of concertina wire. The soldier carries an M-16A2.

EVENT A: As the soldier passes near the perimeter, he looks outside the berm. He sees an individual wearing a desert camouflage uniform, a Kevlar helmet without a cover, and a shoulder patch with a black star standing 40 meters from the perimeter, watching the BSA. The individual carries an M-16A2.

CONSIDERATIONS: The National Command Authorities have designated the Krasnovia People’s Army (KPA) a hostile force. Members of the hostile force may be engaged on identification, consistent with the Law of Armed Conflict. The individual wears the uniform of the hostile force.

SUGGESTED RESPONSE: Engage the individual with aimed fire.

EVENT B: As the soldier passes near the perimeter, he sees an individual wearing civilian clothes standing at the wire, watching the BSA. The individual carries a large sack, and runs away when he sees the soldier.

CONSIDERATIONS: The individual does not wear a uniform, so he cannot be presumed to be a member of a hostile force. He carries no visible weapon, and has not done anything to indicate that he is about to commit a hostile act against the U.S. forces. He has, however, demonstrated interest in the activities of U.S. forces.

SUGGESTED RESPONSE: Challenge the individual and order him to halt. If he halts, alert other soldiers to overwatch and approach him with caution to verify his identification. If he does not stop, allow him to leave the area but report the incident to the chain of command. Deadly force is not authorized against noncombatants absent a showing of hostile intent, or, the individual committing a hostile act.

EVENT C: As the soldier passes near the perimeter, he looks outside the berm. Approximately 50 meters from the
perimeter, he sees an individual pointing a rifle with a scope at the BSA. The individual fires, the round strikes the ground near a group of soldiers approximately 20 meters from the soldier. The shooter is only partially visible; his clothing cannot be identified by the soldier.

CONSIDERATIONS: The individual has fired on U.S. forces. The soldier is entitled to defend himself and his unit, regardless of the identity of the shooter.

SUGGESTED RESPONSE: Return fire with aimed fire from the M-16A2.

**SITUATION 2:** Two soldiers wait in an overwatch position near a marked vehicle entry point on a perimeter. The soldiers in the overwatch position are armed with an M-60 machine gun and an M-16A2 rifle.

EVENT A: A civilian vehicle approaches the entry point, but stops as it nears the perimeter. The vehicle backs away, then turns around to leave.

CONSIDERATIONS: The vehicle is no longer moving toward the perimeter, and is preparing to move away. None of the occupants has committed any hostile acts.

SUGGESTED RESPONSE: Challenge the vehicle, tell the driver to halt. If the vehicle stops, approach the vehicle and identify the vehicle and any occupants. If the vehicle continues moving away, let it go. Make note of the vehicle and the occupants and report the encounter to the chain of command.

EVENT B: A civilian vehicle approaches the checkpoint, and speeds up as it nears the perimeter. Intelligence reports indicate that the urban terror groups have been employing truck bombs against U.S. forces.

CONSIDERATIONS: The vehicle is speeding toward a point where all vehicles would expect to slow to a stop. The local terror cells have been using truck bombs. The vehicle appears to present a significant threat. The soldiers are entitled to defend themselves and their unit.

SUGGESTED RESPONSE: Fire aimed shots to disable the vehicle an adequate distance from the perimeter.
SITUATION 3: An infantry squad on patrol passes near a populated settlement.

EVENT A: The infantry squad comes upon a civilian carrying a rifle in the area of the settlement. The weapon is slung, and although the civilian notices the soldiers, he does not react to their presence.

CONSIDERATIONS: Intelligence reports indicate that while it is unusual for a civilian to carry a private weapon in the Republic of MOJAVE, it is not unheard of. The weapon is slung, and the civilian is unconcerned about the soldiers' presence. He appears to present no threat to the soldiers.

SUGGESTED RESPONSE: Challenge the civilian to verify his identification. If he is otherwise unsuspicious, allow him to go on his way.

EVENT B: Same as Event A, but the civilian unslings the weapon and raises the muzzle toward a member of the patrol.

CONSIDERATIONS: The situation has passed from nonthreatening to threatening. The civilian is now in a position to fire on a member of the patrol without further preparation. He is a trigger-pull away from attack.

SUGGESTED RESPONSE: Fire aimed shots in self-defense to eliminate the threat.
JRTC Sample Training ROE: ANNEX E (RULES OF ENGAGEMENT) to OPERATION ORDER 00----21st ID (L)

1. SITUATION

   a. General. OPORD 00-

   b. Enemy Forces. Annex B (Intelligence). The following forces are declared hostile:

      (1) The Cortina Liberation Front (CLF) and associated hostile terrorist groups such as the Leesville Urban Group (LUG), and;

      (2) The Armed Forces of the People’s Democratic Republic of Atlantica (PDRA) when conducting or supporting operations against the Republic of Cortina (RC).

   c. Friendly Forces: The Republic of Cortina (RC) retains sovereignty over its territory. U.S. forces operate in the RC, subject to the reservations established by the SOFA and other international agreements between the U.S. and the RC.

2. MISSION. OPORD 00-

3. EXECUTION.

   a. Concept of Operation. OPORD 00-

      (1) 21st ID (L) employs aggressive force to defeat enemy forces quickly with minimal friendly (fratricide) and civilian losses (collateral damage) in compliance with the Law of War (LOW).

   b. Tasks to Maneuver Units.

      (1) The Brigade Judge Advocate is the Operational Lawyer responsible for advising the brigade. Report and investigate suspected violations of the ROE IAW Appendix 1 to this Annex.

      (2) Comply with the Rules of Engagement (ROE), U.S. law, host nation (HN) law, international law, and the Law of War (LOW).
(3) Immediately disseminate ROE and conduct ROE training to the lowest echelons prior to deployment to Cortina. Report completion of ROE training to the Cdr, 21st ID (L), Attn: SJA before deployment.

(4) Direct Liason (DIRLAUTH) authorized with local government officials, International Organizations (IO), Non-Governmental Organizations (NGO) and Private Volunteer Organizations (PVO) within the assigned area of operations (AOR). Avoid confrontations with civilians and minimize their interference with your mission.

(5) Observe established constraints and restrictions on the use of force against persons, property, and places protected under LOAC and these ROE; territorial constraints depicted in Annex C (Operations Overlay); airspace constraints depicted in Annex J (Army Airspace Command and Control (A2C2)); and targeting restrictions in the Protected Target List in Annex H, (Civil Affairs).

c. Coordinating Instructions.

(1) DEFINITIONS

a. **Self-defense.** These ROE do not limit a commander’s inherent authority and obligation to use all necessary means available and to take all appropriate action in self-defense of the commander’s unit and other U.S. forces in the vicinity.

b. **Unit Self-defense.** The act of defending elements or personnel of a defined unit, as well as U.S. forces in the vicinity thereof, against a hostile act or intent. As applied to a soldier on the ground, unit self-defense includes the concept of individual self-defense.

c. **National Self-defense.** The act of defending the United States, U.S. forces, and in certain circumstances, U.S. citizens and their property, U.S. commercial assets, other designated non-U.S. forces, foreign nationals and their property, from a hostile act or hostile intent. As a subset of national self-defense, the act of defending other designated non-U.S. citizens, forces, property, and interests is referred to as collective self-defense. Authority to exercise national
self-defense rests with the NCA, but may be delegated under specified circumstances; in contrast, only the NCA may authorize the exercise of collective self-defense.

d. Defense of Mission & Self-defense. The SROE distinguish between the right and obligation of self-defense, which is non-derogable, and the use of force for the accomplishment of an assigned mission. Authority to use force in mission accomplishment may be limited in light of political, military or legal concerns, but such limitations have no impact on a commander’s right and obligation to self-defense.

e. Hostile Act. An attack or other use of force by a foreign force or terrorist unit against the United States, U.S. forces, or other designated persons and property, or a use of force intended to preclude or impede the mission of U.S. forces. A hostile act triggers the right to use proportional force in self-defense to deter, neutralize, or destroy the threat.

f. Hostile Intent. The threat of imminent use of force by a foreign force or terrorist unit against the United States, U.S. forces, or other designated persons and property. When hostile intent is present, the right exists to use proportional force in self-defense to deter, neutralize, or destroy the threat.

g. Hostile Force. Any force or unit committing a hostile act, demonstrating hostile intent, or declared hostile.

h. Military Necessity. Use only that force necessary to achieve U.S. goals unless such force is prohibited by the LOW. Only attack legitimate military targets.

i. Unnecessary Suffering. Do not use force that causes unnecessary injury or suffering disproportionate to that force necessary to subdue the enemy or achieve the stated mission.

j. Proportionality. Ensure that the effects of the use of force are not disproportionate to the concrete and direct military advantage expected to be gained.
k. Collateral Damage. Collateral damage is the unintended loss of civilian or noncombatant life, injury to civilians, or damage to civilian property incident to the legitimate use of military force. Do not use force reasonably expected to cause collateral damage disproportionate to the concrete and direct military advantage expected to be gained.

l. Discrimination. Take reasonable steps to ensure that the use of force distinguishes between legitimate military targets and civilians and civilian property not contributing to the military action.

m. Civilians. Civilians are not members of the armed forces or people engaging in hostile acts or demonstrating hostile intent. Civilians enjoy a protected status under the LOW and may not be attacked.

n. Civilian Property. Property normally dedicated to civilian purposes, such as houses or other dwellings or schools, may not be the object of intentional attack, unless there are reasonable indications that the enemy is defending in or near such property and objects.

o. Combatants. All members of an organized armed force, group or unit who are not medical or religious personnel are combatants.

p. Out of Combat. Combatants who surrender, who cease resistance because of injury or disease, who abandon a ship or aircraft in distress are out of combat and may not be intentionally attacked. They may, however, be captured. Combatants in these categories continuing to commit hostile acts or demonstrating hostile intent may be attacked.

q. Noncombatants. Civilians and medical and religious personnel of an organized armed force are noncombatants. Noncombatants are protected under the LOAC and may not be intentionally attacked. However, medical or religious personnel who commit hostile acts or demonstrate hostile intent abandon their protected status and may be attacked.

r. Military Targets. Ensure that intended targets of attack are enemy combatants, their equipment, positions defended by the enemy, or objects whose nature,
location, purpose or use contribute to the enemy’s military action and whose destruction, capture, or neutralization offers a definite military advantage.

(2) USE OF FORCE

   a. IAW the above definitions, use force:

      1. For self-defense: U.S. forces never lose the inherent right to self-defense. This right extends to the defense of allied, friendly or coalition units to include position defense. You are not required to withdraw or surrender your position, personnel or equipment merely to avoid an authorized and legitimate use of force. The right to self-defense includes anticipatory self-defense where the situation clearly indicates that a hostile attack is imminent. U.S. forces may strike first:

         (a) To prosecute the military mission.

         (b) To protect designated persons and property. Protect U.S. officials and employees, their mission-essential property, U.S. Embassy in Cortina, members of the International Committee of the Red Cross (ICRC) and its affiliates, including the American Red Cross (ARC) and the Cortinian Care Crusade (CCC); and any other individual, organization, or property designated by the Commander, Joint Task Force (CJTF) CORTINA.

      2. Maintaining essential public order and safety.

(3) USE OF DEADLY FORCE

   a. Deadly force may be used: in self-defense; against all declared hostile forces; to protect mission-essential property; to prevent unauthorized entry into a secure zone; and to stop or prevent major violent crimes, regardless of nationality or status of victim. Major violent crimes include murder, rape, aggravated assault, and any other criminal act or omission that could reasonably cause the loss of the victim’s life, limb or sight. Use minimum necessary force in a graduated escalation, up to and including deadly force, to detain the suspects in major violent crimes witnessed by U.S. forces.
(4) RESTRICTIONS AND PROHIBITIONS

a. Reprisals Prohibited. You are prohibited from committing reprisals or using force to punish.

b. Geographic and Point Target Restrictions.

1. Hospitals, religious, cultural, and historic sites. Only BN CDRs (and higher) who are ground force tactical commanders have authority to engage these sites unless engagement is required for immediate self-defense.

2. Public works. Only BDE CDRs or above (unless necessary for immediate self-defense) may authorize the engagement of bridges, power stations, water treatment plants and other public works with weapons likely to damage the public work.

3. Public works. Only Division Commanders of ground forces (or above) may authorize the engagement of public works containing dangerous forces (nuclear generating stations, dams, dikes, or levees) with weapons likely to release the forces contained by the facility.

(5) POPULATED AREAS AND URBAN TERRAIN

a. BDE CDRs and above who are ground tactical commanders may authorize the employment of observed indirect fire weapons, direct fire weapons of rotary-wing aircraft, and all AC-130 direct fire weapons systems in populated areas. This authority may not be delegated below a ground force company commander. The ground tactical commander must exercise direct, personal control of fires and take every reasonable effort to mitigate the risk of fratricide and disproportionate collateral damage. Before initiating fires or conducting an assault on enemy forces lodged in populated areas, commanders will make reasonable attempts to secure the evacuation of the civilians using leaflets, loudspeakers or other appropriate means.
b. The authority to employ free fall/unguided munitions of fixed wing close air support (CAS) into populated areas is reserved to the CJTF Cortina.

1. Populated Area. Any established city, town, village or settlement inhabited by civilians; any temporary settlement, camp, or column of displaced civilians, migrants or refugees; or any other concentration of civilians is a populated area.

2. Built-Up Area. An area that contains any number of man-made structures is a built-up area. Such structures may conceal enemy combatants, civilians or friendly forces.

3. Urban Terrain. An extensive built-up area containing numerous structures is urban terrain.

(6) WEAPONS SYSTEMS ROE

a. Aviation and Air Defense Artillery

1. Identification, Friend or Foe (IFF) procedures are the primary means of initially identifying an aircraft as either friendly, hostile, or unknown. Visual identification of an aircraft is the secondary means of air defense identification.

2. Consider an aircraft hostile and engage it if:

   (i) It is positively identified as enemy; or,

   (ii) It engages any friendly elements; or,

   (iii) It conducts unannounced spraying or mine laying operations; or,

   (iv) It drops unannounced airborne or air assault troops behind friendly lines; or,

   (v) It meets the hostile criteria published by the Joint Force Air Component Commander (JFACC) or Assistant Division Air Defense Officer (ADADO).
3. An aircraft is unknown if:

(a) It does not respond to an IFF challenge or gives an unknown response; or,

(b) It makes an unauthorized or improper entry into a restricted or prohibited area, such as a Restricted Operations Zone (ROZ), Base Defense Zone (BDZ), High Density Airspace Control Zone (HIDACZ), or,

(c) It operates at prohibited speeds or altitudes or in prohibited directions. The determination of aircraft speed and altitude by ground observers is difficult and extreme care should be used when applying these criteria.

4. Monitor unknown aircraft for any demonstration of hostile intent or hostile acts.

5. All air support and air attack missions require:

(a) A target or target area that is clearly visually identifiable or marked; and,

(b) Visual observation of the target or target area by the pilot or aircrew of the attacking aircraft, or by an Air or Ground Forward Air Controller (AFAC/GFAC) or Forward Observer (FO) who can define the target or target area and the locations of friendly forces, civilians, and protected sites, and;

(c) Two-way communication between the attacking aircraft and friendly forces on the ground, or between the aircraft and the FAC/FO and the FAC/FO and friendly forces on the ground. The FAC/FO must be able to observe the attacking aircraft and the target and receive verbal confirmation from the aircraft that the target or mark is in sight before authorizing the aircraft to release ordnance. Direct control, where the terminal controller is able personally to observe and control the attack, will be used whenever possible. Indirect control, where the terminal controller must rely on some other observer, may be employed at the discretion of the ground tactical commander.
6. Execute air attacks directed against enemy targets in populated areas will be executed in a manner that will mitigate the risks of fratricide and civilian death / disproportionate collateral damage.

7. All aircrews will receive a standard CAS briefing prior to each mission, regardless of whether the aircraft is rotary wing, fixed wing, or AC-130. This briefing must include the location of friendly units, civilians, and target descriptions.

8. Aircraft will jettison munitions only in designated jettison areas in daylight (VFR) or under positive radar control (night/IFR conditions) except when an emergency threatens injury to the crew or serious damage to the aircraft.

b. Fire Support

1. Observed Indirect Fire. Take every reasonable effort to provide visual observation of indirect fires regardless of the target location to reduce the risks of fratricide, injury or death to civilians, and disproportionate collateral damage. Conduct positive clearance of fires to mitigate these risks.

   (a) Observed fire is when the point of impact or burst can be visually seen by an observer.

   (b) Indirect fire employed against targets acquired by fire-finder radar, such as AN/TPQ-36 or AN/TPQ-37, is not observed fire. Counter-fire initiated on radar-acquired targets may be fired in self-defense following positive clearance of fires, so long as the counter-fire is otherwise consistent with these ROE.

   (c) In populated areas, authority to employ observed indirect fires is delegated to brigade commanders. This authority may not be delegated lower.

2. Unobserved Indirect Fire.

   (a) Do not employ unobserved indirect fires against targets in populated areas unless as a last resort to prevent the destruction of a friendly unit
in contact or such fires are ordered and approved by the Cdr, 21st ID (L).

(b) Employ unobserved indirect fires against clearly identified targets in uninhabited or sparsely inhabited areas only when deemed essential by the ground tactical commander directing the fires. Take every reasonable effort to mitigate risks of injury or death of civilians and disproportionate collateral damage.

c. Chemical Weapons.

1. Division Commander may delegate release authority for the use of CS (tear gas) upon request. If authorized, only use CS in defensive modes, to save lives, to control riots, to disperse civilians used by the enemy to mask or screen attacks, and to protect convoys from civil disturbances in rear areas.

2. The use of any other riot control agent (RCA), lethal or incapacitating, or herbicides/defoliants is prohibited.

3. Do not use incendiary weapons in populated areas unless authorized by CJTF, CORTINA.

d. Mines, booby traps and other similar explosive devices.

1. Do not use “dumb” antipersonnel mines, such as the M-14 or M-16 antipersonnel mines, or similar unattended devices, such as a tripwire “booby trap” constructed with a fragmentation grenade. U.S. forces may continue to use unattended early warning devices whose primary effects are not casualty-producing, such as trip flares. Unless authorized by Division Commander, remotely emplaced mines (i.e. FASCAM), will be short-duration (four hours) only.

2. Attended antipersonnel devices, such as a “man-in-the-loop” configured M-18A1 antipersonnel mine or expedient flame device are authorized for use.

3. Record, report, and mark mines and other similar explosive devices emplaced by U.S. forces or forces under U.S. control IAW FM 20-32. This requirement
includes continuous observation until detonated, deactivated or recovered.

4. Emplace all mines and other similar explosive devices to minimize danger to civilians performing normal, routine activities. Units emplacing mines and other similar devices will conduct a thorough mine awareness campaign among the local civilian population.

(7) CIVILIANS

a. Treatment. Respect the noncombatant status of civilians by taking reasonable measures to protect the civilian population from the inherent dangers of military operations. Treat civilians with dignity and respect. Do not point or aim your weapon at civilians unless the use of force is necessary and authorized under these ROE. Do not interfere with normal activities of the civilian population unless required by valid security considerations.

b. Use of Force.

(1) Minimum Necessary Force. Do not attack civilians. Use minimum force necessary for self-defense, maintenance of public order and safety, or to prevent interference with the military mission. Use graduated force escalation procedures outlined below when circumstances permit.

(2) Graduated Escalation of Force. Although circumstances may require lesser levels of force to be skipped once a confrontation with civilians begins, the main objective is to control the situation with minimum force starting with verbal commands and actions intended to halt, turn back, deter or detain a civilian.

(a) Challenge and Warning. Challenge and warn the civilian through a verbal and physical display intended to communicate clearly to a civilian or other noncombatant that he must do as told. For example, “Stop, U.S. Army,” or “Go back, U.S. Air Force.” Support the verbal message with a physical one by holding up your hand or pointing away. Challenge and warn in both English and the local language.
(b) Display of Weapon. If the warning fails, display your weapon by bringing it to the ready, disengaging the safety, or making some other gesture to indicate your ability to employ superior force. Do not point or aim your weapon at the civilian. Again issue a challenge and warning.

(c) Less Lethal Force. If the weapon display fails, employ less lethal force not likely to cause serious permanent injury or death or significant property damage. Less lethal force includes non-lethal weapon systems.

(d) Warning Shot. If less lethal force fails or is not available, fire a single warning shot in a safe direction. Accompany this warning shot with another verbal warning that you may use deadly force if the civilian fails to comply with your command. Use warning shots only under circumstances where deadly force is authorized.

(e) Aim Weapon and Repeat Deadly Force Warning. If the warning shot fails and deadly force is authorized, when time and circumstances permit, aim your weapon at the civilian or noncombatant and issue a final challenge and warning, stating that you will kill him if he fails to comply with your instructions.

(f) Deadly Force. If the final deadly force warning fails, use deadly force. Under some circumstances, deadly force may be the minimum necessary force. Use deadly force against civilians only when lesser force is inadequate.

(3). Host Nation Authorities. Time permitting, contact Cortinian law enforcement authorities for assistance if civilians appear likely to interfere with the military mission. Cortinian authorities are responsible for maintaining law and order in Cortina. They are required by the SOFA to prevent interference with the military mission.

(a) Identification of Civilians. You may briefly stop and identify all persons in areas of active U.S. operations, to include stopping vehicles to identity the occupants.
(b) Search of Civilians and Civilian Property. You may search civilians and civilian property for weapons, munitions, military equipment, contraband, or information posing a risk of injury or death to members of U.S. or friendly forces or to persons or property under the protection of U.S. forces. When possible, females will search other females. If necessary, male soldiers will use a search wand, if available, to search females. Do not search properly credentialed diplomatic personnel unless demonstrating hostile intent or engaging in a hostile act. Immediately report contact with diplomatic personnel to the G2 and SJA.

(c) Detention of Civilians. Detain any person when there is probable cause to believe that the individual poses an articulable threat to U.S. or friendly forces, or to the security of persons or property under U.S. protection, or that the person has committed a major violent crime. Use minimum force necessary to detain civilians. Report the detention of civilians to G-2, SJA, and Host Nation officials and coordinate for their return.

(d) Medical Treatment of Civilians. Provide emergency medical care to preserve the life, limb or sight of noncombatants and civilians, regardless of the source of the injury. Provide immediate medical care to civilians and noncombatants injured as a result of combat action involving U.S. forces. Triage, evacuate, and treat these casualties with members of the U.S. force.

(e) Civilian Property. Only seize private property when immediate military necessity requires such seizure. Hold such property only for so long as military necessity dictates and then return it with compensation to its owner. If possible, purchase the needed property. Company and detachment commanders are authorized to requisition (seize) private property. This authority may not be further delegated. Upon seizing any private property, immediately issue a receipt to the owner and report the seizure to the SJA.

(8) REPORTS. See Appendix 1 to this Annex for all reporting requirements.

(9) Do not amend or modify these ROE without the approval of the Cdr, 21st ID (L).
4. SERVICE SUPPORT. Judge advocates assist commanders, staff, leaders and soldiers with the training of the 21st ID (L) ROE and with the interpretation and application of the ROE and LOAC to all current and future operations within the division AOR.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL. OPORD 00-

Appendixes:
1 - Reports (See also FRAGOs issued with Div Order)
APPENDIX 1 (REPORTS) to ANNEX E (RULES OF ENGAGEMENT) to OPERATION ORDER 99-1-1--21st ID (L)

1. Immediately report the following serious incidents through the chain of command to Cdr, 21st ID (L), Attn: SJA

   a. Suspected or known violations of the ROE, U.S. law, HN law, International law, Law of War, and the LOAC.

   b. Any use of force against civilians by U.S. forces.

   c. Any detention of any civilians, contact with diplomatic personnel, and requisitions of civilian property.

   d. Any uncoordinated or unintentional entry into an adjacent unit’s AO.

   e. Any friendly or enemy violations of airspace constraints.

2. The following Reports will be forwarded to the Cdr, 21st ID (L), Attn: G3 and SJA IAW the format and suspense outlined below:

   a. Purple Two-One Flash Report. (Due to Div within 2 hours of the incident):

       Line 1: Purple 21 Flash Report
       Line 2: DTG of Incident
       Line 3: Location of Incident
       Line 4: Unit(s) Involved
       Line 5: BDA (# fatalities; # injuries; damage; weapons systems involved)

   b. Commander’s Inquiry (CI). (Due to Div within 24 hours of the Flash Report). The CI includes a brief account of the incident; the soldiers involved; the extent of the injuries and damage; the causes of the incident and appropriate actions to avoid similar incidents in the future.

   c. Army Regulation (AR) 15-6 Investigations.

       (1) The TF JA oversees AR 15-6 Investigations, to include coordinating the appointment of Investigating
APPENDIX B: SAMPLE ROE ANNEXES

Officers (IO); providing legal advice to the IO; conducting a legal review of such investigations; providing legal advice to the Commander; and forwarding a copy of the completed 15-6 to the Cdr, 21st ID (L), Attn: SJA.

(2) Suspense: Completed investigations are due to Div within 48 hours after the appointment of the IO.

(3) AR 15-6 informal investigations will be conducted in the following cases:

(a) Any fratricide resulting in U.S. casualties.

(b) Any use of deadly force against civilians by U.S. forces.

(c) Any human rights violations against civilians or EPWs.

(d) As directed by higher headquarters.
APPENDIX C: SAMPLE ROE CARDS

Note: These are examples only. Inclusion in this Appendix does not constitute endorsement. Always check your mission-specific ROE prior to drafting and issuing a card.

Included ROE Cards:

Shining Hope—Albania
Operation Allied Harbor
Operation Allied Harbor With RCAs
Bosnia—IFOR 10 JAN 96
Bosnia—SFOR 20 DEC 96
Bosnia—Operation Joint Forge 24 AUG 98
Operation Allied Force: CSAR/TRAP ROE For Aircrew 26TH MEU (SOC)
Operation Allied Force: CSAR/TRAP 26TH MEU (SOC)
Desert Shield—Peacetime
Desert Storm
Special Operations ROE for Operations in Iraq
Haiti—NEO or Embassy Reinforcement
Haiti—Soldier’s Card for Nonpermissive Entry (Version 1)
Haiti—Soldier’s Card for Nonpermissive Entry (Version 2)
Haiti—Combined JTF Haiti ROE Card 1 6 SEP 94
Haiti—Combined JTF Haiti ROE Card 2: Peacetime ROE In Effect During Civil Military Operations 23 SEP 1994
Haiti—Peacetime ROE In Effect Until H-2
Haiti—ROE During CMO Effective Beginning Phase III
Haiti—Air ROE
Operation Joint Endeavor—Hungary
Joint Task Force L.A. As Of 020100 MAY 1992
Pacific Haven 16 SEP 96
JTF Return
Kosovo—Task Force Hawk
Kosovo—KFOR
Kosovo—MEU Supplemental to KFOR ROE Card
MEU ROE Training Card
Operation Provide Comfort As Authorized by JCS (EUCOM Dir. 55-47)
Shining Hope NATO/AFOR ROE 23 APR 1999
Generic Forced Entry ROE Card
Somalia—UNISOM II
SECURITY REINFORCEMENT FOR HUMANITARIAN ASSISTANCE OPERATIONS

OPERATION SHINING HOPE
CJCSI STANDING ROE IN EFFECT

I.E.
YOU HAVE AN INHERENT RIGHT TO SELF-DEFENSE
SELF-DEFENSE IS BASED ON NECESSITY & PROPORTIONALITY
NECESSITY TO USE FORCE IN SELF-DEFENSE IS TRIGGERED BY HOSTILE ACT(S)/HOSTILE INTENT DIRECTED AT YOU, YOUR UNIT, OTHER U.S.. FORCES OR OTHER DESIGNATED FORCES
PROPORTIONAL RESPONSE IN SELF-DEFENSE (DURATION/INTENSITY/MAGNITUDE)
STOP APPLICATION OF FORCE WHEN THREAT IS NEUTRALIZED
NOTHING IN THE SUPPLEMENTAL ROE RESTRAINTS YOUR RIGHT TO USE ALL APPROPRIATE MEANS AVAILABLE TO DEFEND YOURSELF, YOUR UNIT OR OTHER U.S. FORCES

HOSTILE FORCES: NONE DESIGNATED

AUTHORIZED WEAPONS: Infantry weapons organic to BLT
INCLUDES

RIOT CONTROL AGENTS for use in self-defense for crowd control purposes.
Other riot control means are also authorized.
YOU MAY NOT USE RCA AGAINST MILITARY OR SECURITY FORCES

You may use force, up to and including deadly force, to protect/defend:
*U.S. citizens
*Host nation & 3rd country national humanitarian relief workers
*Refugees in danger of death or serious bodily harm.
(crimes such as rape, murder, aggravated assault)
*WPNS & WPNS SYSTEMS; AMMO & ORDNANCE;
PROPERTY/INFORMATION (that could endanger U.S. forces, or other relief operations personnel);

You may use force but NOT deadly force to protect relief supplies, food, medicine and shelter.
CIVILIAN CONTROL:
You may detain civilians:
* Posing risk to mission success,
* Attempting to infiltrate into the U.S. security force perimeter, or
* To ensure force protection and operational security.
    TREAT FIRMLY, BUT WITH DIGNITY AND RESPECT.
    Release to Host Nation forces, as soon as the situation allows.

Riot control agents (RCA) (CS/pepper spray) may be used in self-defense when they can neutralize the threat. Do not unnecessarily endanger U.S. or friendly forces. If deadly force is the more appropriate use of force ... USE IT!

You may use nondeadly force for crowd control:
* To ensure operational security, or
* Protect innocent lives

VERBAL WARNING
English: STOP OR I WILL FIRE!
Albanian: N-DAHL PER N-DROO-SHAY JOO-EYE!

You may use force, including deadly force, to disarm anyone who threatens death or serious bodily injury to
* U.S. citizens
* Host nation & 3rd country national humanitarian relief workers
* Refugees

CONFISCATED WEAPONS WILL BE TURNED OVER TO HOST NATION AUTHORITIES.

REFUSE all requests for political asylum: refer to American Embassy

ROE contains sensitive material. Return this card through chain of command to 26th MEU SJA on completion of the mission. DO NOT LOSE THIS CARD.
Operation Allied Harbor

SECURITY REINFORCEMENT FOR HUMANITARIAN ASSISTANCE OPERATIONS
OPERATION ALLIED HARBOUR
NATO ROE IN EFFECT

I.E.
YOU HAVE AN INHERENT RIGHT TO SELF-DEFENSE
SELF-DEFENSE IS BASED ON NECESSITY & PROPORTIONALITY
NECESSITY TO USE FORCE IN SELF-DEFENSE IS TRIGGERED BY
HOSTILE ACT(S)/HOSTILE INTENT DIRECTED AT YOU, YOUR UNIT, OTHER NATO
FORCES OR OTHER DESIGNATED FORCES
PROPORTIONAL RESPONSE IN SELF-DEFENSE
(DURATION/INTENSITY/MAGNITUDE)
STOP APPLICATION OF FORCE WHEN THREAT IS NEUTRALIZED
NOTHING IN THE SUPPLEMENTAL ROE RESTRAINS YOUR RIGHT
TO USE ALL APPROPRIATE MEANS AVAILABLE TO DEFEND
YOURSELF, YOUR UNIT OR OTHER NATO FORCES

HOSTILE FORCES: NONE DESIGNATED
AUTHORIZED WEAPONS: Infantry weapons organic to BLT

RIOT CONTROL AGENTS AND OTHER RIOT CONTROL MEANS
ARE NOT AUTHORIZED except with approval of COMAFOR

You may use force, up to and including deadly force, to protect/defend:
- NATO forces
- Host nation & 3rd country national humanitarian relief workers
- Refugees in danger of death or serious bodily harm
  (crimes such as rape, murder, aggravated assault)
- WPNS & WPNS SYSTEMS; AMMO & ORDNANCE;
- PROPERTY/INFORMATION (that could endanger NATO forces, or other relief operations personnel);
CIVILIAN CONTROL:
- You may detain civilians and armed belligerents:
  - Posing risk to mission success,
  - Attempting to infiltrate into the security force perimeter, or
  - To ensure force protection and operational security.
  
  TREAT FIRMLY, BUT WITH DIGNITY AND RESPECT.
  Release to Host Nation forces, as soon as the situation allows.

VERBAL WARNING

English: NATO! STOP OR I WILL FIRE!

Albanian: NATO! NDAL OSE UNE DO TE QELLOJ!
Pronounced as: NATO! N'DAL OSE UNE DO TE CHILLOY

You may use force, including deadly force, to disarm anyone who threatens death or serious bodily injury to:

- NATO forces
- Host nation & 3rd country national humanitarian relief workers
- Refugees

REFUSE all requests for political asylum: refer to American Embassy

ROE contains sensitive material. Return this card through chain of command to 26th MEU SJA on completion of the mission. DO NOT LOSE THIS CARD.
Operation Allied Harbor
(NOTE: Same as previous card but with addition of RCAs)

SECURITY REINFORCEMENT FOR HUMANITARIAN ASSISTANCE OPERATIONS
OPERATION ALLIED HARBOUR
NATO ROE IN EFFECT

1. E._
YOU HAVE AN INHERENT RIGHT TO SELF-DEFENSE
SELF-DEFENSE IS BASED ON NECESSITY & PROPORTIONALITY
NECESSITY TO USE FORCE IN SELF-DEFENSE IS TRIGGERED BY HOSTILE ACT(S)/HOSTILE INTENT DIRECTED AT YOU, YOUR UNIT, OTHER U.S. FORCES OR OTHER DESIGNATED FORCES
PROPORTIONAL RESPONSE IN SELF-DEFENSE (DURATION/INTENSITY/MAGNITUDE)
STOP APPLICATION OF FORCE WHEN THREAT IS NEUTRALIZED
NOTHING IN THE SUPPLEMENTAL ROE RESTRAINS YOUR RIGHT TO USE ALL APPROPRIATE MEANS AVAILABLE TO DEFEND YOURSELF, YOUR UNIT OR OTHER NATO FORCES

HOSTILE FORCES: NONE DESIGNATED
AUTHORIZED WEAPONS: Infantry weapons organic to BLT

RIOT CONTROL AGENTS:
May use Pepper Spray against non-belligerents for riot control/crowd control purposes ONLY. No other non-lethal munitions are authorized.

You may use force, up to and including deadly force, to protect/defend:

- NATO forces
- Host nation & 3rd country national humanitarian relief workers
- Refugees in danger of death or serious bodily harm (crimes such as rape, murder, aggravated assault)
- WPNS & WPNS SYSTEMS; AMMO & ORDNANCE; PROPERTY/INFORMATION (that could endanger NATO forces, or other relief operations personnel);
CIVILIAN CONTROL:
You may detain civilians and armed belligerents:
- Posing risk to mission success,
- Attempting to infiltrate into the security force perimeter, or
- To ensure force protection and operational security.
  TREAT FIRMLY, BUT WITH DIGNITY AND RESPECT.
  Release to Host Nation forces, as soon as the situation allows.

VERBAL WARNING

**English:** NATO! STOP OR I WILL FIRE!

**Albanian:** NATO! NDAL OSE UNE DO TE QELLOJ!
Pronounced as: **NATO! N'DAL OSE UNE DO TE CHILLOY**

You may use force, including deadly force, to disarm anyone who threatens death or serious bodily injury to:
- NATO forces
- Host nation & 3rd country national humanitarian relief workers
- Refugees

REFUSE all requests for political asylum: refer to American Embassy

ROE contains sensitive material. Return this card through chain of command to 26th MEU SJA on completion of the mission. DO NOT LOSE THIS CARD.
**Bosnia—IFOR**

10 January 1996

NATO UNCLASSIFIED

**IFOR - OPERATION DECISIVE ENDEAVOR**

Commander’s Guidance on Use of Force

**MISSION**

Your mission is to stabilize and consolidate the peace in Bosnia and Herzegovina

**SELF-DEFENSE**

1. You have the right to use force (including authorized weapons as necessary) in self-defense.
2. Use only the minimum force necessary to defend yourself.

**GENERAL RULES**

1. Use the minimum force necessary to accomplish your mission.
2. Hostile forces/belligerents who want to surrender will not be harmed. Disarm them and turn them over to your superiors.
3. Treat everyone, including civilians and detained hostile forces/belligerents, humanely.
4. Collect and care for the wounded, whether friend or foe.
5. Respect private property. Do not steal. Do not take "war trophies".
6. Prevent and report all suspected violations of the Law of Armed Conflict to superiors.

**CHALLENGING AND WARNING SHOTS**

1. If the situation permits, issue a challenge:
   In English: "IFOR! STOP OR I WILL FIRE!"
   or in Serbo-Croat: "IFOR! STANI ILI PUCAM!"
   Pronounced as: "IFOR! STANI EEL LEE PUTSAM!"
2. If the person fails to halt, you may be authorized by the on-scene commander or by standing orders to fire a warning shot.
OPENING FIRE
1. You may open fire only if you, friendly forces, or persons or property under your protection are threatened with deadly force. This means:
   You may open fire against an individual who fires or aims his weapon at you, friendly forces, or persons with designated special status under your protection.
   You may open fire against an individual who plants, throws, or prepares to throw an explosive or incendiary device at you, friendly forces, or persons with designated special status or property with designated special status under your protection.
   You may open fire against an individual who deliberately drives a vehicle at you, friendly forces, persons with a designated special status or property with designated special status under your protection.
2. You may also fire against an individual who attempts to take possession of friendly force weapons, ammunition, or property with designated special status, and there is no other way of avoiding this.

MINIMUM FORCE
1. If you have to open fire, you must:
   - Fire only aimed shots, and
   - Fire no more rounds than necessary, and
   - Take all reasonable efforts not to unnecessarily destroy property, and
   - Stop firing as soon as the situation permits.
2. You may not intentionally attack civilians or property that is exclusively civilian or religious in character, except if the property is being used for military purpose and engagement is authorized by your commander.
Bosnia—SFOR  
20 December 1996

NATO UNCLASSIFIED

SFOR - OPERATION CONSTANT GUARD

Commander's Guidance on Use of Force

MISSION
Your mission is to stabilize and consolidate the peace in Bosnia and Herzegovina

SELF-DEFENSE
1. You have the right to use force (including authorized weapons as necessary) in self-defense.
2. Use only the minimum force necessary to defend yourself.

GENERAL RULES
1. Use the minimum force necessary to accomplish your mission.
2. Hostile forces/belligerents who want to surrender will not be harmed. Disarm them and turn them over to your superiors.
3. Treat everyone, including civilians and detained hostile forces/belligerents, humanely.
4. Collect and care for the wounded, whether friend or foe.
5. Respect private property. Do not steal. Do not take "war trophies".
6. Prevent and report all suspected violations of the Law of Armed Conflict to superiors.

CHALLENGING AND WARNING SHOTS
1. If the situation permits, issue a challenge:
   In English:   "SFOR! STOP OR I WILL FIRE!"
   or in Serbo-Croat: "SFOR! STANI ILI PUCAM!"
   Pronounced as:   "SFOR! STANI EEL LEE PUTSAM!"
2. If the person fails to halt, you may be authorized by the on-scene commander or by standing orders to fire a warning shot.

NATO UNCLASSIFIED
OPENING FIRE

1. You may open fire only if you, friendly forces, or persons or property under your protection are threatened with deadly force. This means:

- You may open fire against an individual who fires or aims his weapon at you, friendly forces, or persons with designated special status under your protection.
- You may open fire against an individual who plants, throws, or prepares to throw an explosive or incendiary device at you, friendly forces, or persons with designated special status or property with designated special status under your protection.
- You may open fire against an individual who deliberately drives a vehicle at you, friendly forces, persons with a designated special status or property with designated special status under your protection.

2. You may also fire against an individual who attempts to take possession of friendly force weapons, ammunition, or property with designated special status, and there is no other way of avoiding this.

3. You may use minimum force, including opening fire, against an individual who unlawfully commits, or is about to commit, an act which endangers Life, or is likely to cause serious bodily harm, in circumstances where there is no other way to prevent the act.

MINIMUM FORCE

1. If you have to open fire, you must:
   - Fire only aimed shots, and
   - Fire no more rounds than necessary, and
   - Take all reasonable efforts not to unnecessarily destroy property, and
   - Stop firing as soon as the situation permits.

2. You may not intentionally attack civilians or property that is exclusively civilian or religious in character, except if the property is being used for military purpose and engagement is authorized by your commander.
APPENDIX C: SAMPLE ROE CARDS

Bosnia—Operation Joint Forge
24 August 1998

SELF-DEFENSE

1. **NOTHING IN THESE RULES PROHIBITS YOU FROM EXERCISING YOUR INHERENT RIGHT TO DEFEND YOURSELF, SFOR SOLDIERS AND PERSONS WITH DESIGNATED SPECIAL STATUS.**

2. Use the minimum force necessary when you use force.

3. You may use deadly force to defend yourself, SFOR soldiers and persons with designated special status from immediate threat of serious injury or death.

4. You do not need permission to act in self-defense.

PROTECTION OF PROPERTY

1. Use the minimum force necessary, which may include deadly force (Five S’s), to protect classified documents and property, weapons, ammo, explosives, and property with designated special status.

2. Use the minimum force necessary, BUT NOT deadly force, to protect all other SFOR property.

MISSION ACCOMPLISHMENT

1. IAW command guidance, the senior leader present is authorized to direct the use of force, including deadly force (Five S’s), to accomplish the mission.
2. REMEMBER, even in absence of command guidance or orders from the senior leader present, you may always use force to defend yourself, SFOR soldiers, and persons with designated special status from immediate threat of serious injury or death.

SERIOUS CRIMINAL ACTS
You may use the minimum force necessary (Five S’s), including deadly force, to stop and detain persons committing, or about to commit, in your presence, serious criminal acts upon other persons (murder, rape, serious assault).

MINIMUM FORCE
1. Evaluate the threat using Hand-SALUTE. Identify what is in the person's hand, then apply the standard SALUTE factors.

2. **FIVE S’s.** When possible, use the following degrees of force:
   a. SHOUT verbal warnings to halt! ("STANI")
   b. SHOW your weapon and demonstrate intent to use it.
   c. SHOVE. Use non-lethal physical force.
   d. SHOOT a WARNING shot after issuing a verbal challenge. In English: "NATO! STOP OR I WILL FIRE!" In Serbo-Croat: "NATO! STANI EEL LEE PUTSAM!"
   e. SHOOT to eliminate the threat. Fire only aimed shots. Stop firing when the threat is gone.

* Respect civilians and their property. Treat all people humanely and with dignity.
Operation Allied Force: CSAR/TRAP ROE For Aircrew
26TH MEU (SOC)
NATO ROE

**SELF-DEFENSE.** NOTHING IN THESE RULES PROHIBITS YOU FROM EXERCISING THE INHERENT RIGHT TO DEFEND YOURSELF, YOUR AIRCRAFT, FRIENDLY FORCES AND PERSONS WITH DESIGNATED SPECIAL STATUS.

**MISSION:** TO SAFELY RECOVER DOWNED NATO PILOTS AND/OR DESIGNATED EQUIPMENT AND ENSURE SAFE RETURN OF THE TRAP FORCE.

**GENERAL RULES.**
1. USE OF MINIMUM FORCE IS AUTHORIZED TO ENSURE THE SAFETY OF THE TRAP FORCE AND THE SAFE RECOVERY OF PERSONNEL.
2. FORCES DEMONSTRATING HOSTILE INTENT OR COMMITTING HOSTILE ACTS MAY BE ENGAGED.
   -- CEASE THE USE OF FORCE ONCE THE THREAT IS NEUTRALIZED.
3. AVOID UNNECESSARY COLLATERAL DAMAGE TO CIVILIAN PROPERTY AND DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY TO CIVILIANS.

**CSAR/TRAP GUIDANCE**
1. AIRCRAFT MAY RELEASE AIR TO GROUND OR AIR TO AIR ORDNANCE IN SELF-DEFENSE, OR
2. TO ENSURE SAFE RECOVERY OF PERSONNEL IN REACTION TO A FORCE EXHIBITING HOSTILE INTENT OR HOSTILE ACTIONS.

**WEAPONS RELEASE.**
1. WEAPONS RELEASE IN SELF-DEFENSE IS ALWAYS AUTHORIZED.
2. IN ALL OTHER CASES WEAPONS RELEASE REQUIRES DIRECTION, APPROVAL, OR DELEGATION FROM AN AUTHORIZED COMMANDER:

| CINCSOUTH | "EAGLE" |
| COMAIRCOUTH | "RIFLE" |
| CONFIVEATAF | "WOLF" |
| CAOC | "CHARIOT" |
| ITAF COFA CO DIR | "TONI" |

**VISUAL WEAPONS RELEASE,** GRANTED TO AIR CREWS UNDER THE FOLLOWING CIRCUMSTANCES:
1. IN RESPONSE TO A HOSTILE ACT;
2. IN RESPONSE TO A DEMONSTRATION OF HOSTILE INTENT. ALL SHOTS REQUIRE CLEAR FIELDS OF FIRE.
CLOSE AIR SUPPORT.
1. MAY BE EXECUTED AT THE REQUEST OF GROUND CDR AND WITH THE APPROVAL OF COMAIRSOUTH (RIFLE) OR HIS DESIGNATED REPRESENTATIVE.
2. WEAPONS RELEASE SHALL NOT OCCUR UNTIL ALL ARE MET.
   a. TACP OR AFAC HAS PROVIDED RELEASE AUTHORITY;
   b. AIRCREW HAS RELEASE AUTHORITY FROM RIFLE OR DESIGNATED REPRESENTATIVE;
   c. AIRCREW HAS POSITIVE TWO-WAY COMMUNICATIONS WITH TACP/GROUND CDR OR AFAC; AND
   d. TARGET IS POSITIVELY IDENTIFIED.

GENERAL DEFINITIONS:
1. HOSTILE ACT. AN ATTACK OR OTHER AGGRESSIVE ACTION AGAINST FRIENDLY FORCES. EXAMPLES INCLUDE:
   a. FIRING DIRECTED ENERGY WEAPONS (LASERS)
   b. FIRING DIRECTED ENERGY WEAPONS OR ANY OTHER WEAPON.
2. HOSTILE INTENT. THE THREAT OF IMMINENT USE OF FORCE AGAINST FRIENDLY FORCES.
   a. MANEUVERING INTO A WEAPONS LAUNCH POSITION;
   b. PREPARING TO FIRE AGAINST FRIENDLY FORCES (I.E. LOCKING ONTO AN AIRCRAFT WITH FIRE CONTROL RADAR); AND
   c. ENEMY FIGHTERS ON A HOT VECTOR

FRATRICIDE. DUE TO UN MI-8 HIPS FLYING IN FYROM, NO HIP WILL ENGAGED OVER FYROM UNLESS OBSERVED COMMITTING A HOSTILE ACT.
WHEN ENCOUNTERING FRY AIRCRAFT CONSIDER THE POSSIBILITY OF A DEFECTOR:
1. SLOW FLYING
2. LOWERING OF GEAR AND/OR FLAPS

HOT PURSUIT. AIRCRAFT TASKED BY THE ATO TO CONDUCT OPERATIONS IN THE FRY MAY ENGAGE IN HOT PURSUIT AS NECESSARY TO DEFEND FRIENDLY FORCES. HOT PURSUIT WILL TERMINATE WHEN THE THREAT TO FRIENDLY FORCES NO LONGER EXISTS.
Operation Allied Force: CSAR/TRAP
26TH MEU (SOC)
NATO ROE

SELF-DEFENSE. NOTHING IN THESE RULES PROHIBITS YOU FROM EXERCISING THE INHERENT RIGHT TO DEFEND YOURSELF, FRIENDLY FORCES AND PERSONS WITH DESIGNATED SPECIAL STATUS.

MISSION: TO SAFELY RECOVER DOWNED NATO PILOTS AND/OR DESIGNATED EQUIPMENT AND ENSURE SAFE RETURN OF THE TRAP FORCE.

GENERAL RULES:

1. USE OF MINIMUM FORCE IS AUTHORIZED TO ENSURE THE SAFETY OF THE TRAP FORCE AND THE SAFE RECOVERY OF PERSONNEL.

2. FORCES DEMONSTRATING HOSTILE INTENT OR COMMITTING HOSTILE ACTS MAY BE ENGAGED USING MINIMUM FORCE. CEASE THE USE OF FORCE ONCE THE THREAT IS NEUTRALIZED.

3. AVOID UNNECESSARY COLLATERAL DAMAGE TO CIVILIAN PROPERTY AND DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY TO CIVILIANS.

MINIMUM FORCE (INCLUDES THE FOLLOWING):

1. VERBAL WARNINGS
2. OPEN DISPLAY OF WEAPONS,
3. POINTING OR AIMING YOUR WEAPON (SHOW OF FORCE), AND
4. USE OF DEADLY FORCE (WHEN ABOVE METHODS ARE INEFFECTIVE OR CIRCUMSTANCES DO NOT PERMIT LESSER MEANS FROM BEING UTILIZED).
OPENING FIRE. THE USE OF DEADLY FORCE IS AUTHORIZED AS A LAST RESORT ONLY. CIRCUMSTANCES WHERE IT MAY BE APPROPRIATE TO USE DEADLY FORCE INCLUDE THE FOLLOWING:

a. TO PROTECT YOU OR FRIENDLY FORCES FROM A UNIT OR INDIVIDUAL DEMONSTRATING HOSTILE INTENT OR COMMITTING A HOSTILE ACT.

b. TO PROTECT YOU OR FRIENDLY FORCES FROM AN INDIVIDUAL WHO AIMS HIS WEAPON AT YOU OR FRIENDLY FORCES.

c. TO STOP AN INDIVIDUAL WHO UNLAWFULLY COMMITS, OR IS ABOUT TO COMMIT, AN ACT WHICH ENDANGERS LIFE, OR IS LIKELY TO CAUSE SERIOUS BODILY HARM WHERE THERE IS NO OTHER WAY TO PREVENT THE ACT.

d. TO STOP AN INDIVIDUAL WHO PLANTS, THROWS, OR PREPARES TO THROW AN EXPLOSIVE OR INCENDIARY DEVICE AT YOU OR FRIENDLY FORCES.

e. TO STOP A PERSON WHO DELIBERATELY DRIVES A VEHICLE AT YOU OR FRIENDLY FORCES.

IF YOU MUST FIRE YOUR WEAPON:

* FIRE ONLY AIMED SHOTS;
* FIRE NO MORE ROUNDS THAN ARE NECESSARY, AND
* STOP FIRING AS SOON AS THE SITUATION PERMITS.

IF THE SITUATION PERMITS, CHALLENGE AND WARN BEFORE USING FORCE.

ENGLISH: "NATO! STOP OR I WILL FIRE!"
SERB-CROAT "NATO! STANI EEL LEE PUTSAM!"
ALBANIAN "NATO! N-DAHL PER N-DROO-SHAY JOO-EYE!"
Desert Shield (Peacetime)

THOSE ARE PEACETIME RULES OF ENGAGEMENT. NOTHING IN THESE RULES LIMITS THE RIGHTS OF INDIVIDUAL SOLDIERS TO DEFEND THEMSELVES OR THE RIGHTS AND RESPONSIBILITIES OF LEADERS TO DEFEND THEIR UNITS.

A. You may not conduct offensive military operations (raids, ambushes, etc.).
B. You may use force in self-defense in response to attacks or threats of imminent attack against U.S. or host nation forces, citizens, property, or commercial assets.
C. You are not permitted to enter the land, sea, or airspace of other countries--besides the host nation.
D. If you inadvertently enter territorial land, sea, or airspace of another country, you may use force in self-defense to withdraw.
E. You may not seize property of others to accomplish your mission in peacetime.
F. Proper contracting processes must be followed to obtain supplies and other items necessary to accomplish the mission.
G. Treat all persons and property with respect and dignity. Remember we are at peace.

REMEMBER

1. WE ARE NOT AT WAR.
2. THESE RULES ARE IN EFFECT UNLESS HOSTILITIES BEGIN
3. KNOW THE WARTIME ROE AND FOLLOW THEM IF HOSTILITIES BEGIN.

Though the following are not "ROE," these tips were provided along with the ROE for Desert Shield:

CULTURAL DOs AND DONTs

DO:
A. Be friendly and courteous. A handshake accompanied with the phrase id-Salaama 'Alaykum (Peace be upon you) is the most common form of greeting.
B. If you smoke (most Arab men do), offer to share cigarettes with those present.
C. Sit properly in chairs: upright with feet on the ground.
D. When in doubt, observe locals and imitate their behavior.
E. Avoid contact with Arab women. If introduced, be polite but do not stare or engage in any lengthy conversations.

DON'T.
A. Make critical comparisons of your religion vs. Islam.
B. Ask an Arab not to smoke.
C. Point your finger or use your index finger to beckon people: it is considered demeaning.
D. Use alcohol.
E. Possess or use pornographic or sexually explicit material.
Desert Storm

ALL ENEMY MILITARY PERSONNEL AND VEHICLES TRANSPORTING THE ENEMY OR THEIR SUPPLIES MAY BE ENGAGED SUBJECT TO THE FOLLOWING RESTRICTIONS:

A. Do not engage anyone who has surrendered, is out of battle due to sickness or wounds, is shipwrecked, or is an aircrew member descending by parachute from a disabled aircraft.
B. Avoid harming civilians unless necessary to save U.S. lives. Do not fire into civilian populated areas or buildings which are not defended or being used for military purposes.
C. Hospitals, churches, shrines, schools, museums, national monuments, and any other historical or cultural sites will not be engaged except in self-defense.
D. Hospitals will be given special protection. Do not engage hospitals unless the enemy uses the hospital to commit acts harmful to U.S. forces, and then only after giving a warning and allowing a reasonable time to expire before engaging, if the tactical situation permits.
E. Booby traps may be used to protect friendly positions or to impede the progress of enemy forces. They may not be used on civilian personal property. They will be recovered or destroyed when the military necessity for their use no longer exists.
F. Looting and the taking of war trophies are prohibited.
G. Avoid harming civilian property unless necessary to save U.S. lives. Do not attack traditional civilian objects, such as houses, unless they are being used by the enemy for military purposes and neutralization assists in mission accomplishment.
H. Treat all civilians and their property with respect and dignity. Before using privately owned property, check to see if publicly owned property can substitute. No requisitioning of civilian property, including vehicles, without permission of a company level commander and without giving a receipt. It an ordering officer can contract the property, then do not requisition it.
I. Treat all prisoners humanely and with respect and dignity.
J. ROE Annex to the OPLAN provides more detail. Conflicts between this card and the OPLAN should be resolved in favor of the OPLAN.

REMEMBER

1. FIGHT ONLY COMBATANTS.
2. ATTACK ONLY MILITARY TARGETS.
3. SPARE CIVILIAN PERSONS AND OBJECTS.
4. RESTRICT DESTRUCTION TO WHAT YOUR MISSION REQUIRES.
NOTHING IN THESE ROE LIMITS YOUR RIGHT TO TAKE APPROPRIATE ACTION IN SELF-DEFENSE!

THE FORCES OF IRAQ HAVE BEEN DECLARED HOSTILE AND MAY BE ATTACKED. THIS INCLUDES ALL IRAQI MILITARY PERSONNEL AND VEHICLES TRANSPORTING THE ENEMY OR THEIR SUPPLIES.

A. Do not attack civilians unless they commit a hostile act or it is clear they are about to commit a hostile act against SOF. If a civilian does nothing, they are no threat and may not be attacked.

B. Don't fire into civilian populated areas or buildings which are not being defended or being used for military purposes.

C. Treat all civilians and their property with respect and dignity. You may use enemy public property for military purposes, but you may not use enemy private property without your commander's permission. If private property is used, a receipt must be given.

D. Treat all prisoners humanely and with respect and dignity.

E. Do not engage anyone who has surrendered, is out of battle due to sickness or wounds, is shipwrecked, or is an aircraft crew member descending by parachute from a disabled aircraft.

F. Should a civilian come across SOF during a reconnaissance mission, the civilian may not be attacked unless they commit a hostile act or show hostile intent.

G. Civilians may be detained by SOF for their own safety and the safety of SOF; however, they must be given the same treatment as EPWs. If necessary they may be restrained and left in an area where they will be found or eventually escape.

H. Use only the minimum force required to regain custody of any detainees attempting to escape. Deadly force may only be used in self-defense to a hostile act or clear display of hostile intent.

I. SOF are not required to wear a particular uniform and may use legitimate ruses such as wearing the enemy's uniform to infiltrate the enemy's lines. During actual combat however, SOF must wear their own uniform to distinguish them as combatants.

J. ROE annex to the OPLAN provides more detail. Conflicts between this card and the OPLAN should be resolved in the favor of the OPLAN.

REMEMBER:
1. ATTACK ONLY COMBATANTS.
2. ATTACK ONLY MILITARY TARGETS.
3. SPARE CIVILIAN PERSONS AND OBJECTS.
4. RESTRICT LETHAL FORCE TO WHAT YOUR MISSION REQUIRES.
RULES OF ENGAGEMENT

NOTHING IN THESE RULES NEGATES A COMMANDER'S OBLIGATION TO TAKE ALL NECESSARY AND APPROPRIATE ACTION FOR HIS UNIT'S SELF-DEFENSE

A. Elements of self-defense: the use of armed force in self-defense requires **NECESSITY** and **PROPORTIONALITY**:

1. **NECESSITY**:
   
a. Hostile Act - attack or other use of armed force by a foreign force against U.S. forces or U.S. citizens, or

b. Hostile Intent - the threat of imminent use of force by a foreign force against U.S. forces or U.S. citizens.

2. **PROPORTIONALITY**: use minimum force necessary to counter the hostile act or hostile intent.

   a. **RESPONSES TO HOSTILE FIRE** directly threatening U.S. Forces or U.S. Citizens will be rapid and directed at the source of the hostile fire, using only that force necessary and proportional to eliminate the threat.

   b. **THREATS BY UNARMED HOSTILE ELEMENTS**:

Employ the following to overcome the threat:

(1) **WARN THEM** - Verbal warnings to demonstrators

(2) **SCARE THEM** - show of force, including use of riot control formations and positioning of armored vehicles - blocking of access

(3) **FORCE THEM** - use of riot control agents (when authorized by appropriate authority) - warning shots (after an order to halt is given) - Deadly Force (ABSOLUTE LAST RESORT)
Haiti—Soldier Card for NonPermissive Entry (Version 1)

RULES OF ENGAGEMENT (ROE) DURING HOSTILITIES

NOTHING IN THESE ROE LIMITS YOUR OBLIGATION TO TAKE ALL NECESSARY AND APPROPRIATE ACTION TO DEFEND YOURSELF AND YOUR UNIT.

1. Treat as hostile and attack the FORCES ARMEES D'HAITI (FAD'H) and the national police until neutralized, destroyed or captured.

2. Confiscate the property of hostile forces, except captives' personal property and equipment necessary for their protection or welfare.

3. Employ only observed fire.

4. Employ indirect and air-to-ground fires only on order of CJTF 180; DCG TF 181; a task force commander; the DFACC; or the DG, 82d Abn Div, unless such fires are necessary for self-defense.

5. Do not use incendiary weapons (e.g., napalm or white phosphorous) against targets in populated areas. Tracer rounds, illumination rounds, and smoke are authorized in all areas.

6. You may employ claymore mines and anti-armor mines to protect U.S. positions. Keep mines under continuous observation, and remove them when no longer necessary.

7. You may presume that civilians in public armed with crew-served weapons, automatic weapons, or rifle are members of the FAD'H National Police, or paramilitary groups and therefore, may treat them as hostile. Civilians in public armed with shotguns or pistols are presumed to be potentially hostile, but deadly force is not authorized unless such persons use or threaten armed force against U.S. force, U.S. citizens, or designated foreign nationals.

8. If circumstances permit, give a challenge before engaging civilians. Challenge by:
   a. Shouting in English: "STOP; DON'T MOVE; HANDS UP";
   or
   b. Shouting in Creole: "STOP (STOP); PA BOUJE (PAH BOO-JAY); METE MEN OU AN LE (MAY-TAY MAY-OO ON-LAY),"
9. Do not engage civilian communication facilities with destructive force unless such facilities are being used in a manner that threatens the security of the force.

10. You may use riot control agents (RCA) on approval of a commander (06 or above), and pepper spray in your own discretion, only in defensive modes in areas under direct U.S. military control.

11. You may stop civilians and check their identities. Search them for weapons, and seize any weapons found.

12. Detain civilians suspected of belonging to the FAD'H or national police or of committing a serious criminal act (e.g., homicide, aggravated assault, arson, rape, robbery, burglary, or larceny). Use the minimum force necessary, up to and including deadly force, to detain civilians who threaten human life or property designated as mission-essential by your commander. In all other cases, use only non-deadly force. Evacuate detainees to designated collection points as soon as circumstances permit.

13. You may also detain civilians when necessary to accomplish your mission or for their own safety, but must release them as soon as circumstances permit.

14. Seize private property only if it has a military use (e.g., weapons, ammunition, communications equipment, or transportation) and your commander authorizes the seizure based on military necessity. Give a receipt to the owner, if available. TAKING WAR TROPHIES IS PROHIBITED.

15. Do not enter the DOMINICAN REPUBLIC unless necessary to recover friendly personnel or for self-defense.

16. The ROE Appendix to the OPORD provides more detail. Resolve conflicts between this card and the OPORD in favor of the OPORD.
RULES OF ENGAGEMENT (ROE) DURING HOSTILITIES
EFFECTIVE H-2

NOTHING IN THESE ROE LIMITS YOUR OBLIGATION TO TAKE ALL NECESSARY AND APPROPRIATE ACTION TO DEFEND YOURSELF AND YOUR UNIT.

1. Treat as hostile and attack the FORCES ARMEES D'HAITI (FAD'H) and the national police.

2. You may presume that civilians in public armed with crew-served weapons, automatic weapons, or rifles are members of the FAD'H, national police, or paramilitary groups, and therefore may be treated as hostile.

3. Civilians in public armed with shotguns or pistols during the hostilities phase are presumed to be potentially hostile, but deadly force is not authorized unless such persons demonstrate hostile intent or engage in hostile acts.

4. Use all lawful means, except as limited by these ROE, to accomplish your mission.

5. Do not enter the DOMINICAN REPUBLIC unless necessary to recover friendly personnel or for self-defense.

6. Do not engage civilian communication facilities with destructive force unless such facilities are being used in a manner that threatens the security of the force.

7. Employ only observed fire, unless unobserved fire is necessary for self-defense.

8. CTG-185.3 withholds authority to employ indirect fires unless necessary for self-defense.
9. Do not use incendiary weapons (e.g., napalm or white phosphorous) against targets in populated areas. Tracer rounds, illumination rounds, and smoke are authorized in all areas.

10. You may employ claymore mines and anti-armor mines to protect U.S. positions. Keep mines under continuous observation, and remove them when no longer necessary.

11. You may stop unidentified persons and check their identities. Search them for weapons, and seize any weapons found.

12. Detain civilians suspected of belonging to the FAD'H or national police or of committing a serious criminal act (e.g., homicide, aggravated assault, arson, rape, robbery, burglary or larceny). Use the minimum force necessary, up to and including deadly force, to detain civilians who threaten human life or property designated as mission-essential by your commander. In all other cases use only non-deadly force. Evacuate detainees to designated collection points as soon as circumstances permit.

13. You may also detain civilians when necessary to accomplish your mission or for their own safety, but must release them as soon as circumstances permit.

14. Confiscate the property of hostile forces, except captives' personal property and equipment necessary for their protection or welfare.

15. Seize private property only if it has military use (e.g., weapons, ammunition, communications equipment, or transportation) and your commander authorizes the seizure based on military necessity. Give a receipt to the owner, if available. Taking war trophies is prohibited.

16. Minimize civilian casualties and incidental damage consistent with mission accomplishment and the security of the force.
Nothing in the ROE limits your right to use necessary force to defend yourself, your fellow service members, your unit, other JTF personnel, key facilities, and property designated by your commander.

1. Repel hostile acts with necessary force, including deadly force. Use only the amount of force needed to protect lives/property and accomplish the mission. Engage targets with observed, direct, deliberately aim fire.

2. Do not hesitate to respond with force against hostile acts and signs with hostile intent.

3. You may use necessary force to stop, disarm, and detain members of the Haitian military, police, other armed persons, or other persons committing hostile acts or showing hostile intent. Stop and detain other persons who interfere with your mission. Evacuate detainees to a designated location for release to proper authorities. Treat all detainees humanely.

4. When a tactical situation permits, you should give a challenge before using deadly force. Challenge by:
   a. Shouting in English "U.S. STOP OR I WILL FIRE!"
   b. Shouting in Creole "U.S. KANPE OUBIEN MAP TIRE!". Phonetic: "U.S. kaHJnpey oobeeEH(n) mahp tEErey!".
   c. Fire warning shots into the air.

5. Treat all persons with dignity and respect.

6. Do not take private property without commander's permission.

7. Remember: No force has been declared hostile, including the Haitian Army and police. Use of deadly force must be based on hostile acts or clear indicators of hostile intent.
Haiti–Combined JTF Haiti ROE Card 2: Peacetime ROE In Effect During Civil Military Operations
23 September 1994

NOTHING IN THESE ROE LIMITS YOUR OBLIGATION TO TAKE ALL NECESSARY AND APPROPRIATE ACTION TO DEFEND YOURSELF AND YOUR UNIT:

1. No forces have been declared hostile. Offensive military operations (raids, assaults, etc.) require CTJF 180 approval.

2. Treat all persons with dignity and respect.

3. Use all necessary force, up to and including deadly force, to defend U.S. forces, U.S. citizens, or designated foreign nationals against an attack or threat of imminent attack. When deadly force is employed, engage targets with observed, deliberately aimed fire.

4. Members of the military, police or other armed persons may be stopped, detained, and if necessary, disarmed if they appear to threaten essential civic order.

5. Civilians may be stopped if they appear to be a threat to U.S. forces, protected persons, key facilities, or property designated mission essential by CJTF 180. If determined to be a threat, they may be further detained. If not, they will be released.

6. Necessary and proportional force is authorized to control disturbances and disperse crowds threatening essential civic order.
7. Persons observed committing serious criminal acts will be detained using minimal force necessary up to and including deadly force. Serious criminal acts include: homicide, aggravated assault, rape, arson and robbery. Non-lethal force is authorized to detain persons observed committing burglary or larceny. Release persons suspected of serious criminal acts to Haitian law enforcement officers/other appropriate authorities as soon as possible.

8. Civilian vehicles may be stopped and their occupants’ identities checked for security purposes. If a civilian vehicle does not stop on order and is approaching a check point or security perimeter, you may fire to disable the vehicle.

9. Do not enter the Dominican Republic without permission from CINCUSACOM.

10. Deadly force is not authorized to disarm Haitians, enforce curfews, or stop looting, unless those individuals involved engage in hostile acts or demonstrate hostile intent.

11. Possession of a weapon in public by any individual does not, by itself, constitute a hostile act or demonstrate hostile intent.

12. U.S. forces are not authorized to grant political asylum. Temporary refuge will be granted only if necessary to protect human life.

13. Respect diplomatic personnel, residences, facilities, and property. Do not enter diplomatic residences/facilities unless invited by appropriate diplomatic officials or approved by CINCUSACOM.
Haiti—Peacetime ROE In Effect Until H-2

PEACETIME RULES OF ENGAGEMENT (ROE)
IN EFFECT UNTIL H-2

NOTHING IN THESE ROE LIMITS YOUR OBLIGATION TO TAKE ALL NECESSARY AND APPROPRIATE ACTION TO DEFEND YOURSELF AND YOUR UNIT.

1. No forces have been declared hostile.

2. Offensive military operations, such as raids, assault's, and ambushes, are not authorized.

3. Search and rescue (SAR) personnel may use the minimum force necessary, up to and including deadly force, to recover friendly personnel.

4. Treat all persons with dignity and respect.

5. Use all necessary force, up to and including deadly force, to defend U.S. forces. U.S. citizens, or designated foreign nationals against an attack or threat of imminent attack.

6. Use the minimum force necessary to repel the attack or to determine that the threat has been abandoned, and to ensure the continued safety of persons and property.

7. Force options include, but are not limited to, withdrawal, warnings, show of force, pepper spray, riot control agents (RCA) if authorized by CJTF 180, warning shots, employment of marksmen, and other reasonable uses of force necessary under the circumstances and proportional to the threat.

8. Do not enter the territory of a foreign country unless necessary to recover friendly personnel or for self-defense.
Haiti—ROE During CMO Effective Beginning Phase III

RULES OF ENGAGEMENT (ROE) DURING CMO EFFECTIVE BEGINNING PHASE III

NOTHING IN THESE ROE LIMITS YOUR OBLIGATION TO TAKE ALL NECESSARY AND APPROPRIATE ACTION TO DEFEND YOURSELF AND YOUR UNIT.

1. No forces have been declared hostile.

2. CJTF 180 may authorize offensive military operations such as raids, assaults, and ambushes, on a case-by-case basis. Use the minimum force necessary, up to and including deadly force, to accomplish such operations.

3. Search and rescue (SAR) personnel may use the minimum force necessary, up to and including deadly force, to recover friendly personnel.

4. Treat all persons with dignity and respect.

6. Use all necessary force, up to and including deadly force, to defend U.S. forces, U.S. citizens, or designated foreign nationals against an attack or threat of imminent attack.

6. Use the minimum force necessary to repel the attack or to determine that the threat has been abandoned, and to ensure the continued safety of persons and property.

7. Force options include, but are not limited to, withdrawal, warnings, show of force, pepper spray, riot control agents (RCA) if authorized by CJTF 180, warning shots, employment of marksmen, and other reasonable uses of force necessary under the circumstances and proportional to the threat.

8. Do not enter the DOMINICAN REPUBLIC unless necessary to recover friendly personnel or for self-defense.

9. You may stop unidentified persons in our area of operations and check their identities for security purposes. Search them for weapons, and seize any weapons found.
Haiti—Air ROE

AIR RULES OF ENGAGEMENT (ROE)
EFFECTIVE DURING ALL PHASES OF THE OPERATION

1. Nothing in these ROE limits a pilot’s obligation to take all necessary and appropriate action to defend himself and other U.S. forces. If at any time aircraft commit a hostile act or demonstrate hostile intent, intercepting pilots may engage them.

2. The decision to authorize warning shots or engagement will be based on all available facts and circumstances, including the announced intention of foreign authorities, intercepted communications, and the maneuvering of aircraft.

3. Additional evidence of hostile Intent for an aircraft includes:
   a. Known capability to carry weapons and displaying a possible attack profile, or shifting sensors to a weapons guidance mode.
   b. Intelligence indications that the aircraft intends to commit a hostile act.
   c. Persistently maneuvering against an intercepting aircraft in a designated air defense AOR.
   d. Flight profile which threatens the security of land or seaborne forces.

4. TF 185 aircraft will not penetrate the outer CUBAN Air Defense Identification Zone (ADIZ) except as authorized below.

5. Except for ingress into and egress from Guantanamo Naval Air Station, at no time will TF 185 AIRCRAFT APPROACH CLOSER THAN 15 NAUTICAL MILES TO THE LAND TERRITORY OF CUBA.

6. TF 185 aircraft may intercept any CUBAN military aircraft operating beyond 15 nautical miles of the land territory of CUBA and within 100 nautical miles of U.S. High Value Airborne Assets (HVAA) (e.g., AWACS, EC-130's, RC/EC135's, ABCCC's, or C-130/141s carrying paratroopers) or High Value Naval Assets (HVNA) (e.g., CV's, amphibious shipping, or the TF 185 flagship).
7. When intercepting CUBAN military aircraft, the following procedures apply:

   a. If radio contact with the CUBAN aircraft can be established, warn them that they are entering the area of U.S. military operations and order them to leave the area.

   b. If radio contact cannot be established or if the CUBAN aircraft do not comply with instructions, the lead intercepting pilot will attempt to employ ICAO visual signals, if practical, to signal the CUBAN aircraft to leave the area.

   c. If the CUBAN aircraft persist in their failure to comply with instructions, the lead intercepting pilot will inform his controller and will maintain contact with the CUBAN aircraft.

   d. If the CUBAN aircraft maneuver within 75 nautical miles of U.S. HVAA/HVNA, the lead intercepting pilot will inform his controller, who may relay the order from the JFACC or senior air controller to fire warning shots. Fire warning shots from such a position as to be recognized by the CUBAN pilots as a warning without giving the impression of actual attack.

   e. If the CUBAN aircraft persist in their failure to comply with instructions and maneuver within 50 nautical miles of U.S. HVAA/HVNA, the intercepting aircraft will maneuver into a position to engage the CUBAN aircraft.

   f. If the CUBAN aircraft persist in their failure to comply with instruction and maneuver within 40 nautical miles of U.S. HVAA/HVNA, the lead intercepting pilot will inform his controller, who may relay the order from the JFACC or the senior air controller to engage the CUBAN aircraft.

8. Realizing that no real Haitian air threat exists, any air-to-air engagement in the airspace in and around Haiti requires positive visual Identification (VID) by the intercepting pilot and clear evidence of hostile intent prior to engagement. The intercepting pilot will not engage without an order from the JFACC or senior air controller.
Operation Joint Endeavor—Hungary

ROE CARD FOR HUNGARY

1. The Mission.
   - The U.S. is not at war with anyone.
   - You are here at the invitation of the host nation.
   - Your mission is to assist in providing logistical support to the Implementation Force (IFOR).

2. Right of Self-Defense.
   - You always have the right and duty to defend yourself.
   - If anyone commits a hostile act against you (an attack which could cause death or serious injury) or is about to attack you, you may use all means necessary to defend yourself, consistent with the principles set forth below.
   - You may also use force to defend other U.S. Forces.

3. Attempt to Control the Situation Without Use of Force.
   - Use force only as a last resort.
   - If circumstances permit, attempt to warn first.

4. Use the Minimum Force Necessary to Defend Yourself and Others.
   - If circumstances permit, attempt to use non-deadly force before resorting to deadly force.

5. If You Have to Use Deadly Force:
   - Fire only aimed shots;
   - Fire no more rounds than necessary;
   - Try not to injure anyone other than your target;
   - Try not to unnecessarily destroy property - Stop firing as soon as the situation permits; and
   - Care for the sick and wounded.

6. Respect Private Property at All Times.
   - Do not take anything that does not belong to you.


8. Show Courtesy in Executing Your Duties.
   - Learn local, social, and religious customs and respect them at all times.
A. EVERY SERVICEMAN HAS THE RIGHT UNDER LAW TO USE REASONABLE AND NECESSARY FORCE TO DEFEND HIMSELF AGAINST VIOLENT AND DANGEROUS PERSONAL ATTACK. THE LIMITATIONS DESCRIBED BELOW ARE NOT INTENDED TO INFRINGE THIS RIGHT, BUT TO PREVENT THE INDISCRIMINATE USE OF FORCE.

B. FORCE WILL NEVER BE USED UNLESS NECESSARY, AND THEN ONLY THE MINIMUM FORCE NECESSARY WILL BE USED.

(1) USE NON-DEADLY FORCE TO:

(A) CONTROL THE DISTURBANCE.

(B) PREVENT CRIMES.

(C) APPREHEND OR DETAIN PERSONS WHO HAVE COMMITTED CRIMES.

(2) USE DEADLY FORCE ONLY WHEN:

(A) LESSER MEANS OF FORCE EXHAUSTED OR UNAVAILABLE, AND

(B) RISK OF DEATH OR SERIOUS BODILY HARM TO INNOCENT PERSONS IS NOT SIGNIFICANTLY INCREASED BY THE USE, AND

(C) PURPOSE OF USE

   1. SELF-DEFENSE TO AVOID DEATH OR SERIOUS BODILY HARM
   2. PREVENTION OF CRIME INVOLVING DEATH OR SERIOUS BODILY HARM;
   3. PREVENTION OF DESTRUCTION OF PUBLIC UTILITIES WHICH HAVE BEEN DETERMINED VITAL BY THE TF COMMANDER.
   4. DETENTION OR PREVENTION OF ESCAPE OF PERSONS WHO PRESENT A CLEAR THREAT OF LOSS OF LIFE.

(3) WHEN POSSIBLE, THE USE OF DEADLY FORCE SHOULD BE PRECEDED BY A CLEAR WARNING THAT SUCH FORCE IS CONTEMPLATED OR IMMINENT.

(4) WARNING SHOTS WILL NOT BE USED.

(5) WHEN FIRING, SHOTS WILL BE AIMED TO WOUND, IF POSSIBLE, RATHER THAN KILL.
(6) WEAPONS WILL NOT BE FIRED ON AUTOMATIC.

(7) WHEN POSSIBLE, LET CIVILIAN POLICE ARREST LAWBREAKERS.

(8) ALLOW PROPERLY IDENTIFIED NEWS REPORTERS FREEDOM OF MOVEMENT, SO LONG AS THEY DO NOT INTERFERE WITH YOUR MISSION.

(9) DO NOT TALK ABOUT THIS OPERATION OR PASS ON INFORMATION OR RUMORS ABOUT IT TO UNAUTHORIZED PERSONS; REFER THEM TO YOUR COMMANDER.

(10) JTF COMMANDER WITHHOLDS AUTHORITY FOR USE OF RIOT CONTROL AGENTS AND SNIPER TEAMS.

C. ARMING ORDERS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ARMING ORDER</th>
<th>RIFLE</th>
<th>SCABBARD</th>
<th>BAYONET</th>
<th>PISTOL</th>
<th>BATON</th>
<th>MAG/CHAMBER</th>
<th>CNTRL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AO-1</td>
<td>SLING ON BELT</td>
<td>SCABBARD</td>
<td>HOLSTER</td>
<td>BELT</td>
<td>IN POUCH/EMPTY</td>
<td>OIC/NCOIC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AO-2</td>
<td>PORT ON BELT</td>
<td>SCABBARD</td>
<td>HOLSTER</td>
<td>BELT</td>
<td>IN POUCH/EMPTY</td>
<td>OIC/NCOIC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AO-3</td>
<td>SLING ON BELT FIXED</td>
<td>HOLSTER</td>
<td>HAND</td>
<td>IN POUCH/EMPTY</td>
<td>OIC/NCOIC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AO-4</td>
<td>PORT ON BELT FIXED</td>
<td>HOLSTER</td>
<td>HAND</td>
<td>IN POUCH/EMPTY</td>
<td>OIC/NCOIC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AO-5</td>
<td>PORT ON BELT FIXED</td>
<td>HOLSTER</td>
<td>HAND</td>
<td>IN WEAPON/EMPTY</td>
<td>OIC/NCOIC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AO-6</td>
<td>PORT ON BELT FIXED</td>
<td>IN HAND</td>
<td>BELT</td>
<td>IN WEAPON/LOCKED/LOADED</td>
<td>OIC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOTE: the above ROE utilized by JTF LA were adapted from the generic ROE contained in the Army's GARDEN PLOT CIVIL DISTURBANCE PLAN, and modified slightly based upon input from Dep't of the Army (7th ID), CINCFOR, and the JCS Staff]
1. NOTHING IN THESE RULES LIMITS YOUR RIGHT TO USE REASONABLE AND NECESSARY FORCE TO DEFEND YOURSELF OR ANOTHER U.S. SERVICE MEMBER FROM THE THREAT OF DEATH OR SERIOUS BODILY HARM.

2. Treat the Kurds as our guests with dignity and respect. The Kurds are not prisoners or detainees. Your humanitarian mission to ensure the security, health, and welfare of the Kurds should be low profile.

3. You are authorized to use non-deadly (minimum) force to protect yourself, others (including Kurds), and property. You may only use the minimum force necessary and proportional to the threat you are facing and only in those situations where using force is absolutely essential. Once the threat is under control, your authority to use force ceases.

4. Non-deadly (minimum) force should be applied in the following escalating order: (1) verbal orders and hand gestures to stop, disperse, and return to a designated area, (2) physical restraint of individuals, (3) show of force by increasing personnel, and (4) other reasonable, necessary, and appropriate use of force.

5. Use of deadly force is authorized only if all three of the following conditions exist:
   a. Lesser means have not or will not work; and
   b. Use will not significantly increase risk of death or serious bodily harm to innocent persons; and
   c. You are protecting yourself or another from deadly force or the imminent threat of deadly force.

6. You MAY NOT use deadly force against persons who are (1) escaping, (2) looting, (3) committing property offenses, or (4) being trouble makers (i.e., committing disorderly conduct), UNLESS in self-defense or defense of others when necessary and proportionate to the threat.
7. In the event you need to use deadly force, you must: (1) when possible, warn the individual or group to stop/halt and that you are about to use deadly force (warning shots are not authorized), and (2) fire deliberately aimed shots intended to wound.

8. Only exterior gate guards, traffic control point offices, mobile vehicular patrols, and the SP desk sergeant are authorized to carry arms. The members of the 25 person response team may be authorized to carry arms if directed by the JTF Commander or his designee.

9. Report all uses of force to your chain of command, including violations of these ROE.

10. Don't release these rules to the Kurds or members of the media.
1. NOTHING IN THESE RULES LIMITS YOUR RIGHT TO USE REASONABLE AND NECESSARY FORCE TO DEFEND YOURSELF, ANOTHER SOLDIER, OR ANOTHER U.S. SERVICE MEMBER FROM THE THREAT OF DEATH OR SERIOUS BODILY HARM.

2. Treat all persons with dignity and respect. Your humanitarian assistance mission is being conducted to ensure the health and welfare of the Chinese migrants prior to their repatriation.

3. You are authorized to use non-deadly force in order to protect yourself, others, including Chinese migrants, and property. You may also use force to ensure the safe and secure operation of the Temporary Living Camp. The force you are authorized to use must be only that force necessary under the circumstances and proportionate to the threat you are facing. Once the threat is under control, your authority to use force ceases. Use the graduated response procedures on the back of this card if the situation permits.

4. Use of deadly force is authorized only in defense of yourself or others, including Chinese migrants, from the imminent threat of death or serious bodily harm. Before using deadly force, use the graduated response procedures on the back of this card if the situation permits.
5. If you must fire your weapon or use deadly force:

- Warning shots are not authorized.
- Use a deliberately aimed shot intended to wound.
- You may not fire your weapon on automatic.
- Deadly force may not be used on looters or persons fleeing.

6. Report all discharges of pepper spray and uses of deadly force to your chain of command.

7. Report all violations of these ROE to your chain of command.

GRADUATED RESPONSE PROCEDURES:

If the situation permits, use the following graduated response procedures.

Issue a verbal order with hand and arm gestures. The order "TING" instructs the migrant to cease his or her conduct.
Kosovo: Task Force Hawk ROE Card

TASK FORCE HAWK ROE CARD
(The contents of this card are unclassified for dissemination to soldiers)

NOTHING IN THESE RULES PROHIBITS OUR FORCES FROM EXERCISING THEIR INHERENT RIGHT OF SELF-DEFENSE.

1. AT ALL TIMES, USE NECESSARY FORCE, UP TO AND INCLUDING DEADLY FORCE:
   a. In response to an immediate threat of serious bodily injury or death against yourself, other NATO Forces, or the Friendly Forces of other nations.
   b. To prevent the immediate theft, damage, or destruction of firearms, ammunition, explosives or property designated as vital to national security.

2. AT ALL TIMES, USE FORCE LESS THAN DEADLY FORCE:
   a. In response to a threat less than serious bodily injury or death against yourself, other NATO Forces, or the Friendly Forces of other nations.
   b. To prevent the immediate theft, damage, or destruction of any NATO military property.

3. WHEN THE SITUATION PERMITS, USE A GRADUATED ESCALATION OF FORCE, TO INCLUDE:
   a. Verbal warnings to “Halt” or “ndalOHnee”
   b. Show your weapons.
   c. Show of force to include riot control formations.
   d. Non-lethal physical force.
   e. If necessary to stop an immediate threat of serious bodily harm or death, engage the threat with deliberately aimed shots until it is no longer a threat.
4. **SOLDIERS MAY SEARCH, DISARM, AND DETAIN PERSONS AS REQUIRED TO PROTECT THE FORCE.**

   DETAINEES WILL BE TURNED OVER TO APPROPRIATE HOST NATION AUTHORITIES ASAP.

5. **WARNING SHOTS ARE STRICTLY PROHIBITED.**

6. **TREAT ALL EPWs WITH DIGNITY AND RESPECT.**

   RESPECT THE CULTURAL AND RELIGIOUS BELIEFS OF ALL EPWs.

7. **DO NOT RETAIN WAR TROPHIES OR ENEMY SOUVENIRS FOR YOUR PERSONAL USE.**

8. **DO NOT ENTER ANY MOSQUE, OR OTHER ISLAMIC RELIGIOUS SITE UNLESS NECESSARY FOR MISSION ACCOMPLISHMENT AND DIRECTED BY YOUR COMMANDER.**

9. **IMMEDIATELY REPORT ANY VIOLATIONS OF THE LAW OF WAR, OR THE RULES OF ENGAGEMENT TO YOUR CHAIN OF COMMAND, MPs, CHAPLAIN, IG, OR JAG OFFICER REGARDLESS OF WHETHER FRIENDLY FORCES OR ENEMY FORCES COMMITTED THE SUSPECTED VIOLATION.**
Kosovo—KFOR ROE Soldier’s Card

SOLDIER’S CARD

To be carried at all times

MISSION. Your mission is to assist in the implementation of and to help ensure compliance with a Military Technical Agreement (MTA) in Kosovo.

SELF-DEFENCE.

a. You have the right to use necessary and proportional force in self-defence.
b. Use only the minimum force necessary to defend yourself.

GENERAL RULES.

a. Use the minimum force necessary to accomplish your mission.
b. Hostile forces/belligerents who want to surrender will not be harmed. Disarm them and turn them over to your superiors.
c. Treat everyone, including civilians and detained hostile forces/belligerents, humanely.
d. Collect and care for the wounded, whether friend or foe.
e. Respect private property. Do not steal. Do not take "war trophies".
f. Prevent and report all suspected violations of the Law of Armed Conflict to superiors.

CHALLENGING AND WARNING SHOTS.

a. If the situation permits, issue a challenge:
In English: "NATO! STOP OR I WILL FIRE!"
or in Serbo-Croat: "NATO! STANI ILI PUCAM!"
(Pronounced as: NATO! STANI ILI PUTSAM!)
or in Albanian: "NATO! NDAL OSE UNE DO TE QELLOJ"
(Pronounced as: NATO! N'DAL OSE UNE DO TE CHILLOY)
b. If the person fails to halt, you may be authorized by the on-scene commander or by standing orders to fire a warning shot.
OPENING FIRE.

a. You may open fire only if you, friendly forces or persons or property under your protection are threatened with deadly force. This means:

(1) You may open fire against an individual who fires or aims his weapon at, or otherwise demonstrates an intent to imminently attack, you, friendly forces, or Persons with Designated Special Status (PDSS) or property with designated special status under your protection.

(2) You may open fire against an individual who plants, throws or prepares to throw, and explosive or incendiary device at, or otherwise demonstrates an intent to imminently attack, you, friendly forces, PDSS or property with designated special status under your protection.

(3) You may open fire against an individual deliberately driving a vehicle at you, friendly forces, or PDSS or property with designated special status.

b. You may also fire against an individual who attempts to take possession of friendly force weapons, ammunition, or property with designated special status, and there is no other way of avoiding this.

c. You may use minimum force, including opening fire, against an individual who unlawfully commits or is about to commit an act which endangers life, in circumstances where there is no other way to prevent the act.

MINIMUM FORCE.

a. If you have to open fire, you must:
   - Fire only aimed shots, and
   - Fire no more rounds than necessary, and
   - Take all reasonable efforts not to unnecessarily destroy property, and
   - Stop firing as soon as the situation permits.

b. You may not intentionally attack civilians, or property that is exclusively civilian or religious in character, except if the property is being used for military purposes or engagement is authorized by your commander.
Kosovo—MEU Supplemental Card

This card is to be used in conjunction with the Blue KFOR cards.

1. Use of Force
*Minimum Force (up to and including deadly force) and Escalation of force rules apply:
*in defense of unit, persons or property with designated special status
  Examples: Persons - UN or Red Cross personnel
  Property - weapons, ammo, classifieds
*against anyone interfering with the discharge of your duties
*against anyone threatening or committing a serious criminal act
*defend against intrusion into military restricted areas
*prevent the escape of a detained person

2. Other Measures

a. Detention
*You may only detain belligerents (armed individuals) who attempt to enter controlled areas
*You may detain civilians who: commit crimes, interfere with your mission, or attempt to enter controlled areas
  Serious crimes include: anything causing death or serious bodily harm (murder, rape, assault)

b. Search and Seizure
You may search: Persons
  Property
  Vehicles
*in the execution of your duties enforcing the peace agreement
*when you detain individuals
*on suspicion of the presence of weapons or other military equipment

ROE are sensitive material. Do NOT lose this card. Return card through chain of command to SJA on completion of the mission.
## MEU ROE Training Card

### ROE TRAINING CARD

Nothing in these rules limits your Authority and Obligation to take all necessary and appropriate actions to defend yourself and your unit.

**Right to defend**  Always return fire with aimed fire. You have the right to use force to repel hostile acts.

**Anticipate attack**  You have the right to use force to respond to clear indications of hostile intent.

**Measure your force**  When time and circumstances permit, use only that force which is necessary and proportional to protect lives and accomplish the mission.

**Protect with Deadly force**  only human life and sensitive mission essential property designated by the commander.

### USE OF FORCE

Force includes everything from shouting a warning up to the use of deadly force. Use as much force as is necessary to decisively end the situation in your favor. You are authorized to use force against another person or group to protect yourself and others and you may use force to accomplish your mission.

### SELF-DEFENSE

You will always protect yourself and others against anyone who uses or is clearly about to use force against you. You may initiate or use preemptive force against those who indicate "hostile intent" against you or other friendly forces. "Hostile intent" is the threat of imminent use of force by an opposing force or terrorist unit against friendly forces.
Operation Provide Comfort
As Authorized by JCS (EUCOM Dir. 55-47)

1. All military operations will be conducted in accordance with the Law of War.

2. The use of armed force will be utilized as a measure of last resort only.

3. Nothing in these rules negates or otherwise over-rides a commander's obligation to take all necessary and appropriate actions for his unit's self-defense.

4. U.S. forces will not fire unless fired upon, unless there is clear evidence of hostile intent.

HOSTILE INTENT - The threat of imminent use of force by an Iraqi force, or other foreign force, terrorist group, or individuals against the U.S., U.S. forces, U.S. citizens, or Kurdish or other refugees located above the 36th parallel or otherwise located within a U.S. or allied safe haven refugee area. When the on scene commander determines based on convincing evidence, that HOSTILE INTENT is present, the right exists to use proportional force to deter or to neutralize the threat.

HOSTILE ACT - Includes armed force used directly to preclude or impede the mission and/or duties of U.S. or allied forces.

5. Response to hostile fire directly threatening U.S. or allied care shall be rapid and directed at the source of hostile fire, using only that force necessary and proportional to eliminate the threat. Other foreign forces (such as reconnaissance aircraft) that have shown an active integration with the attacking form may be engaged. Use minimum amount of force necessary to control the situation.

6. You may fire into Iraqi territory in response to hostile fire.

7. You may fire into another nation's territory in response to hostile fire only if the cognizant government is unable or unwilling to stop that force's hostile acts effectively and promptly.
8. Surface-to-air missiles will engage hostile aircraft flying north of the 36th parallel.

9. Surface to air missiles will engage hostile aircraft south of the 36th parallel only when they demonstrate hostile intent or commit a hostile act. Except in cases of self-defense, authority for such engagement rests with the designated air defense commander. Warning bursts may be fired ahead of foreign aircraft to deter hostile acts.

10. In the event U.S. forces are attacked or threatened by UNARMED hostile elements, mobs, or rioters, the responsibility for the protection of U.S. forces rests with the U.S. commanding officer. On scene commanders will employ the following to overcome the threat.

   a. Warnings to demonstrators
   b. Show of force, including use of riot control formation
   c. Warning shots fired over the heads of hostile elements
   d. Other reasonable uses of force necessary under circumstances and proportional to the threat.

11. Use the following guidelines when applying these rules:

   a. Use of force only to protect lives
   b. Use of minimum force necessary.
   c. Pursuit will not be taken to retaliate, however, immediate pursuit may begin and continue for as long as there is an imminent threat to U.S. forces. In the absence of JCS approval U.S. forces should not pursue any hostile force into another nation's territory.
   d. If necessary and proportional, use all available weapons to deter, neutralize, or destroy the threat as required.
APPENDIX C: SAMPLE ROE CARDS

Shining Hope NATO/AFOR ROE
23 April 1999

1. MISSION. Your mission is, in support of and in close coordination with the Albanian civil authorities and the international humanitarian aid agencies, to assist in providing humanitarian assistance to the refugees and, as necessary, provide local area security.

2. SELF-DEFENSE.
   a. You have the right to use necessary and proportional force in self-defense.
   b. Use only the minimum force necessary to defend yourself.

3. GENERAL RULES.
   a. Use the minimum force necessary to accomplish your mission.
   b. Hostile forces/belligerents who want to surrender will not be harmed. Disarm them and turn them over to your superiors.
   c. Treat everyone, including civilians and detained hostile forces/belligerents, humanely.
   d. Collect and care for the wounded, whether friend or foe.
   e. Respect private property. Do not steal. Do not take "war trophies".

4. CHALLENGE AND WARNING PROCEDURES.
   a. If the situation permits, issue a challenge:
      In English: "NATO! STOP OR I WILL FIRE!"
      or in Albanian: "NATO! NDAL OSE UNE DO TE QELLOJ
      (Pronounced as: NATO! N'DAL OSE UNE DO TE CHILLOY)
   b. If the person fails to halt, you may be authorized by the on-scene commander or by standing orders to fire a warning shot.
5. OPENING FIRE.

a. You may open fire only if you, friendly forces or persons or property under your protection are threatened with deadly force. This means:

(1) You may open fire against an individual who fires or aims his weapon at, or otherwise demonstrates hostile intent or commits a hostile act against, you, friendly forces, Persons with Designated Special Status (PDSS) or property with designated special status under your protection.

(2) You may open fire against an individual who plants, throws, or prepares to throw, an explosive or incendiary device at, or otherwise demonstrates hostile intent or commits a hostile act against, you, friendly forces, Persons with Designated Special Status (PDSS) or property with designated special status under your protection.

(3) You may open fire against an individual who deliberately drives a vehicle at you, friendly forces, Persons with Designated Special Status or property with designated special status.

b. You may also fire against an individual who attempts to take possession of friendly force weapons, ammunition, or property with designated special status, and there is no other way of avoiding this.

6. MINIMUM FORCE.

a. If you have to open fire, you must:
   - Fire only aimed shots, and
   - Fire no more rounds than necessary, and
   - Take all reasonable efforts not to unnecessarily destroy property, and
   - Stop firing as soon as the situation permits.

b. You may not intentionally attack civilians or property that is exclusively civilian or religious in character, unless directed by COAAFOR or in case of self-defense.
Generic Forced Entry ROE Card

1. YOU ALWAYS HAVE THE RIGHT TO DEFEND YOURSELF AND YOUR UNIT. IF FIRED UPON, RETURN FIRE WITH AIMED FIRE.

2. YOU MAY USE NECESSARY FORCE, INCLUDING DEADLY FORCE, AT ANY TIME AGAINST FORCES DESIGNATED AS THE ENEMY. YOU MAY NOT USE DEADLY FORCE IF THE ENEMY IS MAKING A REAL ATTEMPT TO SURRENDER OR DEFECT, OR IS WEARING MEDICAL INSIGNIA.

3. YOU MAY USE NECESSARY FORCE, INCLUDING DEADLY FORCE, AGAINST ANY PERSON, VEHICLE OR AIRCRAFT COMMITTING A HOSTILE ACT OR SHOWING HOSTILE INTENT TOWARDS YOU OR OTHER U.S. MILITARY PERSONNEL. HOSTILE ACTS ARE THOSE WHICH MAY CAUSE SERIOUS BODILY INJURY OR DEATH. HOSTILE INTENT EXISTS WHEN A PERSON PREPARES TO USE FORCE AGAINST YOU OR OTHER U.S. MILITARY PERSONNEL.

4. YOU MAY USE NECESSARY FORCE, INCLUDING DEADLY FORCE, TO PREVENT THE THEFT, DAMAGE, OR DESTRUCTION OF AMMUNITION, WEAPONS, VEHICLES, NIGHT VISION DEVICES, OR SECURE COMMUNICATION ASSETS. YOU MAY USE NON-DEADLY FORCE TO PREVENT THE THEFT, DAMAGE, OR DESTRUCTION OF ALL OTHER U.S. MILITARY EQUIPMENT. USE ONLY THE AMOUNT OF FORCE NECESSARY TO ACCOMPLISH THE MISSION.

5. DO NOT ATTACK MEDICAL FACILITIES OR EQUIPMENT, UNLESS THEY ARE BEING USED TO ATTACK U.S. MILITARY PERSONNEL. YOU MAY STRIKE BACK TO ELIMINATE SPECIFIC THREATS. YOU MAY SEARCH MEDICAL FACILITIES IF NECESSARY TO ACCOMPLISH THE MISSION.

6. YOU MAY ATTACK CIVILIAN VEHICLES CARRYING ENEMY FORCES OR SUPPLIES.
7. IF A CIVILIAN VEHICLE ATTEMPTS TO BREACH A CLEARLY ESTABLISHED BLOCKING POSITION, YOU MAY USE DEADLY FORCE TO STOP THE VEHICLE.

8. TREAT ALL INDIVIDUALS ON AN OBJECTIVE WITH SUSPICION. SEARCH ALL LIVE PERSONS AND SEGREGATE THEM INTO TWO GROUPS: HOSTILE COMBATANTS AND NON-HOSTILE CIVILIANS. KEEP GROUPS IN SEPARATE LOCATIONS WHERE THEY ARE UNABLE TO VIEW YOUR OPERATIONS.

9. DO NOT LOOT OR PARTAKE IN THE "SPOILS OF WAR." YOU MAY NOT TAKE PERSONAL PRIVATE PROPERTY AS A WAR TROPHY. CAPTURED ENEMY AMMUNITION, FIREARMS, EQUIPMENT AND CASH BECOME THE PROPERTY OF THE U.S. GOVERNMENT. PERSONAL PRIVATE PROPERTY IS DEFINED AS NON-MILITARY ITEMS OWNED OR POSSESSED BY NON-HOSTILE CIVILIANS.


11. THE AMOUNT OF FORCE AND TYPE OF WEAPONS YOU USE SHOULD NOT EXCEED WHAT IS NECESSARY TO ACCOMPLISH THE MISSION. MINIMIZE ANY COLLATERAL DAMAGE.

12. YOU ARE NEVER AUTHORIZED TO VIOLATE THE LAW OF WAR. IMMEDIATELY REPORT LAW OF WAR AND ROE VIOLATIONS TO YOUR CHAIN OF COMMAND, MPs, IG, AND/OR JAG.

13. YOUR CHAIN OF COMMAND MAY SUPPLEMENT THESE ROE FOR EACH OPERATION DUE TO METT-T.
APPENDIX C: SAMPLE ROE CARDS

NOTHING IN THESE ROE LIMITS YOUR RIGHT TO TAKE ALL NECESSARY AND APPROPRIATE ACTION TO DEFEND YOURSELF AND YOUR UNIT.

1. Use all necessary force, including deadly force:
   a. To defend yourself, other UN personnel, or persons and areas under your protection against the use of force or clear evidence of intent to use force.
   b. To confiscate and demilitarize crew-served weapons.
   c. To disarm and demilitarize individuals in areas under UNOSOM control.

2. Always use the minimum force necessary under the circumstances and proportional to the threat.

3. If the tactical situation permits, give a challenge before using deadly force. Challenge by:
   a. Shouting in English, "UN, stop or I'll fire."
   b. Shouting in Somali, "UN, KA HANAGA JOOGA AMA WAA GUBAN, OR."
   c. Firing warning shots in the air.

4. Unattended weapons, such as booby traps, mines, and trip guns, are prohibited.

5. Detain individuals who interfere with your mission, who use or clearly threaten deadly force, or who commit criminal acts in areas under UNOSOM control. Evacuate detainees to a designated location for turnover to military police. Treat all detainees humanely.

6. Do not seize civilian property without your commander's authorization.

7. Treat all persons with dignity and respect.

8. Organized, armed militia, technicals and other crew-served weapons are considered a threat to UNOSOM forces and may be engaged without provocation.
Note: These are examples only. Inclusion in this Appendix does not constitute endorsement.

Sample ROE Training Program: Extract of XVIII Airborne Corps and Fort Bragg Regulation 350-41, Training In Units (12 January 1998)

First Cavalry Division Bosnia ROE Brief (August 1998)
XVIII ABN CORPS AND FORT BRAGG REG 350-41

TRAINING IN UNITS

HEADQUARTERS
XVIII AIRBORNE CORPS
FT BRAGG, NC
12 JANUARY 98
APPENDIX D: SAMPLE ROE TNG PROGRAM & BRIEFS
XVIII ABN CORPS & FT BRAGG REG. 350-41

DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
HEADQUARTERS, XVIII AIRBORNE CORPS AND FORT BRAGG
Fort Bragg, North Carolina 28307-5000

Regulation
No. *350-41

TRAINING IN UNITS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1: Introduction
CHAPTER 2: Responsibilities
CHAPTER 3: Training Requirements and Strategy
CHAPTER 4: Training Guidance
CHAPTER 5: Training Execution and Records
CHAPTER 6: Leader Development
CHAPTER 7: Training of Soldiers and Leader Tasks
CHAPTER 8: Soldier Training Courses
CHAPTER 9: Weapon Qualification
CHAPTER 10: Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense and
Deliberate Smoke Employment
CHAPTER 11: Combat Lifesaver
CHAPTER 12: Safety
CHAPTER 13: Law of War Training
CHAPTER 14: Corps Modernization Training
CHAPTER 15: Joint Airborne/Air Transportability Training Program
CHAPTER 16: Simulation Support to Training
CHAPTER 17: Training Ammunition
CHAPTER 18: RAMP/RULES OF ENGAGEMENT (ROE) TRAINING

APPENDIX A: REFERENCES
APPENDIX B: OFF-POST-TRAINING (OPT) REQUEST FORMAT
APPENDIX C: RECURRING EVENTS
APPENDIX D: MILITARY QUALIFICATIONS STANDARDS (MQS)
APPENDIX E: COMMON TASK TEST (CTT)
APPENDIX F: STRESS REDUCTION PRESENTATION OUTLINE
APPENDIX G: HEAT CATEGORY CHART
APPENDIX H: WINDCHILL CHART
APPENDIX I: XVIII ABN CORPS TRAINING MANAGEMENT
APPENDIX J: SIGNIFICANT ACTIVITIES REPORT
APPENDIX K: AIT/OJT IN UNITS
APPENDIX L: TRAINING EVALUATIONS
APPENDIX M: ARTEP/ORTT/EXEVAL PROGRAM
APPENDIX D: SAMPLE ROE TNG PROGRAM & BRIEFS
XVIII ABN CORPS & FT BRAGG REG. 350-41

APPENDIX N: SEMI-ANNUAL TRAINING BRIEFING (SATB)  APPENDIX O: CS CHAMBER REQUEST FORMAT
APPENDIX P: RAMP TASKS, CONDITIONS AND STANDARDS
APPENDIX Q: RAMP TRAINING SCENARIOS
APPENDIX R: SAMPLE ROECON ANNEX TO FSOP/TACSOP
APPENDIX S: SAMPLE ROE ANNEX WITH ROECONS
APPENDIX T: SAMPLE RAMP TRAINER WORKSHEETS
APPENDIX U: RAMP/ROE LEVEL I TRAINING SLIDES
GLOSSARY

Only ROE-specific sections of
XVIII Abn Corps & FT Bragg
Reg. 350-41 are included in
this ROE Handbook.
CHAPTER 2

RESPONSIBILITIES

SECTION 1
HEADQUARTERS, XVIII AIRBORNE CORPS

2-1. ACofS G-3/DIRECTORATE OF OPERATIONS

2-2. ACofS G-3/DIRECTORATE OF PLANS

2-3. ACofS G-3/DIRECTORATE OF EXERCISES

2-13. THE JUDGE ADVOCATE GENERAL (SJA).

The Staff Judge Advocate will:

a. Coordinate all law of war training through the G-3. The SJA will be the responsible staff element to conduct this training.

b. Coordinate all RAMP/ROE training through the G-3. While the G-3 will be the responsible staff element to conduct this training, the SJA will provide technical assistance and periodic review of unit RAMP/ROE training programs.

c. Provide law of war instruction to soldiers and RAMP/ROE instruction to unit trainers.

d. Advise and assist unit commanders in planning and executing law of war and RAMP/ROE training.

e. Forward written AARs and lessons learned on RAMP/ROE training to the XVIII Airborne Corps G-3.

...
CHAPTER 18

RAMP/RULES OF ENGAGEMENT (ROE) TRAINING

18-1. PURPOSE. To establish standardized ROE training objectives, responsibilities, policies, and resources. This guidance will assist commanders and their staffs in integrating the base line ROE principles contained in the JCS Standing ROE into unit training. This chapter also explains the method by which commanders will supplement RAMP training once the national command authority disseminates the actual ROE for a particular operation.

18-2. OBJECTIVES. XVIII Airborne Corps units must be prepared to quickly digest and implement complicated and mission-specific ROE. Force protection and mission accomplishment demand that soldiers understand the base line JCS Standing ROE and are capable of assimilating and implementing supplemental ROE. Soldiers must be proficient in analyzing and properly reacting to a variety of scenarios involving the ROE. Staffs must be proficient in processing, disseminating and training ROE in a fluid environment. Commanders and staffs will meet these goals through common task training and Situation Training Exercises (STX’s) which incorporate real world scenarios. Within XVIII Airborne Corps RAMP (the acronym is Return Fire; Anticipate Attack; Measure your force; Protect only lives with deadly force) will provide the framework for this base line training. The scenarios are trained at unit level with Tasks, Conditions, and Standards. Appendix F explains the RAMP Tasks, Conditions and Standards. Appendix G contains sample training scenarios.

18-3. RESPONSIBILITIES.

a. Division and Brigade/Group/Regimental Commanders will:

(1) Ensure units integrate ROE training into appropriate training events already on the training calendar.

(2) Ensure all assigned and attached personnel receive initial certification in RAMP/ROE training (Levels I and II only) and continue to receive qualification training (Levels III-V).
(3) Ensure that the Division Field Standard Operating Procedures (FSOP) and Brigade Tactical Standard Operating Procedures (TACSOP) include an annex which explain RAMP and the ROE Conditions (ROECON’s). A sample format is attached at Appendix H. The ROECON annex must be tailored to reflect the division METL, armament, and tactics. ROE annexes to operational orders and plans must incorporate the ROECON system. A sample ROE Annex that incorporates ROECONs is attached at Appendix I.

(4) Ensure that all staff training emphasizes ROECON identification and manipulation.

(5) Ensure that a system is in place to accomplish quick dissemination of supplemental or mission-specific ROE down to the company level so that commanders can immediately supplement their ROE training in preparation for specific missions. Execute a training plan, within the time available, for mission-specific STX’s and other supplemental ROE training prior to deployment and during the deployment cycle.

(6) Maintain command emphasis at all levels on individual and collective/unit proficiency in RAMP/ROE skills, tasks, and ROECON’s.

b. Battalion level commanders, in coordination with their assigned trial counsel, will determine unit ROE proficiency during external and internal evaluations.

c. Company level commanders, with the assistance of trial counsel, will conduct RAMP/ROE certification and qualification (Levels II-V) annually.

d. Noncommissioned officers will monitor individual soldier ROE training status in leader books.

e. RAMP/ROE training is a commander, not lawyer, responsibility.

18-4. TRAINING PROGRAMS.

a. Concept. All effective training is based on the principle that it must replicate real world conditions. A successful training program integrates realistic ROE situations into all levels of unit training. A properly
trained unit will use ROE to protect itself and accomplish the mission. All training within XVIII Airborne Corps must be carefully planned and consistent. From privates to noncommissioned officers to officers, all must learn the same materials in the same fashion. All training assessments must be tough and honest.

b. Programs. Training must be designed to ensure that individuals, leaders, and units achieve and maintain proficiency in recognizing and responding to a wide variety of threats in an appropriate manner under a variety of ROE. Once proficiency is attained, leaders must sustain training. In accordance with FM 25-101, Training the Force, it is the overlapping responsibility of commanders, officers and noncommissioned officers to conduct collective, leader and individual training. In addition to the XVIII Airborne Corps' 8 Step Training Model [1) plan the training; 2) train and validate leaders; 3) validate the training site; 4) issue the plan; 5) rehearse; 6) execute; 7) conduct AAR; 8) retrain.], the Corps standard for ROE training includes five levels:

(1) Level I. Train the leaders and soldiers in a classroom setting (See Appendix J for suggested training slides. Contact Chief, Operational Law, XVIII Airborne Corps (DSN 236-7268/5306) and he/she will email the PowerPoint slides with notes).

(2) Level II. Individual, common task training using RAMP principles.

(3) Level III. Collective lane training by section, squad or platoon using RAMP principles (See Appendix K for sample training worksheets).

(4) Level IV. Collective lane training by section, squad or platoon using RAMP principles supplemented by real world mission-specific ROE to ensure that soldiers are not mistaking RAMP baseline principles for actual ROE.

(5) Level V. Leader training using RAMP principles supplemented by real world mission-specific ROE and battalion battle command of ROECON’s and OPORD/OPLAN ROE annexes to ensure command and staff familiarization
with various ROE conditions and the process for supplementing or modifying RAMP baseline principles.

Field training exercises (FTX’s), command post exercises (CPX’s), situational training exercises (STX’s), and deployments to the Combat Training Centers (CTC’s) will include training on the individual and collective tasks pertaining to RAMP principles and to ROECON identification.

c. Supplementation. The XVIII Airborne Corps ROE training materials must not be supplemented or modified by Corps units without prior approval of the Corps G-3 and SJA. All proposed supplements or modifications will be submitted to the Corps SJA for review. Subordinate units are encouraged to develop training scenarios based on their mission essential task list tasks, e.g., mechanized, air assault, light infantry, attack helicopter. The proposed scenarios must follow the Corps format and must be submitted to the Corps SJA for approval. This approval process permits dissemination of appropriate scenarios throughout the Corps and ensures the scenario solutions are consistent throughout the Corps.

d. After Action Reviews. Because force-on-force training does not permit an immediate halt in the action to evaluate a soldier’s thought process, after-action reviews (AAR’s) are crucial for determining if soldiers are assimilating the RAMP principles. AAR’s on RAMP/ROECON training will be conducted in accordance with TC 25-20, A Leader’s Guide to After-Action Reviews. Office of the Staff Judge Advocate (OSJA), XVIII Airborne Corps, will be the clearinghouse for all written AARs and lessons learned by the divisions. Every brigade that has trained with RAMP through an entire training cycle, will submit a written AAR on the results of ROE training during a graded field training exercise at the end of the cycle to the division Staff Judge Advocate for forwarding to the XVIII Airborne Corps G-3. The Brigade S-3 should prepare the AAR in close coordination with the Brigade Judge Advocate.
APPENDIX P

TASKS, CONDITIONS AND STANDARDS

TASK

USE FORCE APPROPRIATELY

CONDITIONS

Given a noncombat but potentially hostile situation in which your unit is deployed to promote stability, provide humane assistance, or protect United States interests.

STANDARDS

1. Defend yourself and members of your unit with initiative.
2. Apply all levels of force only when necessary.
3. Apply an amount of force proportionate to each threat encountered.
4. Transition appropriately to a combat situation when ordered to do so by your chain of command.

TRAINING AND EVALUATION

Training Information Outline

1. Follow all lawful orders of your chain of command regarding use of force. Follow the four standing principles stated in the next paragraph in the absence of more specific guidance. The four principles interlock; do not apply one rule to the exclusion of the others. Your chain of command may supplement one or more of these principles to permit accomplishment of a mission. In such a case, these principles should guide your judgment only to the extent that they do not conflict with the instructions of your chain of command.

2. When facing a potential threat, exercise initiative as well as restraint. Any weapons fire must be disciplined and aimed, while also effective in achieving self-defense. When encountering a potential threat, remember RAMP. That key word will help you respond in a way that protects lives, supports the mission, and complies with the law.

   Return fire with aimed fire. Return force with force.
   You always have the right to repel hostile acts with necessary force.
Anticipate attack. Use force first if, but only if, you see clear indicators of hostile intent.

Measure the amount of force that you use, if time and circumstances permit. Use only the amount of force necessary to protect lives and accomplish the mission.

Protect with deadly force only human life, and property designated by your commander. Stop short of deadly force when protecting other property.

3. "R-Return Fire" means that if you have been fired on or otherwise attacked, you may do what you must to protect yourself. This is the core of the right to self-defense, which is never denied.

4. "A-Anticipate Attack" means that self-defense is not limited to returning fire. Soldiers do not have to receive the first shot before using force to protect themselves and other lives.

   a. When soldiers initiate the use of force to defend themselves they use what is known as "anticipatory" or "preemptive" force. During noncombat operations, unless ordered otherwise, you may use anticipatory or preemptive force only when you face an imminent threat of attack and can identify or describe to yourself certain clear indicators of hostile intent.

   b. Determine whether someone's intentions are hostile by considering the same factors you use when reporting enemy information to your leader under the SALUTE format (CT 071-331-0803).

   Size. How many individuals are you facing?
   Activity. What is he doing? Pointing a weapon?
   Location. Is he within small arms range? In a prepared firing position? Has he entered a restricted area?
   Unit. Is he wearing a uniform? Part of an organized armed force?
   Time. How soon before he is upon you?
   Equipment. Is he armed? With what? What is the range and lethality of his weapon?

   c. Do not base anticipatory force on a mere hunch that the person is hostile. On the other hand, if your commander informs you that a particular fighting force has been designated by higher headquarters as "hostile," or as
"the enemy," you may shoot that force or its equipment on
sight without identifying indicators of hostile intent.
5. "M-Measure Your Force" means that if you have a moment
to choose your method, you must do so.

   a. As a soldier—a professional in the use of force—you
are expected to adjust the intensity, magnitude, and
duration of your force to fit the scale of threat that you
face. Excessive force endangers innocent lives and hinders
mission accomplishment.

   b. If possible, apply a graduated escalation of force,
particularly when facing civilian crowds that appear to be
unarmed, but also unfriendly. In handling potentially
hostile situations, use one or more of the actions in V-E-
W-P-R-I-K:

   V erbal warning. Tell person(s), in their language, to
disperse, stay away, or halt.
   E xhibit weapon. Show your weapon or use some other
display that you have superior force at your disposal.
   W arning shot. Shoot a warning shot, if authorized.
   P epper spray. Spray cayenne pepper spray, if
authorized and available and the individual is close
enough.
   R iot stick. Strike with riot stick, if authorized and
available and if the individual is close enough. Poke
fleshy parts of the body first, arms and legs next,
and, if necessary, escalate to striking the head.
   I njure with fire. Shoot to wound.
   K ill with fire. Shoot to kill.

6. "P-Protect With Deadly Force" means that you must
defend more than your own personal safety, but it also
means you may use deadly force only in limited
circumstances. Your commander may designate that certain
sensitive or mission-essential facilities be protected with
deadly force. On other occasions, your commander may
designate that no property receive this maximum level of
protection. This might be the case when your unit is
operating in a host nation the laws of which permit the use
of deadly force only to protect life.

7. These four principles operate as an up-ramp when
conditions grow more hostile and the situation develops
into combat.
APPENDIX D: SAMPLE ROE TNG PROGRAM & BRIEFS
XVIII ABN CORPS & FT BRAGG REG. 350-41

a. RAMP provides a mechanism by which a soldier may increase the level of force to meet the threat.

b. RAMP also guides your use of force in many situations during war. During war, you attack combat targets according to the Law of War (CT 181-906-1505) whether or not you are in imminent danger from the enemy; however, RAMP remains your guide on the use of force when dealing with civilians and prisoners.

8. These principles operate as a down-ramp when combat conditions cool down into an operation other than war and use of force must become more restrained.

9. Your commander will be complying with rules of engagement from higher headquarters. These rules of engagement will be in the form of ROE Conditions (ROECONs) and ROE Annexes to operations orders. These rules of engagement may impact on the way individual soldiers use force. If so, your commander will translate guidance to you in terms of "RAMP," and will "walk you up" each of the RAMP principles to clarify how to use force appropriately in the situations you will face.

Evaluation Preparation

Setup: Soldiers should be individually tested for this task. The evaluator briefs the soldier on the simulated noncombat situation, providing information on the mission, the potential threat, the soldier's location in relation to other troops in the unit, and the terrain. The soldier is then questioned as to his recognition and actions on the performance measures. The most realistic method of training this task is to include rules of engagement and use of force problems in Army Training and Evaluation Programs (ARTEP) and field training exercises (FTX). The problems should require skill level 1 soldier recognition and action.

Brief Soldier: Tell the soldier that he is deployed in a simulated noncombat but potentially hostile environment. The soldier may be on guard duty, riding in a convoy, or walking to his cot from the mess tent. The soldier may be confronted with a variety of threats from armed and unarmed individuals and vehicles. The soldier will be asked to describe what actions he should take. If it has become available (not yet available as of this printing of XVIII
Abn Corps Reg. 350-41), use TC 27-10-4, Selected Problems in Rules of Engagement, to create scenarios for the soldier. At some point, modify the soldier's RAMP such that an identified enemy force has been designated a "hostile force" by higher headquarters. Enemy soldiers may appear on the battlefield, surrender, or be sick or wounded. Use TC 27-10-1, Selected Problems in the Law of War, to create wartime scenarios for the soldier. The soldier will be asked to describe what actions he should take.

**USE FORCE APPROPRIATELY**

**Performance Measures**

1. Returns fire from a hostile force with aimed fire. **Results**  
   - GO  
   - NO GO

2. Identifies clear demonstrations of hostile intent using the SALUTE factors. Anticipates attack by firing first. **Results**  
   - GO  
   - NO GO

3. Identifies situation where hostile intent is unclear using the SALUTE factors. Holds fire while maintaining or seeking a secure position. **Results**  
   - GO  
   - NO GO

4. Responds with measured force when confronted with a potentially hostile force. Uses the scale of V-E-W-P-R-I-K measures. **Results**  
   - GO  
   - NO GO

5. Omits lower level V-E-W-P-R-I-K measures if the threat quickly grows deadly (i.e., civilian pulls grenade out from underneath clothing and prepares to throw). **Results**  
   - GO  
   - NO GO

6. Declines to use deadly force. **Results**  
   - GO  
   - NO GO

D-14
force when piece of property is snatched (i.e., sunglasses).

7. Uses deadly force, if indicated, to protect comrades and persons under United States control.

GO  NO GO

8. Uses deadly force, if indicated, to protect key property designated by commander (i.e., United States aircraft).

GO  NO GO

9. When told that a force has been designated a 'hostile force,' fires aimed shots at members of hostile force whether or not they show hostile intent.

GO  NO GO

10. When told that a force has been designated a 'hostile force,' continues to use 'RAMP' when encountering civilians, prisoners, and casualties.

GO  NO GO

11. When told that attacks of a particular kind have been reported against United States or coalition forces in the area (e.g., hand grenades delivered by civilians, car bomb attacks, Molotov cocktails), considers these potential threats when looking for indicators of hostile intent.

GO  NO GO

12. Seeks clarification in terms of RAMP when given instructions on use of force that do not fit the RAMP format.

GO  NO GO
Feedback: Score the soldier GO if he passes all steps. Score the soldier NO-GO if he fails any steps. If the soldier scores NO-GO, show what was done wrong and how to do it correctly.
APPENDIX Q

RAMP TRAINING SCENARIOS

These scenarios are based on actual incidents. They are not meant to be the only scenarios used by units to train RAMP. The list should be supplemented with additional scenarios based on actual incidents from the training units’ own experiences. All new training scenarios, however, must follow this same format and be approved by XVIII Airborne Corps G-3 and SJA.

CASE STUDY 1
RETURNING FIRE
DEFENDING AGAINST HOSTILE ACTS

SITUATION: A soldier is walking from the mess facility to his sleeping tent after the dinner meal. His route takes him near the perimeter of his Brigade Support Area, which is marked by single-strand concertina wire and a protective berm of earth.

The soldier's unit is deployed on the outskirts of the capital city in a small island country. Two days ago the United States Ambassador determined that American citizens present in the country were in danger due to political instability. At the request of the Ambassador and the invitation of the prime minister of the country, the President ordered military forces to conduct a noncombatant evacuation operation. In twelve hours, the soldier's company will deploy by helicopter to a marshaling area in the interior of the country to collect Americans residing there.

His immediate mission is to rest up for the hard work ahead. He is armed with an M-16A2 rifle. In accordance with his commander's orders, the rifle is not loaded, but the soldier's ammunition pouches contain four magazines full of ammunition. Based on intelligence reports, the commander directed that the standing RAMP principles of force are in effect and placed the unit in a ROECON AMBER posture.

Thus far the presence of American military forces in the country has resulted in no hostile response by any of the police forces supporting an anti-American political faction.
Although the soldier is walking alone, several fellow soldiers are within fifty meters of him. Because the engineer platoon has not yet completed building the protective berm, there are numerous areas along the perimeter that provide no cover from potential small arms fire.

**EVENT:** As the soldier passes near the perimeter, he looks to the left and sees a sniper about 150 meters away aiming a weapon toward him. The sniper fires, and a round hits the earth a few feet away. The sniper is visible, only partially obscured by vegetation, and is about 100 meters from three civilian women who were talking to each other when the first shot came. The sniper is taking aim again at the soldier or at one of the other Americans in the area.

**CONSIDERATIONS:** The key RAMP principle here is to RETURN FIRE with aimed fire.

The standing RAMP principles allow soldiers to defend themselves against attacks. Here, the sniper clearly attacked the soldier and United States forces by firing a deadly weapon. The soldier can return fire with aimed shots to defend himself and his unit, while reporting the incident to his chain of command so that other measures can be taken to eliminate the threat. Each of the other RAMP principles would support a decision by the soldier to return fire.

If soldiers see clear indicators of hostile intent, they may ANTICIPATE ATTACK and use force first; this principle was immediately satisfied when the sniper committed a hostile act (and thus showed hostile intent) by attacking the security guards with aimed fire.

No analysis of the S-A-L-U-T-E factors is necessary to determine hostile intent. Soldiers must MEASURE THE AMOUNT OF FORCE to fit the level of the threat, if time and circumstances permit.

Under these circumstances, aimed shots fired back at a sniper constitute force that is properly adjusted in magnitude, intensity, and duration to the threat. Given the closeness of innocent civilians, the soldier's
commander would violate this rule if, for instance, he requested indirect mortar fire in the vicinity of the sniper.

Again, because the soldier already has used deadly force, no progression through a scale of force—that is, verbal warning or a warning shot is necessary. The RAMP principle permitting soldiers to PROTECT LIFE WITH DEADLY FORCE supports a decision to fire because the lives of United States soldiers are in the direct line of the sniper's fire.

**SUGGESTED RESPONSE:** To find cover and concealment, place a magazine into the rifle, chamber a round, and fire aimed shots at the sniper.

**REFERENCES:** Yoram Dinstein, War, Aggression and Self-Defense 200-02 (1988).

**CASE STUDY 2**
**ANTICIPATING ATTACK**
**RESPONDING WITH FORCE TO A CLEAR DEMONSTRATION OF HOSTILE INTENT**

**SITUATION:** A soldier stands guard in the early morning at a post outside his battalion compound. The compound is set in a series of buildings near a large airport. His unit's mission is to maintain peace in the capital city of a country where instability and civil war threaten United States interests. The soldier's mission is to safeguard the perimeter of the compound, where nearly 300 soldiers are now sleeping.

The soldier is armed with his M-16A2 rifle. In accordance with his guard instructions, the rifle is not loaded, but one of the soldier's ammunition pouches contains a magazine with ten rounds of ammunition.

After considering the following intelligence reports, the commander directed that the standing RAMP principles of force are in effect and ROECON AMBER measures apply. Six months ago, a terrorist killed seventeen United States citizens and destroyed the United States embassy in the city by driving a truck loaded with explosives into the building. The area surrounding the compound contains individuals bearing small arms as well as rival factions armed with mortars and machine guns.
In recent days, United States soldiers have been occasional targets of these weapons, though higher headquarters has not officially designated any forces as hostile. A parking lot outside the concertina wire marks the perimeter of the compound. This lot is in the soldier's sector of responsibility. Another soldier mans a post along the same portion of the perimeter 150 meters from the first soldier.

**EVENT:** Suddenly, a yellow truck that has circled the empty lot twice gathers speed, crashes through the concertina wire barrier, and barrels toward the main building of the compound. Within seconds it will be at the main building.

**CONSIDERATIONS:** The key RAMP principle here is to **ANTICIPATE ATTACK** on the main building.

Even when only the standing RAMP principles are in effect, soldiers can fire their weapons before receiving fire, if they see clear indicators of hostile intent. Here the soldier can conclude that the truck driver's intentions are hostile because the S-A-L-U-T-E factors support that conclusion.

Note the driver's activity (he has crashed a concertina barrier after circling the lot and gathering speed), the location (within a restricted compound), the time factor (only seconds before the truck reaches hundreds of United States soldiers), and equipment (a truck bombing recently occurred nearby).

Each of the other RAMP principles supports a decision to fire at the truck driver. Soldiers can **RETURN FIRE** with fire, and respond to hostile acts with necessary force. They must **MEASURE THE AMOUNT OF FORCE** to fit the level of the threat, if time and circumstances permit.

Under these circumstances, aimed shots at the truck driver are the correct measure of force to protect lives and accomplish the mission. Given the lack of time available, the soldier should not attempt lesser measures along the graduated scale of force--verbal warning, warning shot, etc.).

Finally, the soldier can fire his rifle, the only lethal weapon available, because soldiers can **PROTECT LIFE WITH DEADLY FORCE.**
SUGGESTED RESPONSE: To place the magazine into the weapon, chamber a round, and fire at the driver of the truck.

HISTORICAL NOTE: This problem is patterned after a terrorist attack that claimed the lives of 241 marines and sailors in Beirut, Lebanon on October 23, 1983. The Department of Defense Commission that investigated the incident concluded that several factors detracted from the security posture of United States forces on that date. One factor was a "mind-set" encouraged by the rules of engagement. The rules, as disseminated by the chain of command, left marines with doubts about whether they could initiate fire under extremely threatening circumstances, such as those described above.


CASE STUDY 3
MEASURING FORCE
USING FORCE NECESSARY TO ACCOMPLISH THE MISSION

SITUATION: A platoon has formed a hasty perimeter in a small village. The platoon leader is talking with one of the villagers through an interpreter.

United States forces are deployed in a flat, hot, dry, famine-stricken country as part of a multinational coalition force. The mission of the coalition is to provide a secure environment for the distribution of humanitarian relief supplies. Armed bands have been frustrating these efforts for months and have even fired upon United States soldiers several times over the past few days.

The mission of the platoon is to search the village and seize weapons and munitions that were sighted there the night before, when a firefight among rival bands had taken place. If necessary, the platoon also has the mission of disarming members of any of the bands found in the village. The platoon has completed a sweep of the village and has found a few small arms and live mortar rounds, but no armed individuals or bands. The soldiers of the platoon bear M-16A2 rifles, which are locked and loaded. Because of the
mission, the commander placed the unit in a ROECON RED posture and directed his soldiers to employ RAMP principles on the use of force.

EVENT: Two unarmed men in white shirts suddenly dash through an alley in the village. The platoon leader orders several soldiers to chase after the men to determine whether they know anything about the firefight the night before. One soldier chases one of the men into an area outside the village. The soldier notices movement in a bush about twenty-five meters away and then sees the white shirt of a man running away from him and from the remainder of the American platoon.

CONSIDERATIONS: The key RAMP principle here is to MEASURE THE AMOUNT OF FORCE to fit the level of the threat. Under the standing RAMP principles, a soldier must use only the amount of force necessary to protect lives and accomplish the mission. The force used must fit the scale of the threat in magnitude, intensity, and duration. If possible, soldiers apply a graduated escalation of force when facing civilians who are unarmed, but also confrontational and unfriendly.

Here, the civilian man is unarmed and running away. The man poses no immediate threat to the safety of the soldier or his American comrades. No use of force is appropriate. Nor do the other RAMP principles support the use of force. Soldiers may RETURN FIRE with fire, but the man has fired no shots.

Soldiers may ANTICIPATE ATTACK and fire first if they see clear indicators of hostile intent, but here, none of the S-A-L-U-T-E factors indicate hostile intent. Soldiers must PROTECT LIFE WITH DEADLY FORCE, but no lives are endangered by this fleeing unarmed man.

SUGGESTED RESPONSE: To continue chasing the man but to refrain from firing the rifle.

HISTORICAL NOTE: This problem is roughly patterned after an incident that occurred in Somalia in February 1993. In circumstances similar to these, an American soldier shot and killed an unarmed Somali man. A panel of officers and enlisted men, after hearing numerous witnesses and examining ballistic and medical evidence, determined that
the soldier had used excessive force, despite the soldier's claim that he had fired a "warning shot in the dirt" to the left of the fleeing man.

The panel also found fault with the chain of command for not ensuring that the soldiers understood the rules of engagement. The rules of engagement were similar to RAMP in that they allowed for warning shots, but only if appropriate as part of a graduated show of force against a threatening element. The soldier's Division Commander set aside his conviction for negligent homicide.


CASE STUDY 4
PROTECTING PROPERTY
APPROPRIATE USE OF DEADLY FORCE

SITUATION: A soldier sits on the passenger side in the front of a High Mobility Multipurpose Wheeled Vehicle (HMMWV). He and the driver are in the first vehicle of a two-vehicle convoy in the center of a city. As the vehicles move through the city, they pass many civilian men, women, and children.

United States forces are deployed in a flat, hot, dry, famine-stricken country as part of a multinational coalition force.

The mission of the coalition is to provide a secure environment for the distribution of humanitarian relief supplies. Armed bands have been frustrating these efforts for months and have even fired upon United States soldiers several times over the past few days. Civilians frequently taunt coalition soldiers and attempt to steal items from passing vehicles.

The immediate mission of the convoy is to link up with the remainder of the soldier's company. The soldier is armed with an M-79 grenade launcher that is loaded with a canister. The standing RAMP principles of force are in effect and the commander placed the unit in ROECON AMBER.

EVENT: As the vehicle rounds a bend, an unarmed boy puts his hand through the window, pushes back the soldier's head, and removes an expensive pair of prescription
sunglasses. The vehicle moves forward, and the youth slips back into a crowd.

CONSIDERATIONS: The key RAMP principle here is to PROTECT WITH DEADLY FORCE ONLY HUMAN LIFE AND PROPERTY DESIGNATED BY YOUR COMMANDER.

Under the standing RAMP principles, a soldier must stop short of deadly force when protecting other property. Here, the property stolen by the youth is not the sort of sensitive or mission-essential equipment that commanders must sometimes protect with deadly force. None of the other RAMP principles supports the use of deadly force in this situation.

Soldiers may RETURN FIRE with fire, but the youth has fired no shots. Soldiers may ANTICIPATE ATTACK and fire first if they see clear indicators of hostile intent, but here, none of the S-A-L-U-T-E factors indicate hostile intent. Soldiers must MEASURE THE AMOUNT OF FORCE to fit the level of the threat, if time and circumstances permit. The force used must fit the scale of the threat in magnitude, intensity, and duration. If possible, soldiers apply a graduated escalation of force when facing civilians who are unarmed, but also confrontational and unfriendly.

Here, the youth has used some force and has committed an aggressive act; however, the youth also is unarmed and has moved away from the departing vehicle. The youth poses no immediate threat to the safety of the soldier or his comrades.

The soldier may shout verbal warnings in the native tongue to bystanders to disperse, stay away, or halt. He may visibly display his weapon to indicate available force. He may use pepper spray or some other irritant, if available, to ward off those who may reach toward a vehicle. He may use a riot stick or some other implement to ward off or even strike persistent individuals in nonvital regions. But he may not use deadly force under these circumstances when the standing RAMP principles are in effect.

SUGGESTED RESPONSE: To refrain from firing the M-79, while maintaining alertness for others who attempt to steal from the vehicle. Upon returning to the base camp the soldier
should ask the chain of command how to file a claim for the lost glasses.

HISTORICAL NOTE: This problem is roughly patterned after an incident that occurred in Somalia in February 1993. In circumstances similar to these, an American marine leaned out the window of the vehicle and discharged his M-79 over and behind his right shoulder. Fragments from the canister wounded two Somali boys. One of the boys had been standing nearby sipping grapefruit juice. A panel of officers and enlisted men, after hearing numerous witnesses and examining all available evidence, determined that the marine had used excessive force.


CASE STUDY 5
ANTICIPATING ATTACK
RESPONDING TO UNCLEAR INDICATORS OF HOSTILE INTENT

SITUATION: A soldier quickly exits a UH-60 Blackhawk aircraft as soon as it touches down. The helicopter landing zone is on a military installation in a country that has long been allied with the United States. Recently, however, that country has been ruled by a military dictator whose methods have grown increasingly corrupt and repressive.

The military installation houses American military families—routinely stationed in the country as part of an ongoing training and regional security mission—as well as soldiers of the allied nation.

The soldier's unit is deployed to the country with the mission of enforcing America's rights under a treaty that the military dictator has openly begun to repudiate.

On this evening, the soldier's battalion has the mission of conducting a show of force at the military installation to demonstrate American resolve to defend its interests under the treaty. The soldier and the remainder of his squad, all running from the helicopter toward a woodline with full combat equipment and wearing skin camouflage, have the mission to provide security around part of the helicopter landing zone.
The soldier carries an M203 grenade launcher, the rifle portion of which is locked and loaded with 5.56mm ammunition. The soldier has several grenade rounds in the outside pockets of his rucksack.

The terrain is mostly jungle, with occasional grassy clearings.

The buildings of the military installation's residential area are several hundred meters away.

An infantry company of the country's defense forces, still loyal to the dictator, occupy the military installation. The commander has ordered that the standing RAMP principles of force are in effect, but has emphasized that the host country's defense forces will feel threatened by the show of force and may reflexively aim weapons toward American soldiers. ROECON GREEN measures apply. During similar shows of force in recent days, defense forces in other parts of the country have held their fire after initially training their weapons on American forces. Also, intelligence reports maintain that the military dictator does not seek hostilities with American forces at this time.

Accordingly, the commander has supplemented the "A" of RAMP with the guidance that if a member of the defense forces aims a weapon at United States forces, then without more, that act is not to be interpreted as a clear indicator of hostile intent.

Higher headquarters has not officially designated as hostile any forces, to include the host country's defense forces.

**EVENT:** As the soldier rushes toward the woodline, he sees a member of the host country's defense force 50 meters away. The member of the defense force is peering at the soldier and his fellow American soldiers from behind a machine gun that is mounted on a tripod in a prepared position.

**CONSIDERATIONS:** The key RAMP principle here is ANTICIPATE ATTACK, which means that the soldier may use force first if, but only if, he sees clear indicators of hostile intent.
The RAMP principles, as supplemented by the commander, permit the soldier to fire his weapons before receiving fire, but only if he can identify clear, objective indicators of hostile intent.

Here the soldier cannot conclude that the machine gunner's intentions are hostile. The S-A-L-U-T-E factors do not provide a clear picture of the machine gunner's intentions: size (thus far only a single machine gunner is visible), activity (presently aiming a weapon but holding fire from a stationary position as American's conduct an air assault), location (within range of all weapons systems), time (capable of opening fire without delay, and of receiving prompt assistance from host country defense forces), and equipment (a machine gun in a prepared position with an unknown amount of ammunition).

Moreover, the commander has emphasized that the aiming of a weapon is not a clear indicator of hostile intent, under the circumstances.

Each of the other RAMP principles would support a decision to refrain from firing at or launching a grenade at the machine gunner.

Soldiers can RETURN FIRE with fire, and respond to hostile acts with necessary force. Certainly, if the machine gunner fires a single shot toward American forces, the soldier can return fire.

Soldiers must MEASURE THE AMOUNT OF FORCE to fit the level of the threat, if time and circumstances permit. Under these circumstances, some demonstration of available force may ultimately be necessary to persuade the machine gunner to stand down from his ready position, but for the moment, the soldier can perform the immediate task of reaching the woodline and taking up a position on his squad's perimeter without using any force against the machine gunner. His chain of command can then determine the appropriate measure of force to use.

If the situation develops to where the soldier must PROTECT LIFE WITH DEADLY FORCE, he may do so, but right now, only protective measures well short of deadly force are appropriate.
SUGGESTED RESPONSE: To dive onto the ground and use individual movement techniques (high crawl, low crawl, rush) to reach the woodline. The soldier should remain as covered and concealed from the machine gunner as possible, while reporting the location of the position to the chain of command.

HISTORICAL NOTE: This mission was part of a show of force that United States marines conducted during June, 1989 at Fort Amador, Panama. The operation was Nimrod Dancer. Rather than an air assault, the marines conducted an amphibious landing at the installation. The natural response of the Panamanian Defense Forces to the landing was to turn their weapons in the direction of the landing marines.

Because the marines did not open fire, the show of force occurred without incident or casualties, and the United States retained the moral high ground in the tense confrontation with Manuel Noriega. The confrontation became an armed conflict six months later, on terms favorable to the United States, in Operation Just Cause.

REFERENCES: Interview with Lawrence A. Yates, Historian, Combat Studies Institute, United States Army Command & General Staff College (Mar. 22, 1994) (discussing interviews with JTF-Panama commander and staff, with the Marine Force commander under JTF-Panama, and with a Marine staff officer at U. S. SOUTHCOM, June 1989, December 1989).

CASE STUDY 6
MEASURING FORCE
USING FORCE NECESSARY TO ACCOMPLISH THE MISSION

SITUATION: A soldier is in a convoy of five Army vehicles as it winds its way down a narrow road through a thick jungle. The road is in a country that has long been allied with the United States.

Recently, however, a military dictator whose methods have grown increasingly corrupt and repressive has ruled that country. American units are routinely stationed in the country as part of an ongoing training and regional security mission, but the Army unit manning the convoy is currently deployed to the country with the mission of enforcing America’s rights under a treaty that the military
dictator has openly begun to repudiate. Specifically, the defense forces of the country—still loyal to the military dictator—have been denying freedom of movement along the road to convoys of United States vehicles.

On this afternoon, the convoy has the mission of traveling the length of the road without being escorted by the host nation's defense forces. The Army captain and the thirty soldiers under his command in the vehicles are carrying full combat equipment and wearing skin camouflage.

The battalion commander has ordered that the standing RAMP principles of force are in effect, but has provided the following two pieces of supplemental guidance. First, the host country's defense forces will feel threatened by the armed convoy and may reflexively aim weapons toward American soldiers. During similar shows of force in recent days, defense forces in other parts of the country have held their fire after initially training their weapons on American forces. Also, intelligence reports maintain that the military dictator does not seek hostilities with American forces at this time, and higher headquarters has not officially designated as hostile any forces, to include the host country's defense forces. Based on these reports, the commander placed the unit in a ROECON AMBER posture. Accordingly, the battalion commander has supplemented the "A" of RAMP with the guidance that if a member of the defense forces aims a weapon at United States forces, then without more, that act is not to be interpreted as a clear indicator of hostile intent.

Second, the battalion commander has supplemented the "M" of RAMP with the guidance that the convoy commander will take a specific series of escalating measures and give specific orders to soldiers if the host nation defense forces block the convoy's movement.

**EVENT:** As the convoy rounds a bend, it encounters a roadblock. Five armed members of the host country's defense forces man the roadblock and motion the convoy to halt. As the vehicles stop, the soldier notices several other members of the defense forces in prone positions, aiming weapons at the convoy.

**CONSIDERATIONS:** One key RAMP principle here is ANTICIPATE ATTACK, which means that the soldier may use force first...
if, but only if, he sees clear indicators of hostile intent.

The RAMP principles, as supplemented by the commander, permit the soldier to fire his weapons before receiving fire, but only if he can identify clear, objective indicators of hostile intent.

Here the soldier cannot conclude that the defense force intentions are hostile. The S-A-L-U-T-E factors do not provide a clear picture of their intentions: size (squad-size element is typical for manning a roadblock), activity (presently aiming weapons but holding fire from stationary positions as Americans approach in a convoy), location (within range of all weapons systems), time (capable of opening fire without delay), and equipment (small arms, with an unknown amount of ammunition).

Moreover, the commander has emphasized that the aiming of a weapon is not a clear indicator of hostile intent, under the circumstances.

The other key RAMP principle here is to MEASURE THE AMOUNT OF FORCE to fit the level of the threat. Under the standing RAMP principles, a soldier must use only the amount of force necessary to protect lives and accomplish the mission. The force used must fit the scale of the threat in magnitude, intensity, and duration. If possible, soldiers apply a graduated escalation of force when facing potentially hostile elements.

Here, the captain commanding the American convoy has specific orders on what measures will be used in the escalation of force. For instance, he might read aloud to the host nation defense forces from an index card containing the article of the treaty authorizing freedom of movement for United States forces. If the forces do not let the convoy pass, he may give sequential orders for troops to dismount the vehicles, lock and load weapons, and fix bayonets.

No independent use of force by the soldier is appropriate.

Nor do the other two RAMP principles support the use of force. Soldiers may RETURN FIRE with fire, but the forces have fired no shots. If the situation develops to where
the soldier must PROTECT LIFE WITH DEADLY FORCE, he may do so, but right now, only protective measures in accordance with the convoy commander's orders are appropriate.

**SUGGESTED RESPONSE:** To refrain from firing and to follow the orders of the convoy commander.

**HISTORICAL NOTE:** This problem is adapted from armed convoy missions conducted by elements of the United States Army 7th Infantry Division (Light) during May, 1989 in Panama. The missions were part of Operation Nimrod Dancer. The natural response of Panamanian Defense Forces to the armed convoys was to turn their weapons in the direction of American soldiers. Because Americans did not open fire, the convoys reached their destinations without incident or casualties, and the United States retained the moral high ground in the tense confrontation with Manuel Noriega. The confrontation became an armed conflict seven months later, on terms favorable to the United States, in Operation Just Cause.

**REFERENCES:** Interview with Lawrence A. Yates, Historian, Combat Studies Institute, United States Army Command & General Staff College (Mar. 22, 1994) (discussing interviews with a 7th Infantry Division (Light) brigade commander, June, September 1989, an unclassified briefing at Fort Leavenworth, Kansas, September 28, 1989, interviews with JTF-Panama commander and staff, May-June 1989, and declassified operations order for first convoy, May 21, 1989).

**CASE STUDY 7**  
**PROTECTING SELF AND FELLOW SOLDIERS**  
**APPROPRIATE USE OF DEADLY FORCE**

**ITUATION:** A soldier sits on the passenger side in the rear of a High Mobility Multipurpose Wheeled Vehicle (HMMWV). He and the driver are in the second vehicle of a two-vehicle convoy in the center of a city. As the vehicles move through the city, they pass many civilian men, women, and children.

United States forces are deployed in a flat, hot, dry, famine-stricken country as part of a multinational coalition force.
The mission of the coalition is to provide a secure environment for the distribution of humanitarian relief supplies. Armed bands have been frustrating these efforts for months and have even fired upon United States soldiers several times over the past few days. Civilians frequently taunt coalition soldiers and attempt to steal items from passing vehicles.

The immediate mission of the convoy is to shuttle a military staff officer to a point outside the city. The soldier is armed with an M-16A2 rifle with a magazine in the well, a round chambered, and selector switch on safe.

The commander has ordered that the standing RAMP principles of force are in effect, but has provided one piece of supplemental guidance.

Recent situation reports state that a coalition patrol was the target of a grenade thrown by someone dressed in local garb. Also, adults have been seen handing grenades to children and persuading them to use them against coalition forces.

Accordingly, the commander has supplemented the "A" of RAMP with the guidance that Somalis bearing grenade-sized items and ignoring warnings to stay away should be considered to have hostile intentions. ROECON RED measures apply.

**EVENT:** As the convoy makes its way through a market street, a crowd of townspeople surrounds the two vehicles. Nevertheless, all of the townspeople are staying several feet away from the vehicle because of the stern looks, verbal warnings, and vigilance of the soldier and his well-armed comrades. Then the convoy stops because a large cargo truck up ahead has stopped in the road. Suddenly, a boy, carrying what appears to be a small box in one hand, ignores the warnings, and runs up behind the vehicle. He places his hand inside the rear cargo area of the HMMWV as the soldier continues to warn him to stay away.

**CONSIDERATIONS:** The key principles here are to ANTICIPATE ATTACK and to PROTECT HUMAN LIFE WITH DEADLY FORCE. The RAMP principles, as supplemented by the commander, permit the soldier to fire his weapon before receiving fire if he can identify clear indicators of hostile intent.
Here, the soldier can conclude that the boy's intentions are hostile and can ANTICIPATE ATTACK. The S-A-L-U-T-E factors support this conclusion. Note the boy's activity (he has ignored verbal warnings, has run up to the vehicle, and placed his arm in the rear of the vehicle), the location (the boy is within the kill radius of a grenade from the soldier and his comrades, but out of arm's reach), the time factor (only split seconds before the boy could pull the pin of a grenade and drop it), and equipment (a box of hand grenade size).

A finding of hostile intent is further supported by the recent situation reports concerning hand grenades and the commander's RAMP supplement. Because the lives of everyone on the vehicle are in danger, the soldier can PROTECT HUMAN LIFE WITH DEADLY FORCE.

Each of the other two RAMP principles supports a decision to fire the rifle. Soldiers can RETURN FIRE with aimed fire, and respond to hostile acts with necessary force. They must MEASURE THE AMOUNT OF FORCE to fit the level of the threat, if time and circumstances permit. Under these circumstances, an aimed shot at the boy is the correct measure of force, given that lesser V-E-W-P-R-I-K measures have not turned the boy back or are impracticable.

SUGGESTED RESPONSE: To fire an aimed shot at the boy.

HISTORICAL NOTE: This problem is patterned after an incident in Somalia on February 4, 1993. The Marine Corps sergeant who shot and killed a Somali boy carrying a box did so only after the boy had ignored warnings and had placed his hand inside the stopped HMMWV. Despite the sergeant's courageous actions in collecting the fallen boy from the hostile crowd and the marines' swiftness in getting to the nearest hospital, the boy died. All of the witnesses supported the sergeant's account of the incident, though the small box was not recovered. The incident was tragic, but after an investigation, the sergeant was deemed to have acted appropriately in firing on the boy.

CASE STUDY 8
MEASURING FORCE AND PROTECTING PROPERTY
USING FORCE NECESSARY TO ACCOMPLISH THE MISSION

SITUATION: It is nighttime, and a soldier guards a portion of the perimeter of a company-sized base camp. Behind him, about 50 soldiers are sleeping and small amounts of fuel, supplies, weapons, and equipment are stored, and several vehicles are parked.

United States forces are deployed in a flat, hot, dry, famine-stricken country as part of a multinational coalition force.

The mission of the coalition is to provide a secure environment for the distribution of humanitarian relief supplies. Armed bands have been frustrating these efforts for months and have even fired upon United States soldiers several times over the past few days. Local townspeople test the perimeter nightly in attempts to steal food or equipment.

The soldier's mission is to prevent intrusions into the basecamp and safeguard his fellow soldiers and unit property. The soldier is armed with an M-16A2 rifle. He has a magazine of ammunition in the well, but no round is chambered, and the selector switch is on safe.

The commander has ordered that the standing RAMP principles of force are in effect with one piece of supplemental guidance. He has supplemented the "P-PROTECT" principle with the guidance that soldiers may use the entire scale of force, including, if necessary, aimed shots to kill, to protect the following property: any CEOI's and Vinson security or keying hardware. ROECON AMBER measures apply.

EVENT: About thirty meters to the soldier's left an unarmed local boy scurries beneath the concertina wire into the cantonment area and runs to a parked vehicle. There he quickly grabs a magazine of M-16A2 ammunition left in a footwell by a negligent soldier and runs back to the wire.

CONSIDERATIONS: The key RAMP principle here is to MEASURE THE AMOUNT OF FORCE to fit the level of the threat.
Under the standing RAMP principles, a soldier must use only the amount of force necessary to protect lives and accomplish the mission. The force used must fit the scale of the threat in magnitude, intensity, and duration. If possible, soldiers apply a graduated escalation of force when facing civilians who are unarmed, but who also are confrontational and unfriendly.

Here, the boy is unarmed and is running away. He poses no immediate threat to the safety of the soldier or his American comrades, and although he is stealing United States property, it is not one of the types of property the commander has designated to be protected with deadly force. Unless the soldier can get close enough to the boy to stop him by grabbing him, use of force is not appropriate.

Nor do the other RAMP principles support the use of force. Soldiers may RETURN FIRE with fire, but the boy has fired no shots. Soldiers may ANTICIPATE ATTACK and fire first if they see clear indicators of hostile intent, but here, none of the S-A-L-U-T-E factors indicate hostile intent.

Soldiers must PROTECT LIFE WITH DEADLY FORCE, but no lives are endangered by this fleeing boy.

**SUGGESTED RESPONSE:** To chase the boy but to refrain from firing the rifle. Report the incident to the chain of command as soon as possible.

**HISTORICAL NOTE:** This problem is patterned after numerous incidents that occurred in Somalia in 1993, when local civilians entered United States base camps and stole various items. Although aggressive in safeguarding their supplies and equipment, soldiers time and again showed appropriate restraint in situations such as this one.

CASE STUDY 9
ANTICIPATING ATTACK
USING FORCE NECESSARY TO ACCOMPLISH THE MISSION

SITUATION: A company-sized convoy of light infantry, mounted on High Mobility Multipurpose Wheeled Vehicles (HMMWVs), moves along a city street.

United States forces are deployed in a flat, hot, dry, famine-stricken country as part of a multinational coalition force.

The mission of the coalition is to provide a secure environment for the distribution of humanitarian relief supplies. Armed bands have been frustrating these efforts for months, and about 1 hour ago, United States Special Operations forces conducted a raid to seize two lieutenants of the most powerful local bandit.

During the raid, two UH-60 helicopters were shot down by bandits armed with RPG-7 rocket propelled grenades. About 90 United States soldiers are pinned-down at the first crash site by hundreds of bandits armed with AK-47 assault rifles and RPG-7s. At least two Americans are dead and more than twenty are injured. Casualties among the bandits are much higher.

The mission of the company is to reach the pinned down soldiers at the crash site, reinforce them, and help evacuate all forces and wounded to a secure area. When the company left its position at a nearby airfield ten minutes ago, the standing RAMP principles were in effect, but five minutes ago several vehicles in the convoy were ambushed by organized bands firing AK-47s. United States forces returned fire and continued.

The commander has just supplemented RAMP with the order to ANTICIPATE ATTACK along the route by firing at armed local persons who appear near the road. He has also directed that ROECON RED measures apply.

EVENT: As his vehicle rounds a bend, a soldier in a HMMWV near the back of the convoy notices three men with rifles peering at the front of the convoy from behind a wall and talking among themselves. The men begin to raise the weapons to their shoulders.
CONSIDERATIONS: The key RAMP principle here is to ANTICIPATE ATTACK on the convoy.

Under the RAMP principles, as supplemented by the commander, soldiers can fire their weapons before receiving fire, if they see clear indicators of hostile intent. Here the soldier can conclude that the intentions of the three men are hostile because of their size (small but organized, similar to ambushing bands), activity (they are hiding behind a wall and raising their weapons), the location (near the road being traveled by the convoy), the time factor (only minutes after other vehicles in the quick reaction force have been ambushed with rifle fire), and equipment (AK-47s).

Each of the other RAMP principles supports the soldier's decision to fire at the men. Soldiers can RETURN FIRE with fire, and respond to hostile acts with necessary force. Although it is not clear that these particular men fired on the convoy earlier, what the soldier observes is consistent with a continued attack on the United States convoy.

Soldiers must MEASURE THE AMOUNT OF FORCE to fit the level of the threat, if time and circumstances permit.

Under these circumstances, aimed shots at the men are the correct measure of force to protect lives and accomplish the mission. Given the lack of time available, the soldier should not attempt lesser measures along the graduated scale of force-verbal warning, etc.

Finally, the soldier can fire his rifle, the only lethal weapon available, because soldiers can PROTECT LIFE WITH DEADLY FORCE.

SUGGESTED RESPONSE: To fire at the men and alert the remainder of the convoy.

HISTORICAL NOTE: This problem is roughly patterned after an incident that occurred in Somalia on October 4, 1993. Although conducting a humanitarian assistance mission, United States forces found themselves in a fierce firefight with Somali bandits. The company was part of a Quick Reaction Force ordered to reinforce Special Operations soldiers who were pinned down in a different part of Mogadishu. Shortly after leaving Mogadishu International
Airport in the late afternoon, the company was ambushed. Soldiers and Somalis fired thousands of rounds of ammunition and fired hundreds of grenades before the Americans were forced to backtrack and seek an alternative route to the crash site.

APPENDIX D: SAMPLE ROE TNG PROGRAM & BRIEFS
XVIII ABN CORPS & FT BRAGG REG. 350-41

APPENDIX R

SAMPLE ROECON ANNEX TO FSOP/TACSOP

APPENDIX __ (SAMPLE RULES OF ENGAGEMENT ALERT CONDITIONS -
ROECONS) TO ANNEX __ (RULES OF ENGAGEMENT) TO (UNIT) FIELD
STANDING OPERATING PROCEDURE

1. References:
   a. STP 21-1-SMCT, Soldiers Manual of Common Tasks--
      Skill Level 1 (date).
   b. TC 27-10-1, Selected Problems in the Law of War
      (26 June 1979).
      (C1, 15 July 1976).
   d. FM 100-5, Operations (June 93) (pages 2-3 to 2-4,
      describing "Disciplined Operations").
   e. FM 27-100, Legal Operations (date) (Chapter 6,
      discussing rules of engagement).
   f. FM 7-8, The Infantry Platoon and Squad (31 Dec.
      1980) (Appendix N-Prisoners and Captured Documents).
   g. DOD Directive 5100.77, 10 Jul 79, DOD Law of War
      Program.
   h. JCS Memorandum 59-83, 1 Jun 83, Implementation of
      the DOD Law of War Program.
   i. CJCSI 3121.01, 1 Oct 94, Standing Rules of
      Engagement for US Forces, Current Version, Classified
      Secret.
   j. XVIII Airborne Corps and Fort Bragg Reg. 350-41,
      Chapter 13, RAMP Rules of Engagement (ROE) Training.

2. PURPOSE. To establish a system by which the Commander
   of a task force organized from this Division can quickly
   and clearly convey to subordinate units a desired posture
   regarding use of force.

3. STRUCTURE OF ROE. Rules of engagement (ROE) are
directives that describe the circumstances under which a
unit or soldier will initiate or continue combat engagement
with other forces encountered. They include many specific
types of rules and measures. RAMP ROE training is based on
the self-defense principles contained in the JCS Standing
Rules of Engagement (see reference i). This training,
along with familiarization with the ROE conditions
(ROECONS) periodically announced by the Task Force
Commander, provide the framework for training and
disseminating real world ROE. The individual soldier's
RAMP training, as supplemented by the ROECONs system, is the baseline for the development of ROE annexes.

4. OBJECTIVES.
   a. This triangular ROE structure (RAMP, ROECONs, ROE Annexes) has three objectives:
      (1) Soldiers and units will employ an appropriate mix of initiative and restraint during operations other than war;
      (2) Soldiers and units will make a rapid transition to combat operations on identification of a hostile force;
      (3) Soldiers and units will operate aggressively and with discipline during combat operations.
   b. A task force can accomplish these objectives only if the commander conveys clear instructions on use of force. The commander conveys clear instructions by transmitting rules to soldiers in terms of RAMP, by transmitting recurring instructions to subordinate unit leaders in terms of ROECONs, and by ensuring that mission-specific instructions in ROE annexes follow a format that builds on these two mechanisms.

5. CONCEPT.
   a. The Task Force Commander will order into effect one of the ROECONs specified in the Tab to this Appendix. There are three "default" ROECONs:
      (1) ROECON GREEN. Applies when no discernible threat of hostile activity exists. This condition places the force in a routine security posture. Due to the nature of the immediate mission (typically a training exercise or staging operations conducted in a stable host nation), such a posture will involve minimal arming, and protection only of the force and of key facilities. The commander may order into effect certain rules or measures from a higher ROECON to create deterrence or to respond to incomplete intelligence received. Soldiers generally operate under the standing RAMP principles.

      (2) ROECON AMBER. Applies when there is a discernible threat of hostile activity, but not a threat justifying ROECON RED. Although intelligence may indicate additional hostility criteria to supplement the "A-Anticipate" principle of the soldiers' RAMP, ROECON AMBER
generally does not apply to situations in which higher headquarters have formally identified a hostile force. ROECON AMBER provides for arming of additional key United States personnel, establishment of roadblocks or barriers on high speed approaches into United States positions, security patrols, other measures to enhance perimeter security, and increased availability of ordinance. The commander may order into effect certain rules or measures from a higher ROECON to create deterrence or to respond to incomplete intelligence received.

(3) ROECON RED. Applies when an actual attack on United States forces occurs, a threat of imminent attack exists, or higher headquarters has formally identified a hostile force in theater. ROECON RED directs the force to continue the protection measures detailed in the lower ROECONs, while arming all personnel and lowering levels of approval authority on certain weapons systems. Leaders supplement the soldiers' RAMP by providing specific hostility criteria or by identifying the hostile force designated by higher headquarters to assist in implementing the "A-Anticipate" principle.

b. Brigade, battalion, and separate company commanders may find it necessary to add or delete measures in effect for a particular ROECON status to meet the unique requirements of a tactical setting. A written set of rules cannot be provided that will apply to every situation. Except for the measures which establish levels of approval authority (Measures 8, 48, and 56) the decision on the ROECON in effect and on whether specific rules or measures will be added to or deleted from a ROECON will be at the discretion of the senior tactical commander present. This commander will consider the mission and the situation in making the ROECON determination, and will notify higher headquarters as soon as possible if the ROECON deemed appropriate differs from that ordered by the Commander.

6. UNIT SELF-DEFENSE. Under all ROECON statuses, the commander retains the inherent right and responsibility to defend his unit. The standing RAMP principles that define a soldier's authority to defend himself also apply to the actions that a commander takes in unit self-defense.

7. OPERATIONS SECURITY. Consistent with Annex C, Appendix 3 (Operations Security) to this FSOP, the ROECON in effect (GREEN, AMBER, RED) will be classified at least SECRET.
The commander will order random measures into effect as necessary to create uncertainty in the minds of potential terrorists or other hostile forces planning attacks on United States forces.
APPENDIX S

SAMPLE ROE ANNEX WITH ROECONS

HQ, XVIII AIRBORNE CORPS
FORT BRAGG, NC 28307-5000

ANNEX __ (RULES OF ENGAGEMENT) TO _______ OPORD

References:

a. CJCS Instruction 3121.01, Standing Rules of Engagement for U.S. Forces, Dec. 94.


c. DOD Directive 5100.77, DOD Law of War Program, 10 Jul 79.


e. XVIII Abn Corps Reg. No. 27-1, Law of War Program, 2 Jun 87.

f. DA Pam 27-1, Treaties Governing Land Warfare, Dec 56.

g. DA Pam 27-24, Selected International Agreements, Vol. II, Dec 76.


j. AR 190-14, Carrying of Firearms and Use of Force for Law Enforcement and Security Duties (12 Mar. 93).


1. ( ) Situation.

   a. ( ) General. United Nations Security Council Resolution 1027, acting under the authority of Chapter VII, has authorized member states to "use all necessary means to establish as soon as possible a secure environment for humanitarian relief operations in Growmalia-Hertzebalina." Over forty countries have responded to the resolution, contributing small contingents of troops to a force led by the United States.

   b. ( ) Enemy. See Annex B, Intelligence. No forces have been designated hostile forces by higher headquarters; however, any identification of uniforms and vehicle markings of Cerbian regular armed forces should be considered hostility criteria within the "A-Anticipate" rule of RAMP.

   c. ( ) Friendly. See basic OPORD.

      (1) ( ) Higher Headquarters ROE. The multinational Unified Task Force (UNITAF) ROE have been approved by the North Atlantic Council (NAC) as well as by the U.N., and several nations influenced the final wording and emphasis of these high-level rules. Because the UNITAF Commander is also the Commander of the Joint Task Force (JTF) and III Marine Expeditionary Force (III MEF) [TF 55's immediate higher headquarters, which has planned the operation under the direction of U.S. Central Command (CENTCOM)], the UNITAF ROE bear a close resemblance to the CENTCOM Standing ROE (CSROE). The UNITAF ROE are completely compatible with the RAMP/ROECONS/ROE Annex structure that TF 55 uses.

      (2) ( ) Adjacent Units ROE. 1st Marine Division will implement the JTF/III MEF ROE using the RAMP/ROECONS/ROE Annex structure.
2. ( ) Mission. TF 55 moves by airlift from Fort Swampy to intermediate staging base (ISB) at Bonjarmi Island (TP7660) NLT 140900 Jan. D-day, H-Hour TF establishes lodgment at Togadishu Airport (QR4550). TF creates a secure environment for the distribution of humanitarian relief supplies to Togadishu City (QR4540) and prepares airport for evacuation of U.S. and foreign nationals by 1st Marine Division. On order, TF conducts peacekeeping operations in support of ongoing diplomatic efforts.

3. ( ) Execution.

   a. ( ) Concept of Operation.

      (1) ( ) Phase I (Predeployment). TF prepares for deployment at Fort Swampy subject to normal installation rules on use of force. See references j and k.

      (2) ( ) Phase II (ISB). ROECON GREEN, with following supplement: Measure 49.

      (3) ( ) Phase III (Establish Lodgment). ROECON RED, with following supplement: Measure 1.e. (the structural integrity of the soccer stadium at QR45315021); Measure 1.f. (the structural integrity of the landing strip at Beirut Airport (QR45255067)); Measure 56.O.1; Measure 56.Q.2.

      (4) ( ) Phase IV (Prepare for Evacuation). ROECON RED, with following supplement: Measure 1.e. (the structural integrity of the soccer stadium at QR45315021); Measure 1.f. (the structural integrity of the landing strip at Beirut Airport (QR45255067)); Measure 56.O.1.

      (5) ( ) Phase V (On order Peacekeeping). ROECON AMBER, with following supplement: Measure 7.h;

b. ( ) Tasks.

      (1) ( ) 1st, 2d, 3d Brigades. Observe territorial constraints depicted in scheme of maneuver, Annex ___ (Operation Overlay).
Notify TF 55 headquarters immediately in the event of inadvertent entry into Growmalia district of Timers.


(3) ( ) Fire Support (Artillery). Observe no fire areas for each of the protected places designated in Annex __ Civil Affairs.

(4) ( ) 21st Military Intelligence Battalion. Conduct electronic jamming only during Phase III.

c. ( ) Coordinating Instructions.

(1) ( ) All units conduct RAMP sustainment training.

(2) ( ) No unit or individual shall conduct operations across the international border between Growmalia-Hertzebalina and Cerbia. Notify TF 55 headquarters immediately in event of inadvertent crossing of this border.

4. ( ) Service Support. Basic OPORD.

5. ( ) Command and Signal. Basic OPORD.
APPENDIX D: SAMPLE ROE TNG PROGRAM & BRIEFS
XVIII ABN CORPS & FT BRAGG REG. 350-41

APPENDIX T

SAMPLE TRAINING WORKSHEETS

1a. SITUATION CHECK POINT

TASK
Respond to check point confrontation.

CONDITIONS
Your mission is to conduct a foot patrol and secure an area of downtown PAP. Elements of a local militia have established checkpoints throughout the city. At one check point, the militia angrily confronts your platoon, informing you that they have successfully secured the area. They order your platoon to leave the area. How do you respond?

STANDARDS
( ) Unit approaches checkpoint
( ) Recognizes check point is interfering with mission
( ) Recognizes that only non-deadly force is authorized
( ) Responds without hesitation
( ) Utilizes non-forceful options
  ( ) Reports to higher
  ( ) Seeks guidance from higher
  ( ) Requests passage
  ( ) Withdraws/avoids
( ) Utilizes necessary and appropriate non-deadly force
( ) Orders group to cease and desist
( ) Calls in reserves
( ) Shows weapon/challenges
( ) Disarms and detains if necessary
( ) Proceeds with mission
( ) Documents detainees, if any, and reports to proper authorities
( ) No use of excessive force

Other strategies actually used:______________________

General observations of grader:

_________________________________________________

TEACHING POINTS
• Necessary and appropriate force is to stop, disarm, or detain hostile personnel who interfere with your mission.
• Deadly force not authorized if no hostile intent/act.
• No hostile intent/act if no immediate threat of harm to self/others.
1b. SITUATION CHECK POINT

TASK
Respond to check point confrontation.

CONDITIONS
Same Situation, however, the armed militia starts to become more hostile and refuses to leave the area. They inform you that the area is already secure and that your platoon’s presence is a breach to security and that it is mandatory for your platoon to surrender your weapons.

STANDARDS
( ) Unit approaches checkpoint
( ) Recognizes check point is interfering with mission
( ) Recognizes that only non-deadly force is authorized
( ) Responds without hesitation
( ) Utilizes non-forceful options
   ( ) Reports to higher
   ( ) Seeks guidance from higher
   ( ) Requests passage
   ( ) Withdraws/avoids
( ) Utilizes necessary and appropriate non-deadly force
( ) Orders group to cease and desist
( ) Calls in reserves
( ) Shows weapon/challenges
( ) Disarms and detains if necessary
( ) Proceeds with mission
( ) Documents detainees, if any, and reports to proper authorities
( ) No use of excessive force

Other strategies actually used:______________________

General observations of grader:

______________________________

TEACHING POINTS
• Necessary and appropriate force is to stop, disarm, or detain hostile personnel who interfere with your mission.
• Deadly force not authorized if no hostile intent/act.
• No hostile intent/act if no immediate threat of harm to self/others
APPENDIX D: SAMPLE ROE TNG PROGRAM & BRIEFS
XVIII ABN CORPS & FT BRAGG REG. 350-41

1c. SITUATION CHECK POINT

TASK
Respond to check point confrontation that escalated in degree of threat.

CONDITIONS
Same situation, however, members of the militia become increasingly belligerent and, upon being told that your platoon will pass through the checkpoint, one militia member abruptly reaches for his weapon. What do you do in this situation?

STANDARDS
( ) Unit approaches checkpoint
( ) Recognizes check point is interfering with mission
( ) Recognizes that non-deadly force is authorized upon initial contact; considers/commences appropriate responses, as outlined in 1a and 1b.
( ) Responds without hesitation
( ) Recognizes that aggressive move for weapon is hostile intent/act
( ) Recognizes that deadly force is authorized
( ) Utilizes warning, if practical (i.e. “Stop or I’ll shoot,” or (“kanpe oubien map tire”)
( ) Uses (non-deadly) (deadly) force
( ) If firing, observes target and uses deliberate, directly aimed fire
( ) Shoots to kill not wound
( ) No use of excessive force

Other strategies actually used: ______________________

General observations of grader:

TEACHING POINTS
• Deadly force is authorized in cases of hostile intent/act
• Nothing in the ROE prevents you from using self-defense to protect your life or the lives of others
• IMMEDIATELY DOCUMENT WHAT HAPPENED AND REPORT THE INCIDENT
2a. SITUATION CONVOY

TASK
React to a large unarmed mob that is approaching your convoy.

CONDITIONS
You are in a convoy traveling through the PAP market area. Due to traffic congestion your vehicle must halt. A mob of unarmed individuals is pressing towards your vehicle. You have in your possession, individual weapons, (M16, 9mm), M60, and grenades. How do you respond to this mob?

STANDARDS
( ) Convoy approaches market area
( ) Recognizes mob is interfering with mission
( ) Recognizes that only non-deadly force is authorized
( ) Responds without hesitation
( ) Utilizes non-forceful options
   ( ) Reports to higher
   ( ) Seeks guidance from higher
   ( ) Withdraws/avoids
( ) Utilizes necessary and appropriate non-deadly force
( ) Orders group to cease and desist
( ) Calls in reserves
( ) Shows weapon/challenges
( ) Proceeds with mission
   ( ) Accelerates through area if possible
   ( ) Assumes defensive posture
   ( ) Fires warning shot
( ) No use of excessive force

Other strategies actually used: __________________________

General observations of grader:

________________________________________________________________________

TEACHING POINTS
• Deadly force not authorized if no hostile intent/act.
• No hostile intent/act if no immediate threat of harm to self/others
• Communication and coordination is key
RAMP/RULES OF ENGAGEMENT

LEVEL I TRAINING

OUTLINE

• ROE Definition
• Background
• JCS SROE
• Bases of ROE
• Development
• Desired Results
• Intro to RAMP

• ROECOS
• RAMP Objectives
• Training Concept
• Conclusion
ROE DEFINITION

Directives issued by competent military authority which delineate the circumstances and limitations under which United States forces will initiate and/or continue combat engagement with other forces encountered.

Joint Pub 1-02

BACKGROUND

• 1970’s; Expanding Soviet Fleet
• 1981; Chief of Naval Operations issued Maritime ROE
• 1986; Maritime ROE becomes JCS Peacetime ROE
• 1987; The USS Stark Incident
• 1988; The USS Vincennes Incident
• 1988; The JCS revised the Peacetime ROE
• 1993; LTG Tilleli orders a review of PROE
• 1994; Conference in Newport, RI drafts SROE
THE JCS SROE

- The JCS Standing Rules of Engagement (SROE) contain unclassified and secret portions.
- The definitions and the SROE are unclassified.
- Many of the supplemental ROE provisions are secret.
- The supplemental provisions are subdivided by level of approval authority for their implementation.
- The SROE describes how to request supplemental ROE.
- Some of the CINCs have created their own AOR specific supplemental ROE.

BASES OF ROE

- JCS SROE
- Unified Command
- Mission
- Commander’s Intent
- Intelligence
- Law of War
- Concerns:
  - Operational
  - International
  - Political
  - U.S. Policy
  - Domestic Law
DEVELOPMENT

• Judge Advocate involvement during planning stages
• Review bases for ROE; especially Commander’s intent
• Advise Commander regarding potential supplemental measures
• Distill higher HQ’s ROE
• Interpret meaning and effect of ROE

DESIRED RESULTS

• Understandable, Enforceable
• Communication and dissemination up and down the Chain of Command
• Soldiers and units employ an appropriate mix of initiative and restraint during OOTW
• Rapid transition to combat ops once hostile force identified
• Soldiers operate aggressively and with discipline during combat ops
INTRO TO RAMP

• A set of baseline self-defense principles with which soldiers can train to standard, just like any other basic soldier skill.

• Intent is to avoid “legislative” approach to ROE

• “R” Return fire with aimed fire.

• “A” Anticipate attack.

• “M” Measure the amount of force that you use, if time and circumstances permit.

• “P” Protect with deadly force only human life, and property designated by your commander.

ROECONS

• ROE alert conditions Green, Amber and Red, or ROECONS, are now incorporated into your Division TACSOP.

• ROECONS mesh with and supplement the RAMP principles.

• ROECONS provide the Commander with a method to quickly and clearly tell his subordinate units to assume a specific posture regarding use of force.
ROECON GREEN

- Applies when no discernible threat of hostile activity exists.
- Places force in a routine security posture.
- Involves minimal arming, and protection only of the force and of key facilities.

ROECON AMBER

- Applies when there is a discernible threat of hostile activity, but not a threat justifying ROECON RED.
- Does not generally apply where higher headquarters has formally identified a hostile force.
- ROECON AMBER provides for arming of additional key personnel, establishment of roadblocks or barriers, security patrols, and increased availability of ordinance.
ROECON RED

• Applies when an actual attack on U.S. forces occurs, a threat of imminent attack exists, or higher headquarters has formally identified a hostile force in theater.

• ROECON RED directs the force to continue the protection measures detailed in the lower ROECONs, while arming all personnel and lowering the levels of approval authority on certain weapons systems.

• Leaders supplement the soldiers’ RAMP by providing specific hostility criteria to assist in implementing the “A-Anticipate” attack principle.

RAMP OBJECTIVES

• All Corps units must be prepared to quickly digest and implement complicated and mission-specific ROE.

• Force protection and mission accomplishment demand that soldiers understand the ROE.

• Soldiers must be proficient in analyzing and properly reacting to a variety of scenarios involving the ROE.

• Staffs must be proficient in processing, disseminating and training ROE.
TRAINING CONCEPT

- The Corps standard for RAMP training includes five levels.
- Level I: Classroom training for leaders and soldiers.
- Level II: Individual, common task training using RAMP.
- Level III: Collective lane training by squad or platoon using RAMP.
- Level IV: Collective lane training by section, squad or platoon using RAMP supplemented by real world ROE.
- Level V: Leader training using RAMP supplemented by real world mission-specific ROE.

CONCLUSION

- ROE are the Commander’s rules for the use of force.
- RAMP is not ROE. It is a training device for assisting soldiers to understand the concepts of self-defense contained in the JCS SROE and the escalation of force to respond to a particular threat.
- RAMP also familiarizes soldiers with the way ROE are developed, trained and implemented when real world missions arise.
- Nothing in the JCS SROE prevents the Commander from drafting supplemental ROE specifically for his unit.
UNCLASSIFIED

BOSNIA: Rules of Engagement

1. The rules of engagement (ROE) for forces implementing the peace plan are based on the following principles:
   a. The right to self-defense.
   b. The principles of proportionality and the use of minimum necessary force.
   c. International Law, to include the Law of Armed Conflict (i.e., law of war).

2. These ROE permit:
   - the right to stop & search
   - the right to detain
   - the right to establish and restrict access to secure areas
   - the right to use force to:
     --> Defend friendly forces, persons with protected status, and protected property;
     --> Conduct military operations to safely implement the peace plan
BOSNIA: ROE

1. You may open fire only if you, friendly forces, or persons or property under your protection are threatened with deadly force. This means:

   a. You may open fire against an individual who fires or aims his weapon at you, friendly forces, or persons with designated special status, or property with designated special status under your protection.

3. **Deadly force** is authorized:
   - in self defense against hostile/ belligerents who use or threaten the use of deadly force against friendly forces, persons with designated protected status, or property with designated special status.
   - to safely implement the peace plan.
b. You may open fire against an individual who **plants, throws, or prepares to throw an explosive or incendiary device** at you, friendly forces, or persons or property under your protection.

c. You may open fire against an individual who **deliberately drives a vehicle at** you, friendly forces, persons with protected status or protected property.

2. You may also fire against an individual who attempts to take possession of friendly force weapons, ammunition or protected property, and there is no other way of avoiding this.
BOSNIA: ROE

**MINIMUM FORCE:**
- 1. If you have to open fire, you must:
- fire only aimed shots, and
- fire no more rounds than necessary, and
- take all reasonable efforts not to unnecessarily destroy property, and
- stop firing as soon as the situation permits.

SNIPER

While on patrol in the Bosnian countryside, your platoon takes a single burst of rounds from an AK-47. Your soldiers can identify the section of bushes from where it came, but cannot see the person or weapon.
SNIPER

What ROE apply?

What are your options?

Are they reasonable?

What does RAMP tell you?

Thief

While guarding a radio tower during the Task Force Commander’s talk show, your soldier’s start getting harrassed by some locals, but they are not threatening you. One man manages to grab a loaded magazine and takes off running.
Thief

What ROE apply?

How may your soldier respond?

What are your options?

What does RAMP tell you?

Trucker

While examining a possible UXO on the roadside, a rapidly approaching truck swerves toward two of your soldiers. The soldiers dive out of the way and are not hurt. The truck speeds down the road and gets past your last vehicle.
Trucker

What ROE apply?

How may your soldier respond?

What are your options?

What does RAMP tell you?

Use of Force Principles

◆ Military Necessity

◆ Proportionality

◆ Unnecessary Suffering
This Page Intentionally Left Blank
NOTE: DO NOT RELY ON THE SOLUTIONS ACCOMPANYING THESE VIGNETTES. The vignettes and solutions below were devised by various Judge Advocates and units to meet their specific needs. Their inclusion does not constitute endorsement. Their facts and solutions may not be appropriate under the JCS SROE, your ROE or to your mission and situation. Vignettes and their solutions should always be tailored to the applicable situation, mission and rules of engagement.

1. OOTW Vignettes (Numbers correspond to the Vignette #)

Convoy Operations:
1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 17, 18, 19, 22, 26, 27, 35, 36, 42, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 135, 137, 138, 139, 140, 141, 142, 146, 147, 148, 171, 172, 173

Hostile Intent/Hostile Act:

Political Asylum/Temporary Refuge:
10, 49,

Force to Protect Others:
12, 28, 30, 126, 127, 149, 150, 151, 214, 216

Snipers:
11, 13, 134, 185

Patrolling:
15, 31, 32, 33, 117, 118, 119, 123, 129, 130, 131, 174, 175, 176, 180, 181, 182
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

War Trophies:
16

Unarmed Hostile Elements:
17, 18, 22, 40, 42, 59, 120, 132, 171, 172, 173, 199, 200, 204, 212, 221

Force to Protect Property:
18, 24, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 64, 123, 125, 128, 174, 176, 179, 215, 230

Force to Protect Other U.S. Forces:
20, 66, 124, 125, 165, 167, 175, 176

Civilian Access:
21, 29

Force for Mission Accomplishment:
25

Interrogation:
39

Targeting:
14, 43, 46, 57, 155

Soldier Misconduct:
43

Host Nation Law:
43

EPW Status:
45, 55

Riot Control Agents:
42, 46, 47, 203

Nonlethal Weapons:
47
Protective Markings:
48

Host Nation Support:
50

Force Protection:
50

Protection of NGO's/PVO's:
28, 51, 137, 138, 139, 177, 178

Environmental Law:
52

International Agreements:
53

Protected Places:
43, 57, 192, 209

Use of Enemy Uniforms:
58

Checkpoints:
66, 117, 118, 119, 135, 137, 138, 139, 140, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145, 146, 147, 148, 149, 150, 151, 152, 153, 166, 167, 168, 169, 170, 222, 224, 225

JTF-6 (Counter-drug) issues:

Apprehension:
133, 183, 184, 185, 187, 223

Media Relations:
143, 144, 152, 153
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

Air Operations:
154, 155, 156, 157, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165

Collateral Damage:
186, 187, 188

Military Justice:
189

Cross Border Operations:
190

Indirect Fire:
190

EPW Handling/Treatment:
54, 56, 191, 198

Ambush:
191

Claims:
187, 193

SOFA:
193

Proportionality:
205, 206

Weapons Conditions:
202

Support to Coalition Forces:
219

Pursuit:
210

Contraband:
220, 227
Persons Indicted for War Crimes:
226
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

**LOW Vignettes** (Numbers correspond to the Vignette #)

**Protected Persons:**
1, 16, 23, 26, 55, 72, 74, 76, 81, 83, 115

**Protected Places:**
1, 13, 33, 65, 68, 71, 76, 81, 97, 98, 115, 131

**Noncombatants:**
1, 12, 33, 45, 55, 58, 60, 91, 109, 112, 113

**EPW Treatment:**
3, 4, 10, 11, 15, 17, 18, 21, 22, 24, 25, 27, 28, 29, 30, 32, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 51, 52, 53, 56, 61, 62, 64, 66, 69, 73, 78, 79, 80, 84, 85, 86, 92, 93, 95, 104, 106, 117, 118, 119, 122, 127, 128, 130, 132, 133, 134, 136, 137, 139, 142, 143

**Captured Property:**
5, 99

**Biological Weapons:**
6, 19, 87

**Chemical Weapons:**
7, 87, 89, 94

**Booby Traps:**
7

**War Crimes:**
2, 8, 17, 51, 139

**Paratroopers:**
9

**Hors de Combat:**
9, 67, 116, 141

**Escape:**
11
Unarmed Hostile Elements: 12

Proportionality: 13, 75

Found Property: 14

Reprisal: 19, 138

Protective Symbols: 20, 47, 63, 107, 114, 117, 135, 140

Code of Conduct: 31

Confiscation of Property: 34, 36, 49, 50, 61, 77

KIA Treatment: 35

Occupation: 45

Treatment of Wounded: 46

Medical Personnel: 48, 107

Irregular Forces: 52

Indiscriminate Attacks: 54, 57, 59

Military Necessity: 68
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

Deception:
70

Safeguards:
79

Military Justice:
88, 111, 120, 121

Ruse:
82, 90, 124

Targeting:
96, 100, 101, 102, 103, 105, 108, 110, 113, 129, 131

EPW Status:
122, 127, 128, 130, 134

LOW Instruction:
123

Legal Justification for Use of Force:
125, 126
Vignette numbers 1-30 are based on possible contingency operations for elements of the 22d MEU (SOC) in Monrovia, Liberia. While great effort has been taken to tailor each scenario to possible mission taskings down to the platoon level, keep in mind that our mission may change over time and some of the situations below, while not applicable to our anticipated mission today, may become more of a factor if we remain on station longer than expected. The only unknown that is factored into the following 30 scenarios is to declare that the Liberian civilians not engaged in the fighting and all relief workers (Red Cross) have been declared "friendly" and that Marines may use deadly force to defend their safety. This is based on prior operations where U.S. Marines have gone into an environment that includes both hostile forces and innocent civilians. For Operation Assured Response, Third Country Nationals (TCNs) who are among the evacuees, can be protected with the same criteria (hostile intent and hostile act) that we protect our own forces with.

SITUATION: Elements of BLT 2/2 arrive at the American Embassy in Monrovia, Liberia to assist CJTF Assured Response in NEO of American citizens and designated Third Country Nationals and to provide follow-on transportation to safe havens as required. BLT 2/2 is further tasked to provide security at the embassy and at food distribution sites throughout the area.

OOTW #1-6. BLT 2/2 is proceeding in a convoy of 10 vehicles from the American Embassy in Monrovia, Liberia towards the residential district to assist Americans who are trapped in their homes due to the fighting and cannot reach the embassy for evacuation. Five km west of the downtown area, the convoy is halted by a rebel checkpoint. The roadblock consists of a sedan and truck blocking the road with 8-10 rebel forces. Through your interpreter, you learn the apparent leader of the group will not allow you passage. He is very forceful but the other rebels are milling around with weapons at sling arms. (CONVOY OPS)

OOTW #1: How do you respond?
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

SOLUTION: Inform them that they must move their vehicles and allow the convoy to pass.

OOTW #2: Same situation as in No. 1, but now a verbal altercation erupts.

SOLUTION: Maintain your professionalism. Inform them that they must comply. Report all of this to HHQ.

OOTW #3: What if he begins to wave a pistol that he has been carrying, but he does not point it anyone?

SOLUTION: This is a potentially threatening situation. If the situation permits, challenge and warn him to drop the weapon. Use less than deadly force if the situation permits. If he points the weapon at you or your Marines, this would be hostile intent, and you are authorized to engage him.

OOTW #4: What if he aims a pistol at one of your Marines?

SOLUTION: There is no time to warn so you are authorized to use deadly force in self-defense, limited to degree, intensity and duration to accomplish the mission. Minimize collateral damage.

OOTW #5: What if one of the rebel soldiers throws a large rock at one of the HMMWV'S?

SOLUTION: Challenge and warn. Order to withdraw. May use force to detain the individual as a force protection measure.

OOTW #6: What if the rebel troops rush the road at weapons ready?

SOLUTION: This is hostile intent demonstrating imminent use of force, with no time to warn. Deadly force is authorized in self-defense, limited to degree, intensity and duration to accomplish the mission. Minimize collateral damage.

After clearing through that checkpoint, the convoy proceeds through downtown Monrovia. Traveling down a bullet-ridden area of the city, you notice a truck carrying a crew-served weapon emerging around a bend in the road. It is 200m away and the barrel points generally down range toward the convoy. (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)
OOTW #7: What if the barrels are initially pointed to the rear but the barrels are turned toward the BLT?

SOLUTION: Consider if the vehicle just appears coincidentally or is trying to block your progress through the city. Challenge and warn to have the vehicle withdrawn if possible. Prepare to engage the truck. Barrels pointed to the rear and not oriented on the convoy is probably no threat. When the barrels are turned toward the roadblock, there is an appearance to prepare to engage, which is hostile intent. Deadly force is authorized in self-defense.

OOTW #8: Once the evacuation of Americans from their home has begun, you begin running security patrols around the American Embassy. You notice two members of a paramilitary group shooting azimuths from a prominent terrain feature. Two others are writing pace counts around the embassy. What do you do? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: This could be evidence of preparedness to inflict damage or evidence that indicates that a surprise strike is imminent. Detain all four individuals.

OOTW #9: A Marine sentry observes an unidentified vehicle driving towards a halted convoy. He orders the vehicle to stop, but it refuses. How should he respond? (CONVOY OPS)

SOLUTION: A person who deliberately drives his vehicle at you, friendly forces, or evacuees has committed a hostile act. You may open fire against an individual who commits a hostile act or demonstrates hostile intent.

OOTW #10: There is a firefight between host-nation forces and the rebel forces just a short distance from the American Embassy. The host nation forces receive the worst of the exchange and withdraw. They approach the Marines guarding the American Embassy and request U.S. assistance. How do we respond? (TEMPORARY REFUGE)

SOLUTION: You have a duty to assist your Marines, other forces that are declared "friendly", innocent others who are threatened with deadly force and those who are in imminent danger of immediate physical harm and are seeking Temporary Refuge. You may use deadly force to protect them. If Temporary Refuge is granted, only the Secretary
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

of the Navy, or higher authority, may authorize their release.

**OOTW #11:** A Marine hears a single shot from an urban area. What is the best response? (SNIPER)

SOLUTION: Take cover. Assess the situation.

**OOTW #12:** A Marine has a positive ID on the sniper who is atop a building in an urban area. The sniper is firing at civilians and one civilian is shot. What is the basis for Marines returning fire? (DEADLY FORCE TO PROTECT OTHERS)

SOLUTION: Any person who commits a serious crime (murder, rape, looting) may be detained and handed over to civilian authorities. Any person who commits a hostile act against you, your Marines, evacuees or innocent bystanders may be engaged with deadly force.

**OOTW #13:** What weapons may be used to disable the sniper? (SNIPER)

SOLUTION: Indirect fire weapons and area weapons are probably not reasonable in an urban environment. Use aimed direct fire to minimize collateral damage and reduce the chance of injury to civilians.

**OOTW #14:** What if the sniper is located in a wooded area and when you call for RWCAS the pilot has difficulty getting oriented. Can you employ a WP grenade to mark the position? (TARGETING)

SOLUTION: Yes. Incendiary munitions may be used for target marking or identification where the incendiary purpose is not intended.

**OOTW #15:** While on security patrol moving on foot through an urban area children approach asking for anything of value. Do you give them MRE's or other souvenirs? (PATROLLING)

SOLUTION: No. Move the children along. Do not allow them to interfere with your duties and do not show favoritism by giving them anything as a souvenir, including parts of your MRE.
**OOTW #16:** During your patrol, you see a very expensive looking portable stereo in the open. You saw it there yesterday and want to investigate. What should you do? (WAR TROPHIES)

SOLUTION: Do not approach or disturb it. It may be booby-trapped. Looting or taking "trophy"s is prohibited. Report to HQ. Inform EOD or local law enforcement, if there are any.

**OOTW #17:** You are in a two-vehicle convoy traveling through traffic circle/market area. Your vehicle stops due to traffic and pedestrian congregation. A mob of unarmed individuals presses toward your vehicle. You have in your vehicle the following: tent pegs, pepper spray, your personal weapons (M16A2, 9mm), grenades and a M60 machine gun. What means can be used (if any) against the mob? (CONVOY OPS, UNARMED HOSTILE ELEMENTS)

SOLUTION: Against unarmed mobs, use the minimum force necessary to repel the threat. Use shouted warnings, tent pegs, pepper spray (display canister to crowd, shout warning, and spray in 1-second bursts) and warning shots to deter mob. Deadly force is not authorized unless the lives of members of the convoy are threatened.

**OOTW #18:** Same scenario as above, but individuals begin to steal water bottles, a camera, tools and MRE's that are loose in the back of your vehicle. Are you authorized to use deadly force to recover these items? (CONVOY OPS, UNARMED HOSTILE ELEMENTS, FORCE TO PROTECT PROPERTY)

SOLUTION: No. Deadly force is only authorized to protect yourself, your Marines, evacuees, weapons and classified material. If possible, use a means of force less than deadly force to recover the property but do not endanger your life or the lives of others to recover the property.

**OOTW #19:** Same scenario as above, but you spot an armed individual in the mob pointing an AK47 rifle at your convoy. Are you authorized to use deadly force? (CONVOY OPS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: Yes, you are authorized to use deadly force against the threat of a hostile act. Use the form of deadly force that is least likely to cause collateral damage: the 9mm or M16. Avoid the weapon that would cause
heavy losses to unarmed civilians such as the grenade or M60.

OOTW #20: As a member of the security team, you are on the perimeter of the American Embassy and you observe hostile forces firing from behind some rocks on another Marine defensive position 50 meters away. What are your actions? (FORCE TO PROTECT OTHER U.S. FORCES)

SOLUTION: Return fire and report. Deadly force may be used to defend your life and the lives of other Marines or other friendly forces.

OOTW #21: You are manning the perimeter of the American Embassy and you notice a young local boy in the vicinity of the wire several evenings in a row. Somehow this same boy makes his way into the compound one evening and you see him heading toward the CP. What do you do? (CIVILIAN ACCESS)

SOLUTION: Order him to stop. If necessary, physically stop him, or fire a warning shot. Escalate force as necessary to detain him. Personnel who interfere with the accomplishment of the mission or who otherwise use or threaten deadly force against U.S. forces or evacuees may be detained until their interference is no longer a threat. Notify HHQ!

OOTW #22: You are in a vehicle traveling through a town. Young men and women are clustered near the road. As you slow down to go by, they point to their mouths, asking for food. You continue on your mission. They begin to shout and throw rocks. Several rocks hit your vehicle. A Marine riding in the back is hit in the shoulder. Your side mirror is hit and broken. What do you do? (CONVOY OPS, UNARMED HOSTILE ELEMENTS)

SOLUTION: Move out of the area as rapidly as possible and report. U.S. forces will protect themselves from threats of death or serious bodily harm. The rules of engagement are intended to prevent indiscriminate use of force.

OOTW #23: You are on guard at a checkpoint. There is a populated village approximately 300 meters away. Two shots are fired from the village and you hear the rounds whiz by. You think you saw a muzzle flash from one of the huts. What do you do? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)
SOLUTION: Take cover, continue to observe and report. A careful assessment must be made of the risk to innocent bystanders before making a decision on returning fire. If returning fire, use the weapon least likely to cause collateral damage; i.e., single aimed rifle shots instead of automatic fire or grenade launchers. Use deadly force when it will not significantly increase the risk of death or serious bodily harm to innocent persons.

OOTW #24: You are among some local refugees at their refugee camp. You observe several of the refugees stealing cases of MRE's from a storage area and they are running away. What are your actions? (FORCE TO PROTECT PROPERTY)

SOLUTION: Order them to stop. Attempt to stop them and have them return the food. Report, request host nation law enforcement (if any) support and continue to observe. Pursue the individuals by foot or vehicle. Use the minimum force necessary to accomplish the mission. The use of deadly force would NOT be authorized in this scenario.

OOTW #25: You are providing security for a food distribution site and are approached by a local woman. She states that armed bandits are stealing food from the civilians as soon as they receive it. She points out some local men as the armed bandits. (FORCE FOR MISSION ACCOMPLISHMENT)

SOLUTION: Detain the persons she identifies; perform the 5 S's and report to HHQ. An increased response may be used to meet harassment incidents or threats to property and mission accomplishment. Personnel who interfere with the accomplishment of the mission may be detained until the mission is accomplished or the threat ends.

OOTW #26: You are riding in the back of the 4th vehicle of a convoy moving down the MSR. You hear shots from the flank and see ricochets on the side of the road by your truck. You observe local gunmen quickly ducking behind some rocks about 100 meters away. The first three trucks in your convoy are driving on. You do not know if they saw or heard the shots. What do you do? (CONVOY OPS)

SOLUTION: Return fire and report. Take further actions based on unit SOP or convoy briefing. Marines may use deadly force when hostile intent of the opposing force is
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

not abandoned. Fires will be directed at the individual or their known location.

OOTW #27: You are in the lead vehicle of a convoy. An armed local man is standing on the road to your front. As you approach, he remains in the road and motions for you to stop. To avoid hitting him, you stop your vehicle. The man walks up to you and demands identification from your group. He further disallows your convoy from proceeding through the checkpoint. He is holding his weapon at his side and standing in front of your vehicle. What do you do? (CONVOY OPS)

SOLUTION: Order him to leave the area. If he refuses, use all means necessary, short of deadly force, to remove him. Consider flex cuffing him, taking his weapon and either transporting him to local officials or if the situation doesn't permit you to bring him aboard, leave him on the side of the road and notify HHQ.

OOTW #28: You are securing a Red Cross food distribution site. Several armed locals are going through the food line. They tell a Red Cross worker that she did not give them enough food and they will not leave until she provides more. They point their weapons at the Red Cross worker and shout for more food. What do you do? (FORCE TO PROTECT OTHERS)

SOLUTION: Engage the armed men. This is a classic demonstration of hostile intent. Deadly force may be used to defend your life, the life of another Marine or an innocent other.

OOTW #29: You are on guard at a roadblock. Your instructions are that no civilian vehicles may pass. A civilian vehicle approaches and stops at your roadblock. The vehicle has local men inside. They are armed with AK-47's which they are holding in their laps. The driver points past your guard post indicating he wants to go by. What do you do? (DENIAL OF ACCESS)

SOLUTION: Order them to stop and leave the area. If they attempt to pass, fire warning shots and engage if necessary.

OOTW #30: You are moving toward a checkpoint site from the American Embassy. There are many locals in the area moving
toward the checkpoint also. Suddenly you observe a group of armed locals open fire on another group of civilians who are unarmed. You are within effective weapon's range of both groups. What do you do? (FORCE TO PROTECT OTHERS)

SOLUTION: If they continue to fire on the unarmed civilians or point their weapons on you, engage them. Deadly force may be used to defend your life, the life of a fellow Marine or an innocent other.

OOTW #31–33: You are in a vehicle moving along the MSR. You observe three armed rebel vehicles approaching from the opposite direction. You identify each truck as having machine guns mounted. What do you do for each of the following situations? (PATROLLING, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

OOTW #31: Nobody manning guns.

OOTW #32: Locals behind machine guns but they are pointed at the deck.

OOTW #33: Locals behind machine guns, loading ammo, barrel pointed in your direction and the vehicles are moving on line.

SOLUTIONS:

OOTW #31: Watch them and report. No immediate threat of hostile intent or act by mere presence of unmanned guns.

OOTW #32: Halt and prepare to defend yourself. Fire warning shots if they continue to approach while manning the machine guns. Engage if they disregard warning shots. U.S. forces will protect themselves from threats of death or serious bodily harm. Deadly force may be used to defend your life, the life of another Marine or an innocent other.

OOTW #33: Engage immediately and report. U.S. forces will protect themselves from threats of death or serious bodily harm. Deadly force may be used to defend your life, the life of a fellow Marine or an innocent other.

OOTW #34: A Marine is guarding 10 sets of NVG’s. Two local rebels approach and indicate they want the NVG’s. The Marine resists and one of the men reaches for a pistol that
he has tucked in his waistband. What can this Marine do? (FORCE TO PROTECT PROPERTY, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: This Marine can defend himself with deadly force against this threat; another Marine who witnesses this activity can use deadly force to protect his fellow Marine. Deadly force can be used because a Marine was threatened with an imminent threat of death; the fact that the Marine was guarding property does not prevent the use of deadly force.

OOTW #35: While riding as a passenger in a convoy, you notice that from the back of the HMMWV in front of you, a local boy steals a pair of NVG's and runs away from the vehicle. How do you respond? (CONVOY OPS, FORCE TO PROTECT PROPERTY)

SOLUTION: Order him to stop, pursue and report. Deadly force cannot be used to regain possession of the NVG’s. Any Marine who witnesses such an act should use all means of non-deadly force to get the NVG’s back (i.e., verbal warnings, and pursuit on foot, apprehending the thief).

OOTW #36: Same facts as (27) above, but now the Marine witnessing the theft chases the boy. During the chase, the boy turns and points a pistol at the Marine. How can the Marine respond? (CONVOY OPS, FORCE TO PROTECT PROPERTY, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: The Marine can use deadly force to defend himself. In this case, deadly force would be used to protect the life of the Marine, not to recover a pair of NVG’s.

OOTW #37: You see a 20 year old local man running in the opposite direction 50 meters from a parked HMMWV. The man is carrying an M16 he just took out of the back of a HMMWV. What do you do? (FORCE TO PROTECT PROPERTY)

SOLUTION: You should use all means of non-deadly force to recover the weapon (i.e. yell, verbal warnings, pursuit, warning shots). After, and only after, all other means have been tried and failed can deadly force be used to recover the M16, IF the weapon is in the hands of a person who presents a substantial potential threat of death or serious bodily harm to others (20 year old local man would be seen as a substantial potential threat).
OOTW #38: A Marine is manning a checkpoint. An aggressive local man comes up to the Marine and tries to take his M16 out of his hands. How can the Marine respond? (FORCE TO PROTECT PROPERTY, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: The Marine is faced with an imminent threat of death. Deadly force can be used to protect this Marine. Non-deadly force should be attempted if it will eliminate the threat and doing so does not increase the probability the Marine will be harmed.

OOTW #39: Members of a unit on patrol use excessive force against inhabitants of a small village in an effort to obtain information on the location of enemy forces or support of the enemy.
SUPPORTING EVENT: During the interrogation of one of the civilians, several people are injured and two killed. (INTERROGATION)

OOTW #40: During a NEO, noncombatants are being loaded onto a CH-47 when an angry mob forms and starts throwing rocks at unit members.
SUPPORTING EVENT: Shots are fired and one soldier and one NC are injured. The NEO commander wants to call in AC 130 support. Permissible? (UNARMED HOSTILE ELEMENTS)

OOTW #41: While providing security and monitoring the flow of refugees/displaced persons into an aid station/camp several shots are fired by persons appearing to belong to rebel/warring faction members.
SUPPORTING EVENT: After firing shots, they retreat toward the border into Greenland. The commander on scene wants to grant permission/order the pursuit of rebels across country boundary. Permissible? (HOSTILE ACT/PURSUIT)

OOTW #42: A unit, en route to the U.S. Embassy, encounters a checkpoint/roadblock on the only road leading into town. Twenty to thirty folks refuse to move. The on scene commander wants to use CS to disperse crowd.
SUPPORTING EVENT: Authority/Permission to use RCA’s is held at the JTF Commander level. Resolution? (UNARMED HOSTILE ELEMENTS/RCA’s/CONVOY OPS)

OOTW #43: Intelligence reports indicate that a church just inside the city limits of ______, is being used as enemy
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

HQ, and the basement is being used to store various classes of supplies to include ammunition.
SUPPORTING EVENT: The TF Commander wants to target this church. (TARGETING/PROTECTED PLACES)

OOTW #44: Two soldiers have been accused of raping a teenage girl in a small village adjacent to the TF base camp. Local authorities insist upon these accused being handed over for prosecution under host nation law.
SUPPORTING EVENT: Crowd control problems at the entrance to the base camp. Demonstrations demanding justice. (SOLDIER MISCONDUCT/HOST NATION LAW)

OOTW #45: Several captured enemy soldiers claim/demand protection as an EPW. You are unsure as to the entitlement of such status to some of these soldiers.
SUPPORTING EVENT: The TF Commander wants to conduct an Article V tribunal to establish the status of these captured soldiers. (EPW STATUS)

OOTW #46: There have been documented/confirmed reports of the use of chemical weapons by the enemy. A unit commander requests permission to use riot control agents against enemy soldiers in an upcoming raid.
SUPPORTING EVENT: This same commander also wants to use CS against his upcoming target. (TARGETING/RCA’s)

OOTW #47: During a convoy to deliver supplies, the unit commander wants the authority to use pepper spray and/or sponge grenades against anyone that approaches the convoy.
SUPPORTING EVENT: The TF Commander has requested but not received authorization to use non-lethal means until personnel are properly trained in their use. (RCA’s/NON-LETHAL WEAPONS)

OOTW #48: An intelligence report indicates that enemy vehicles and aircraft have been using protective markings to deceive friendly forces.
SUPPORTING EVENT: The TF Commander wants to begin stopping vehicles on an ad hoc basis to determine the proper use of such markings. (PROTECTIVE MARKINGS)

OOTW #49: Several local nationals (LNs) approach the entrance of a U.S. facility/base camp and demand protection from local government officials. They fear for their lives because they routinely do business with U.S. forces during their presence in their country.
SUPPORTING EVENT: Some of the local police arrive and begin beating the individuals demanding that they immediately leave the area. (POLITICAL ASYLUM/TEMPORARY REFUGE)

OOTW #50: Engineers and Surgeon request approval to conduct ENCAP and MEDCAP.
SUPPORTING EVENT: FPWG issues an advisory that Force Protection measures/standards should be increased due to recent HUMINT. (HOST NATION SUPPORT/FORCE PROTECTION)

OOTW #51: Representatives from certain NGO’s and PVO’s request protection/security from LNs that have been stealing supplies.
SUPPORTING EVENT: Recently, a LN was accidentally killed during an attempt to break in to a facility/warehouse that contained medical supplies and other Class I supplies. (PROTECTION OF NGO’s/PVO’s)

OOTW #52: A UH-1 made an emergency landing adjacent to a U.S. facility. A massive fuel spill resulted from this landing.
SUPPORTING EVENT: Government officials from the local town/village learn of the spill and demand compensation for the damage. They also demand the immediate creation of procedures to clean up a similar spill in the future that would include notifying the local government agency that would respond to such problems. (ENVIRONMENTAL)

OOTW #53: The TF Commander wants to adopt or draft an agreement with Kuwait that eliminates all U.S. liability for damages caused by U.S. personnel in the performance of their official duties.
SUPPORTING EVENT: Previously established claims centers are demanding further guidance regarding the payment of several outstanding claims submitted by LNs. (INTERNATIONAL AGREEMENTS)

OOTW #54: Recently several reports have arrived at TF HQ detailing the mistreatment of EPWs in one of the U.S. PW Camps.
SUPPORTING EVENT: A Report is received that the ICRC wants to inspect several of the U.S. PW Camps including the aforementioned camp. (EPW TREATMENT)

OOTW #55: One of the PW Camp Commanders is experiencing some difficulty in categorizing several of the recently captured Iraqi soldiers. They are demanding PW status.
However, several of the soldiers are suspected of engaging in terrorist activities.
SUPPORTING EVENT: One of the suspected terrorists is wounded in a recent attempt to escape. (PW STATUS)

OOTW #56: A report is received that a senior NCO at a EPW Camp has been mistreating EPWs. When questioned, the NCO admits to the actions, but states that he was told to administer such treatment by one of the officers at the camp.
SUPPORTING EVENT: Reports also indicate that several EPWs have been denied medical care resulting in the aggravation of their wounds/injuries. (EPW TREATMENT)

OOTW #57: At a recent targeting meeting, the topic of targeting a hospital suspected of being used to store ammunition and other classes of supplies came up. The TF Commander requests an opinion on the legality of targeting such a facility.
SUPPORTING EVENT: Conflicting reports are received on the actual use of this hospital. ODA that recently returned from SR mission reports significant traffic and activity around hospital. (PROTECTED PLACES/TARGETING)

OOTW #58: ODA planning a DA mission requests approval to wear enemy uniforms to infiltrate and travel to the objective.
SUPPORTING EVENT: Reports indicate that the ODA recently wore enemy uniforms to escape detection during a SR mission on the same objective. (USE OF ENEMY UNIFORMS)

OOTW #59: You are in a two-vehicle convoy traveling through the "K4" traffic circle and market area. Due to traffic congestion, your vehicle must halt. A mob of unarmed individuals presses toward your vehicle. You have in your vehicle tent pegs, pepper spray, individual weapon (MI6 or 9mm), grenades, and an M60 machine gun. You spot a woman in the mob with a glass bottle filled with liquid. She is holding it at her side and it has no cap of any kind on it. What action should you take? (CONVOY OPS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: While you may suspect she is holding a "Molotov Cocktail," you may not use deadly force under these circumstances. If possible, safely accelerate the convoy away from the area. If you cannot quickly and safely
depart the area, keep the woman and mob under surveillance. Use nonlethal, crowd control techniques. If practical, you may disarm the woman using nondeadly force to inspect the bottle. However, do not put yourself or the rest of the convoy at risk; don't allow yourself to be surrounded by the mob or cut off from the protection and support of the other members of the convoy.

OOTW #60: Same convoy situation as above, however, now the liquid-filled glass bottle has a rag stuffed into its neck. The woman continues to hold the bottle at her side but is now raising her other arm, shaking her fist and angrily screaming at you. (CONVOY OPS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: Deadly force is still not authorized at this point. While you suspect the bottle is a Molotov Cocktail, it may just be water and she hasn't done anything with it that indicates hostile intent. However, it is reasonable to consider it a potential weapon. Watch the woman closely and be prepared to respond to hostile intent or a hostile act. As above, if you act to disarm the woman to inspect the bottle, apply a graduated use of force, such as shouted warnings, pointing your weapon in her direction, and hand motions to drop the bottle. Do not ignore the mob, however, as she could be a decoy to distract your attention from the real threat in the mob or in the surrounding, urban terrain.

OOTW #61: Same convoy situation as above, however, the woman now lights a match and prepares to light the rag sticking in the bottle. Is deadly force authorized? (CONVOY OPS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: Yes. The woman now exhibits hostile intent. You may fire on the woman. However, if practical and you have enough time, you are required to use a graduated application of force, such as firing warning shots, using pepper spray, or accelerating out of the area. If lesser force isn't practical or effective before the woman assumes a bottle-throwing posture, then deadly force is acceptable.

OOTW #62: Same convoy situation as above, but now a child is seen running from the crowd with a glass bottle containing liquid with a rag on fire stuffed into the neck of the bottle. He's about 20 feet away and begins to raise his arm as if to throw the bottle at you or toward the
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

convoy. Is deadly force authorized? (CONVOY OPS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: Yes, as above.

OOTW #63: A different convoy situation. You are now in three-vehicle convoy on "21 October Road," and 200 meters away you see a crew-served machine gun on top of a roof. You also see two Somali men manning the gun. They are looking away from you, observing a different avenue of access. Is deadly force authorized? (CONVOY OPS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: Yes. Crew-served weapons, "technicals" (vehicles with mounted guns), and organized, armed militia may be engaged without provocation. However, your specific mission guidance or other immediate circumstances may suggest that firing on the weapon emplacement is unwise. You must consider your mission, your capability to neutralize the threat, congested fields of fire, innocent bystanders, collateral damage, and the possibility of crowds quickly forming which could bring the convoy to a halt. These circumstances may argue against engaging the weapon. It may be better to accelerate and depart the area if it can be safely done. If possible, immediately report the situation by radio, using the SALUTE or other prescribed format. If not, report the situation and circumstances during convoy debriefing immediately after completing your mission.

OOTW #64: You are on guard duty at the front gate of your compound. You see a local national reach through the compound perimeter wire and grab an M16 rifle from an unsuspecting soldier. Are you authorized to use deadly force to recover the weapon? (FORCE TO PROTECT PROPERTY)

SOLUTION: Yes. The theft of a weapon shows hostile intent. You may use force up to and including deadly force to recover the weapon. If possible, use a lesser means of force, such as warning shots to recover the weapon. If lesser means are not practical or effective, deadly force is authorized.

OOTW #65: Again, you are on guard duty at the front gate of your compound. A large crowd gathers outside the gate. You notice that women and children are at the front of the crowd. Suddenly, you notice armed men in the rear of the
crowd pointing weapons in the direction of the compound. Are you authorized to apply deadly force? (DEMONSTRATORS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: Yes. You may use deadly force to defend against this hostile threat. Target those individuals possessing weapons and, to the extent possible, avoid targeting unarmed civilians. If possible, use lesser forms of force, such as shouted warnings, warning shots, or pepper spray to disperse the crowd (especially the unarmed civilians) before engaging the armed individuals. However, if you do not have time to disperse the crowd or if it is not practical under the circumstances, engage the threat using weapons that will minimize collateral damage to unarmed civilians, such as you individual weapon.

OOTW #66: Still on guard duty at the front gate of your compound, you see a local national, brandishing a knife, rush toward one of your fellow gate guards. Are you authorized to use deadly force to stop him? (CHECKPOINTS, FORCE TO PROTECT OTHER U.S. FORCES)

SOLUTION: Yes. This is clearly an act of hostile intent. You may fire on the individual with the knife. The fact that the threatening person is using a knife rather than a firearm does not mean a soldier cannot use his individual weapon. The point to be made here is that if a person exhibits hostile intent, whether it is done with a knife, sword, grenade, or firearm, the U.S. soldier may use his or her weapon to engage and stop the attacker.

NOTE: The following are example scenarios with answers included for use in the training of personnel conducting JTF-6 operational counterdrug missions. These scenarios may be modified to more closely resemble situations that may occur on your particular mission. Obviously, when these or similar situations occur, the JTF-6 Joint Operations Center and the Staff Legal Advisors should be notified.

OOTW #67-70: A team is patrolling approximately 30 miles north of the U.S. /Mexico border when it inadvertently makes contact with a group of five backpackers. The backpackers look suspicious and only one of them speaks English. They are very nervous and seem eager to leave the area. There is no evidence they are carrying any weapons, and they make no gestures against the patrol. (JTF-6)
OOTW #67: What is the appropriate action?
SOLUTION: Let the backpackers proceed or retreat. If necessary, ask them to go around because you are conducting military training. Move your patrol away from them and report in. Provide DETAILED and accurate information on what you saw.

OOTW #68: Would your actions be different if the backpackers had rifles slung over their shoulders?
SOLUTION: No. The fact that civilians are carrying weapons does not change your authorized actions. They may be hunters.

OOTW #69: If you believe or know the backpackers are carrying drugs, can you detain them?
SOLUTION: No. You may only detain a person who poses an IMMINENT threat of serious bodily harm to you or others present. The presence of weapons should raise your awareness of a possible threat and you should act and proceed accordingly. Remember, in the fact pattern the backpackers' rifles are slung on their shoulders, while in that position they do not pose an imminent threat. That is not to say that they could not be unslung very quickly and then pose an imminent threat.

OOTW #70: If you believe or know the backpackers are carrying drugs, can you follow them and continue to report on their location?
SOLUTION: No. You are not authorized to follow or track people. Remember, the fact pattern specified that you are conducting a patrol 30 miles north of the border so there probably is no detection and monitoring authority in this mission. Since the patrol did not see the backpackers cross the border they cannot track or monitor the backpackers movements.

OOTW #71-74: A patrol has established a LP/OP overlooking a draw that has been used by drug smugglers in the past. At 0330, a member of the LP/OP team wakes up and realizes the rest of the team is asleep. He observes a man attempting to steal a soldier's rucksack, PVS-7B, and weapon. (JTF-6)

OOTW #71: What is the appropriate action?
SOLUTION: Wake the rest of the team and stop the man from taking the equipment. Radio a report to the unit TOC, and request LEA assistance if needed.

OOTW #72: Are you authorized to use deadly force to prevent the man from stealing the equipment?

SOLUTION: No. You may forcibly take the equipment from the man but you may only use the minimum force necessary.

OOTW #73: Are you authorized to pursue the man to get your equipment back?

SOLUTION: You may chase the man for a SHORT distance to get back your equipment.

OOTW #74: Are you authorized to detain the man once you get back your equipment?

SOLUTION: No. You may only detain, temporarily, a person who poses an IMMINENT threat of serious bodily harm to you or others present. You must decide, based on the situation, whether temporary detention is necessary.

OOTW #75-76: After inserting a LP/OP team, the driver and assistant driver are returning to the TOC when they are pulled over by a state trooper. The trooper orders them to place their hands in the air. He begins giving them a Miranda warning and tells them they are under arrest for illegally carrying weapons in their rental vehicle. (JTF-6)

OOTW #75: What is the appropriate action?

SOLUTION: Comply with all police orders. The state and local police are authorized to ensure everyone obeys the laws. If available, show the police officer the "Letter of Introduction" provided by your LEA. Give the police officer phone numbers for your LEA, the unit TOC, or as a last resort, the JTF-6 Joint Operations Center (JOC) at (800) 525-6864.

OOTW #76: The trooper demands that the soldiers surrender their weapons because possession of an "assault rifle" is illegal. What is the appropriate action?
SOLUTION: Comply with orders from the police but do not allow yourself to become separated from your weapon. If you must surrender the weapon to the police, accompany the police officer to the police station. Try to avoid this by showing the police officer the "Letter of Introduction" provided by your LEA. Give the police officer phone numbers for your LEA, the unit TOC, or as a last resort, the JTF-6 Joint Operations Center (JOC) (800) 525-6864. In any case, ask to see the police officers identification. Make sure you get his name and badge number. Report the incident to the unit TOC and the LEA as soon as possible.

OOTW #77: You are conducting patrol training as part of a ground reconnaissance mission. Your patrol comes across what appears to be an active methamphetamine lab with a tent and several tarp covered objects. You call the LEA to report the find. The LEA requests that you return to the area and look through the tent and under the tarps for any identification or presence of chemicals. What is the appropriate action? (JTF-6)

SOLUTION: Explain to the LEA that you cannot search the tent or search under the covered areas as that is prohibited by the Posse Comitatus act. If the LEA insists, radio back to the unit TOC and have the LEA talk to the mission commander.

OOTW #78-79: A squad is assigned the mission of manning a 2102 position to watch a draw known to be used by drug smugglers on foot. The LEA response is normally one hour at night. At 0330, the squad observes a car stop near an intersection approximately 200 meters to their rear. Several men emerge from the vegetation carrying large bundles and begin loading the car. The squad cannot get accurate descriptions of either the men or the car due to the lack of light. (JTF-6)

OOTW #78: What is the appropriate action?

SOLUTION: Radio in a report immediately, and continue to observe.

OOTW #79: If you believe or know that drugs are being smuggled, can you take action to detain the drug smugglers?

SOLUTION: No. Detaining the drug smugglers would constitute an arrest. You may only detain a person who poses an
IMMINENT threat of serious bodily harm to you or others present.

OOTW #80-81: During a reconnaissance patrol, the team locates a marijuana cultivation site on public land with two civilians harvesting the marijuana. The team finds an area with good concealment and establishes observation on the garden. The team leader radios the LEA, and a law enforcement agent joins the team a short while later. The agent observes the situation and then requests the team move to a trail approximately 300 meters west of their current position. The new position is on a trail that leads to the garden and is located at the bottom of a very narrow draw with vertical sides. The LEA emphasizes the team will not be assisting in the arrest but their presence on the trail will block the escape of the civilians. (JTF-6)

OOTW #80: What is the appropriate action?

SOLUTION: Explain to the LEA that you cannot move into a position to block the trail. Blocking the trail would be assisting in an arrest and serving as back-up for the LEA. Both activities are prohibited. If the LEA insists, radio back to the unit TOC and have the LEA talk to the Mission Commander.

OOTW #81: Instead of requesting the unit to move to a new position, the LEA request that two members of the patrol make their way down to the civilian's vehicle and let the air out of the tires. What is the appropriate course of action?

SOLUTION: Explain to the LEA that you cannot let the air out of the civilian's vehicle's tires. This would also be assisting in an arrest and is prohibited.

OOTW #82: While moving down a narrow draw, the point man spots a group of civilians camped in the draw. The patrol leader joins the point man and confirms the patrol has not been spotted. The team leader determines that any further movement down the draw will result in the team being spotted by the civilians. He conducts a quick map study and determines that it will take 10-12 hours to return back up the draw and maneuver around the civilians. What is the appropriate action? (JTF-6)
SOLUTION: Radio back to the TOC and inform the mission commander of the situation. The mission commander should confer with the supported LEA to determine the next course of action which may include the LEA going to the camp to assess the situation. If contact with the TOC cannot be made, or an assessment by the LEA of the camp site is not practical, then the safe course of action is to return back up the draw and bypass the civilians. Although not listed on your ROE cards, you are required by the CONPLAN/EXORD to "avoid confrontation/contact with non-mission personnel." When communications are reestablished, radio the unit TOC to inform them of the change to your patrol route.

OOTW #83: One of your teams is assigned the mission of manning a LP/OP near the border. The team observes a group of unidentified civilians bringing large bundles across the border. The bundles are carried to a dirt road intersection where they are being loaded into civilian vehicles. The dirt road intersection is located approximately 150 meters from the team. The team leader calls the LEA, and two law enforcement agents in a vehicle respond. The agents immediately come under fire from at least six civilians and take cover behind their vehicle. It is obvious that the agents are seriously outgunned. Several civilians continue to fire at the agents as three others move to flank them. What is the appropriate action? (JTF-6)

SOLUTION: Protect the law enforcement officers. You are authorized to use force, including deadly force, to protect the law enforcement officers' lives from an imminent threat of death or serious bodily harm. As soon as feasible, radio the unit TOC and request additional LEA assistance.

OOTW #84-85: During the pre-flight briefing for an aerial reconnaissance mission, the LEA briefs that the flight route will include an overflight of a known marijuana garden on public land. The LEA states that he needs the aircraft to "buzz" the garden several times in an east to west direction. The LEA's intent is to scare the drug growers into running toward a LEA response team. (JTF-6)

OOTW #84: What is the appropriate action?

SOLUTION: Politely explain that "buzzing the garden", in order to make the suspects run, would be assisting in the arrest. If you are unsure whether an action is legal,
contact the JTF-6 JOC at (800) 525-6864 and ask to be connected with the Staff Legal Advisors.

**OOTW #85**: Is it legal to overfly an area of public or private land if it includes a known marijuana garden?

**SOLUTION**: Yes. Ensure that the LEA understands that the pilots must comply with the altitude limitation over built-up areas which, at a minimum, is 500 feet AGL, slant range or other FAA restrictions.

**OOTW #86-89**: The point man of a reconnaissance patrol sees a woman running down a dirt road and screaming for help. A man with a tire iron appears to be chasing her. (JTF-6)

**OOTW #86**: What is the appropriate action?

**SOLUTION**: Assist the woman using the minimum force necessary. As soon as feasible, radio for LEA assistance. You should also provide first aid if needed. Remember, there is a moral obligation to intervene when there is an imminent threat of death. Alternatively, serious bodily injury to an innocent third party (even if not related to CD activity).

**OOTW #87**: What are some actions which might be tried other than using deadly force.

**SOLUTION**: Verbal commands to the assailant, physically blocking the assailant, or use of your weapon as part of a show of force. However, do not fire warning shots.

**OOTW #88**: Is the use of deadly force authorized?

**SOLUTION**: Only if the woman's life or your own is in IMMINENT danger of death or serious bodily injury.

**OOTW #89**: Instead of seeing a woman, the point man observes a man dressed in civilian clothes lying in the middle of a dirt road. The point man, from a concealed position, can see that the civilian is not moving and appears to be unconscious. What is the appropriate action?

**SOLUTION**: Determine if the man needs assistance. Radio a report to your unit TOC and request LEA assistance. Provide first aid if needed.
OOTW #90-92: A team encounters several armed drug smugglers while moving to their LP/OP position. The smugglers immediately open fire and begin moving back toward the border. (JTF-6)

OOTW #90: What is the appropriate action?

SOLUTION: If possible, take cover. If your lives are in imminent danger, return fire and attempt to break contact. As soon as feasible, radio a report to your unit TOC and request LEA assistance.

OOTW #91: Are warning shots required?

SOLUTION: Warning shots are not required and are not authorized.

OOTW #92: If the drug smugglers are firing from Mexico, can the team return fire across the border?

SOLUTION: Yes, if their lives are in imminent danger.

OOTW #93-94: While inserting by vehicle, the team halts at a locked gate that blocks the dirt road. The LEA had briefed the team that the gate was on public land and provided them a key to open the lock. The assistant patrol leader exits his vehicle to unlock the gate. Two men in civilian clothes emerge from the vegetation, and both are carrying rifles. One of the men is very agitated and announces that the team is on private property and must leave immediately. (JTF-6)

OOTW #93: What is the appropriate action?

SOLUTION: Apologize and leave immediately. If necessary, provide general answers to questions, but do not volunteer information. For example, tell him your are in the military and are conducting training in the area. Although not listed on your ROE card, you are required by the CONPLAN/EXORD to "avoid confrontation/contact with non-mission personnel.' Radio a report to your unit TOC, and provide detailed information about the incident and the individuals you encountered. The TOC should immediately notify the LEA and provide instructions for the patrol to return to base or execute an alternate insertion plan.
OOTW #94: Instead of being confronted at the gate, the unit continues their insertion. While traveling on foot to their LP/CP, they observe two men who are wearing NVGS. The two men appear to be pursuing and tracking the unit’s movements but have not confronted the unit. What is the appropriate course of action?

SOLUTION: You should break contact and report your detailed observations to the TOC. (Note - the unknown persons who are wearing NVG could be LEAs who may suspect the unit of illegal activities. Proper coordination with the LEAs is paramount to ensure that a misunderstanding or misidentification of a unit does not occur.) If contact is not capable of being broken, or not reasonable, identify yourself as members of the military conducting training and ask the individuals to desist in their pursuit.

OOTW #95-96: While on patrol in a National Forest, the point man detects a strong odor of marijuana. He searches the vegetation and surprises a civilian sleeping against a tree. The man jumps to feet and yells "get the @*# off my land, %*&#@$#." He pulls his jacket aside and reaches for a pistol in his waistband. The point man, who is exceptionally alert, tackles the civilian and wrestles him to the ground. (JTF-6)

OOTW #95: What is the appropriate action?

SOLUTION: Use the minimum force necessary to disarm the civilian. You should conduct a "pat down" search of the individual for your own safety and for WEAPONS ONLY. Radio the unit TOC and request LEA assistance. Detain the civilian until he can be turned over to the LEA.

OOTW #96: If the LEA makes the request, can the team move the civilian 500 meters to link up with the LEA?

SOLUTION: No. The LEA should move to the team's position; if necessary, the team should provide a guide for the LEA.

OOTW #97-100: While patrolling near the U.S./Mexico border, a team encounters a large danger area (an open area with little cover or concealment) which they cannot bypass. Prior to crossing the danger area, the patrol leader sends a two-man point element across to recon the far side. The patrol hears several shots fired shortly after the point element reaches the far side of the danger area. They then
see two men in civilian clothes carrying weapons and dragging one of the point men toward the border. The team leader quickly realizes the team is too far away to fire without hitting their own man. (JTF-6)

OOTW #97: What is the appropriate action?

SOLUTION: Get the point men back using the minimum force necessary. Radio the unit TOC to report the incident and request LEA assistance. Obviously the large danger area should have been identified by a thorough map study prior to the team beginning the patrol. The risk of compromise to a patrol should be carefully considered when selecting patrol routes.

OOTW #98: Is deadly force authorized to recover or protect the point man?

SOLUTION: Yes, if there is an imminent threat of death or serious bodily harm.

OOTW #99: Are the patrol members authorized to pursue the civilians?

SOLUTION: Yes, they may pursue the civilians to recover the point man.

OOTW #100: Are the patrol members authorized to cross the U.S./Mexico border to recover the point man?

SOLUTION: Not without national command authority, obtained through HQ, JTF-6.

OOTW #101: One military service member is riding along with a law enforcement officer conducting an area orientation. A call comes in on the LEA radio requesting all units respond to a "shots fired, officer in pursuit" report. The LEA says he has to respond. What is the appropriate action? (JTF-6)

SOLUTION: If you can do so safely, i.e., without being dropped off in the middle of nowhere, you should get out of the LEA's vehicle. If you must accompany the LEA, you must avoid such as participation in any subsequent law enforcement functions arrest, search, or seizure. This should be coordinated prior to you riding with the LEA.
There should be some plan for communications with the unit TOC to cover such contingencies.

**OOTW #102:** The flight crew of a helicopter is conducting an aerial reconnaissance mission with LEA personnel on board. The AO is located approximately 30 miles north of the U.S./Mexico border, and the mission does not have Detection and Monitoring (D & M) authority. A pilot spots a small plane on the ground with people loading bundles from the plane to a vehicle. The vehicle drives across the desert and heads west on highway 187. The LEA on board the aircraft requests that the pilots change the route of the aerial recon to "west on highway 187." What is the appropriate action? (JTF-6)

**SOLUTION:** Politely explain that you are not authorized to pursue or block suspects. Changing the aerial recon route to coincide with the suspected drug smugglers' route is not authorized. You may offer to land the LEA in an area that "avoids any reasonable likelihood of confrontation with civilians." Obviously, these restrictions should be discussed with the LEA prior to starting the mission. If you are unsure whether an action is legal, contact the JTF-6 JOC at (800) 525-6864 and ask to be connected with the Staff Legal Advisors.

**OOTW #103-104:** Two military personnel are riding along with a law enforcement officer to emplace sensors near the U.S./Mexico border. As they drive through the desert, the law enforcement officer observes a small group of suspected illegal aliens hiding in a draw. The officer stops the vehicle, jumps out, and chases the illegal aliens on foot. (JTF-6)

**OOTW #103:** What is the appropriate action?

**SOLUTION:** You must stay with the LEA's vehicle. You may not accompany the LEA or assist in the arrest.

**OOTW #104:** If the LEA returns with two illegal aliens can you continue to ride with the LEA as he drives the illegal aliens to the station for processing?

**SOLUTION:** Yes. However, it would be better if you could arrange to be picked-up by your unit instead. Avoid becoming involved in any arrangement where you are involved in assuming custody of illegal aliens. Obviously,
arrangements for your unit to pick you up should be made before riding with the LEA. There should be some plan for communications with the unit TOC to cover such contingencies.

**OOTW #105:** One of your teams is assigned the mission of manning a LP/OP on a ridge near the border. The mission has Detection and Monitoring (D & M) authority. The team observes a group of unidentified civilians bringing large bundles across the border in the valley below them. The team reports the incident to the LEA who requests that the team move north along the ridge line to keep the civilians in sight. What is the appropriate action? (JTF-6)

**SOLUTION:** Radio the unit TOC, and with their approval, move along the ridge to alternate LP/OP positions to maintain observation on the civilians. The movement to alternate LP/OP positions must be rehearsed to avoid confrontation/contact with civilians. Normally, patrolling is not authorized to maintain observation on people observed crossing the border. Missions with Detection and Monitoring (D & M) authority are authorized to monitor individuals they observe crossing the border; however, check the CONPLAN message for any restrictions that might apply to your specific mission. This monitoring is always limited to 25 miles from the border.

**OOTW #106-108:** You are part of an engineering crew spot welding a fence along the U.S./Mexico border. A spark lands in the nearby brush and starts a fire on the U.S. side but spreads quickly across the border into Mexico. (JTF-6)

**OOTW #106:** What is the appropriate course of action?

**SOLUTION:** Radio the TOC immediately so they can coordinate with the proper Mexican fire fighting authorities. You should attempt only to extinguish the fire that is on the U.S. side of the border. Do not cross the border. If there is a risk of fire, coordination should be made prior to the operation to ensure fire fighting authorities on both sides of the border are prepared.

**OOTW #107:** You have several fire extinguishers and some Mexican nationals are yelling for them, what should you do?
SOLUTION: You cannot cross the border, but you can loan them the fire extinguisher. Be advised, if the foreign nationals do not return the fire extinguisher you may not cross the border to retrieve it.

OOTW #108: Instead of being part of an engineering crew you are conducting ground reconnaissance and a smoke grenade starts the fire, what is the appropriate course of action?

SOLUTION: Your conduct does not change simply because you are conducting ground reconnaissance. You follow the same course of conduct as the engineers above.

OOTW #109: You are in your LP/OP position on the border and your mission has detection and monitoring authority. You receive notification from a U.S. Border Patrol agent that he has spotted a group of individuals coming across the border and they are heading your way. What is the proper course of action? (JTF-6)

SOLUTION: The fact pattern specified that you have detection and monitoring authority. You do not have to personally see the individuals come across the border in order to monitor their movements. Therefore, the information can be passed on to you and you can monitor their movement. Once again, to clarify, you do not have to personally observe the individuals cross the border, but someone within the mission must observe the individuals come across the border. Persons within the mission include other LP/OPs, aerial reconnaissance, or LEA agents.

OOTW #110-111: It is a dark and stormy night with little illumination. The LP/OP team locates in an orchard within sight of the border. The team observes several individuals cross the border and move in the general direction of the LP/OP. As the group enters the orchard, which is less than 50 meters away, the LP/OP loses sight of the group. (JTF-6)

OOTW #110: What should the team do?

OOTW #111: May the LP/OP team upgrade it's weapons status to Arming Condition Two (round in the chamber, safety on) or Arming Condition One (round in the chamber, safety off)?

SOLUTION: Maybe. The answer depends on a totality of the circumstances and whether the team feels it may be the
subject of an imminent threat of death or serious bodily harm. Relevant factors include (but are not limited to) whether the team observed weapons in the group, past history of violence by local DTOS, the likelihood the group might discover the LP/OP (placement becomes critical), whether the group appears to be "hunting" for an LP/OP team or local LEA, local LEA threat assessments, JTF-6 force protection team assessments and briefings, the ability of the team to exfiltrate and avoid a confrontation, the nearness (in time and distance) of LEA response forces, and the immediate tactical situation.

OOTW #112: The team re-acquires the group only a few feet away, heading directly for the LP/OP site. It is obvious that in the dark, the group can not see the LP/OP, but compromise appears inevitable. Successful exfiltration without discovery is highly unlikely. What are your actions now? (JTF-6)

SOLUTION: The correct action depends on whether the team reasonably perceives an immediate threat of death or serious bodily harm.

If the team does not perceive an immediate threat of death or serious bodily harm, remain under cover and concealment to the best of your ability. Halt the group before it reaches your position. Inform the group they are in a military training exercise area and ask them to leave. Do NOT detain them unless they exhibit an immediate threat of death or serious bodily harm. Call the LEA response force.

The team may always defend itself with less than deadly force against any threat. These are not "shoot or do nothing" situations. Use an amount of force reasonably necessary to protect yourselves and diffuse the situation.

If the team does perceive an immediate threat of death or serious bodily harm, you may employ deadly force to defend yourselves or others. A warning (while preferred as a non-deadly force response) is not required. However, unless it would be futile, ineffective, or increase the risk to the team, you should always attempt to identify yourselves as U.S. military before using deadly force.

OOTW #113-116: A team is patrolling near the U.S./Mexican border when it observes a distant group of individuals, armed with rifles, looking in the patrol's direction.
individuals begin moving in the patrol's direction. (JTF-6)

**OOTW #113:** What is the appropriate action?

**SOLUTION:** Avoid contact/confrontation with the group of armed individuals. If necessary, withdraw to break contact. Even if the individuals are legal hunters, contact may compromise the mission. File a situation (SPOT) report on the observed activity.

**OOTW #114:** Would your actions be different if the armed individuals began advancing tactically, moving from cover to cover?

**SOLUTION:** If the team perceives that the individuals might threaten the team, notify the LEA immediately. If feasible and tactically safe, withdraw to break contact or move to a more defensible position. If necessary, assume a defensive posture and await arrival of the LEA.

**OOTW #115:** What else could the team do?

**SOLUTION:** Consider a verbal warning. A verbal warning is not required, but may help defuse the situation or delay violence, giving you more time to prepare and for the LEA to arrive. Unless it would be futile, ineffective, or increase the risk to the team, you should always attempt to identify yourselves as U.S. military before using deadly force. Compromise of the mission is preferred as an alternative to employing deadly force.

**OOTW #116:** What if the armed individuals threaten the team?

**SOLUTION:** Respond in accordance with the ROE. Remember that you ALWAYS have the inherent right of self-defense. Nothing in the ROE limits your right to defend yourself, your comrades, innocent third parties, or the commander's inherent authority and obligation to use all necessary means available and to take all appropriate action in self-defense of the unit and other U.S. forces in the vicinity. Though you are not required to do so you may use deadly force in response to a threat of death or serious bodily injury. Use the minimum force necessary to defend yourself, realizing that that "minimum force" might be deadly force.
OOTW #117: Your mission is to conduct a foot patrol and secure all area of downtown PAP. Elements of a local militia have established checkpoints throughout the city. At one checkpoint, the militia angrily confronts your platoon, informing you that they have successfully secured the area. They order your platoon to leave the area. How do you respond? (PATROLLING, CHECKPOINTS)

SOLUTION: The armed militia is interfering with your mission. The confrontation and taunting do not rise to the level of hostile acts or clear signs of hostile intent. Although the use of appropriate force is authorized against armed persons interfering with your mission, in this situation you should inform the militia of your mission and order them to leave the area.

OOTW #118: Same situation as above, however, the armed militia starts to become more hostile and refuses to leave the area. They inform you that the area is already secure and that your platoon’s presence is a breach to security and that it is mandatory for your platoon to surrender their weapons. (PATROLLING, CHECKPOINTS)

SOLUTION: The armed militia is interfering with your mission. You may use necessary force to stop, disarm, or detain any armed person who interferes with your mission. Deadly force is not authorized unless hostile intent or a hostile act is observed (i.e., the lives of the members of the patrol are threatened). Immediately use appropriate and proportionate force to accomplish your mission, (i.e., by challenging the militia through a display of your weapon, or by calling support elements). As necessary, apply increasing levels of force. Another option is to withdraw, if tactically possible.

OOTW #119: Same situation as above, however, members of the militia become increasingly belligerent and, upon being told that your platoon will pass through the Checkpoint, one militia member abruptly reaches for his weapon. What do you do in this situation? (PATROLLING, CHECKPOINTS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: This is a sign of hostile intent. The use of deadly force is authorized.

OOTW #120: You are in a convoy traveling through the PAP market. Due to traffic congestion, your vehicle must halt.
A mob of unarmed individuals is pressing towards your vehicle. You have in your possession tent pegs, individual weapons, (M16, 9mm), M60, and grenades. What resources can you use against this mob? (UNARMED HOSTILE ELEMENTS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: Upon initial contact with the mob, the first option that should be considered is whether or not you can avoid the situation by backing out and taking an alternative route. If you cannot avoid the mob, deadly force is not authorized unless hostile intent or a hostile act is observed (members of the convoy are threatened). Against unarmed mobs, apply graduated levels of force, starting with lesser degrees that effectively repel the mob. Use shouted warnings or display of deterrents (i.e., showing that you are only transporting tent pegs and, if necessary, showing your weapons to discourage the mob). If there is no response to your actions, warning shots may be an alternative to deter the mob, (Caveat - Be cautious when considering use of warning shots as they may incite a mob).

OOTW #121: Same above, but you spot a woman in the mob with a liquid filled glass bottle with a rag stuffed into its neck. The women holds the bottle at her side but is raises her other arm, shakes her first, and angrily screams at you. (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: Upon initial contact with the mob, the first option that should be considered is whether or not you can avoid the situation by backing out and taking an alternative route. If you cannot avoid the mob, deadly force is not authorized unless hostile intent or a hostile act is observed. While you suspect the bottle is a Molotov Cocktail, it may just be water and she hasn't done anything with it that indicates hostile intent. However, it is reasonable to consider it a potential weapon. Watch the woman closely and be prepared to respond to hostile intent or a hostile act. If you take action to disarm the woman to inspect the bottle, apply a graduated use of force, shouting warning, pointing your weapon in her direction, and hand motions to drop the bottle. Do not ignore the mob however as she could be a decoy to distract your attention from the real threat in the mob or in the surrounding urban terrain.

OOTW #122: Same situation as above, but the woman lights a match and prepares to light the rag that is sticking in the
bottle. What force may be used? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: If you cannot avoid the situation altogether, and the woman now exhibits hostile intent and may be fired upon. However, if safe and practical, use graduated application of force, i.e. pointing your weapon in her direction, motions to drop the bottle, a warning shot, or accelerating from area. If lesser force is not practical/effective before she assumes a bottle throwing posture, then use deadly, force - observed, direct, and deliberately aimed. Shoot to kill, not to wound.

OOTW #123: You are on foot patrol on the suburban outskirts of the Port au Prince. You have set up a tactical perimeter for your platoon to rest. You see a civilian run through the perimeter and grab an M16 from an unsuspecting soldier. What force can you use to recover the weapon? (PATROLLING, FORCE TO PROTECT PROPERTY)

SOLUTION: You may use necessary force, including deadly force, to recover the M16, (or other inherently dangerous weapons). Use lesser means of force initially if such methods effectively accomplish recovery of the weapon while not endangering your life or the lives of fellow soldiers. Lesser means of force might include the use of a warning, (i.e. "stop or I'll shoot", or "kanpe oubien map tire"), showing your weapon, or firing a warning shot. If lesser means do not work, engage the target with observed, direct, and deliberately aimed fire. Shoot to kill, not wound.

Note: Any property that has been designated as "mission essential" by a Brigade commander, authorizes the use of deadly force, even absent other signs of hostile intent.

OOTW #124: Same situation as above. A civilian brandishing a knife rushes toward one of your fellow perimeter guards. What force can your use to stop this act? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT, FORCE TO PROTECT OTHER U.S. FORCES)

SOLUTION: This is a hostile act. You may use deadly force to stop the civilian with the knife. Although the attacker is using a knife, you may engage your target with your M16 to stop the hostile act.

OOTW #125: Same situation as above. A civilian runs up to your fellow perimeter guard, grabs his sunglasses, and runs
away. What force can you use to stop him as he runs away? (FORCE TO PROTECT PROPERTY, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT, FORCE TO PROTECT OTHER U.S. FORCES)

SOLUTION: Sunglasses are not mission-essential property or inherently dangerous. Do not use deadly force to stop the theft. Use a lesser means of force to stop the theft. Do not endanger your life or the lives of others to recover the property.

OOTW #126: You are a soldier deployed to Port-au-Prince, Haiti. Your mission includes the protection of a food distribution site and Red Cross Aid site. Three armed Haitians go through the food line at the food distribution site. They become increasingly hostile and verbally threaten the relief workers in order to obtain more food. What force can you use to stop this act? (FORCE TO PROTECT OTHERS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: You may use necessary force to stop, disarm, or detain armed and hostile individuals. Stay alert. Always anticipate attack. Attempt lesser means of force if safe and practical. Appropriate means might be to ask them to leave, or disarm, detain, and escort the individuals from the area.

OOTW #127: This time the three armed Haitians draw their weapons and point them at the relief workers. What force can you use to stop this act? (FORCE TO PROTECT OTHERS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: This is a sign of hostile intent. Use necessary and appropriate force, including deadly force, to stop this act. Use lesser means if practical. If not, use deadly force (i.e., shoot to kill, not wound). When firing, use direct and deliberately aimed fire, avoiding firing into a crowd of civilians if possible.

OOTW #128: Same as above. An unarmed Haitian steals a carton of food from the Red Cross storage area and begins running away. What force can you use to stop this act? (FORCE TO PROTECT PROPERTY)

SOLUTION: Food is not mission-essential property. Do not use deadly force to stop this act. Use any other appropriate means of force to stop the act. Appropriate means might be blocking the route of escape with a vehicle,
tripping, throwing objects in his way to slow his escape or tackling him.

NOTE: That any person (i.e., U.S. or JTF personnel), placed in a similar situation as the Red Cross relief workers should also be protected in the same manner.

OOTW #129: You are on a foot patrol in the suburb of PAP when you encounter a group of Haitian men who appear to have been drinking alcoholic beverages. Upon initial contact with the Haitians, they begin to taunt you and yell racial slurs. What is your response? (PATROLLING, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: No hostile intent or hostile act has been exhibited. Therefore, deadly force is not authorized. An appropriate response to the situation might include, first, avoiding any altercations with the Haitian locals. Should their conduct interfere with your mission, use necessary and appropriate force to accomplish your mission. Such lesser methods of force might include an order to disperse the group and/or the use of a warning.

OOTW #130: Same situation as above, however, this time the group of men have begun to encircle your platoon. How do you react to this situation? (PATROLLING, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: Still no hostile intent or hostile act has been exhibited. Therefore, deadly force is still not authorized. An appropriate response to the situation might include breaking any contact with the locals and accelerating out of the area. If necessary, give an order to disperse or warn the locals of the consequences of their actions. Should their conduct continue to interfere with your mission you may use necessary and appropriate force to detain the Haitians, as such action is permissible against any person or group interfering with your missions. Always make sure to document and account for the individuals being detained.

OOTW #131: Same situation as above, however, now the group of men has become very angry with you and begins throwing rocks, bottles, and sticks taken from the surrounding environment. How do you respond? (PATROLLING, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)
SOLUTION: Absent any evidence that you or any members of your patrol are in danger of immediate harm by the acts of the local Haitians, this situation falls short of constituting hostile intent or a hostile act. Under these conditions, the use of deadly force is not authorized. Use only the amount of force needed to protect lives/property and accomplish the mission. If the bottles and rocks are such that self-defense is necessary, and the acts rise to the level of hostile intent/acts, use the necessary and appropriate force (to include deadly force) to accomplish the mission. At all times, you may stop, disarm, and detain persons who interfere with your mission. If necessary take such persons into your custody and evacuate the detains to a designated location for release to proper authorities. Treat all detainees humanely, making sure to document and account for the individuals being detained.

OOTW #132: Your platoon has been ordered to apprehend a leader of a local violent gang. The leader is accused of having personally ordered the deaths of several Aristide backers. Upon approaching the front entrance of the house, you encounter a woman who angrily tells you to leave her property as she swings wildly with a broom in your general direction. What should you do? (UNARMED HOSTILE ELEMENTS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: Your mission is to apprehend the criminal living within the house. Use the necessary and appropriate force to stop and disarm. In addition, detain the person who is interfering with your mission. If necessary, take this person into your custody and evacuate the detainee to a designated location until your mission has been completed, later releasing the detainee to proper authorities. Remember to treat the detainees humanely while documenting and accounting for their whereabouts.

OOTW #133: You have now disarmed and detained the angry women and placed her into a designated location where she will be kept out of your way. As you approach the house, an unknown person dashes out the back door in what appears to be an attempted escape. What should you do? (APPREHENSION)

SOLUTION: This person should not be allowed to escape. Pursue the individual and shout warnings, (i.e., "Stop or I'll shoot!" or "Kanpe oubien map fire!") showing your weapon, or firing a warning shot. Use all means available
to stop and detain the individuals short of deadly force. When the individual has been detained, follow the previously outlined procedures for holding a detainee.

**OOTW #134:** Same situation as above, however upon reaching the house your platoon begins to receive sniper fire from a window in the house. What should you do? (SNIPER, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

**SOLUTION:** This is a hostile act. The use of deadly force is authorized. Engage the target with observed, direct, and deliberately aimed fire. Shoot to kill, not wound. Return deliberate suppressive fire.

As always, these vignettes are examples only and any "solution" is subject to debate. The purpose of these vignettes is to provide a starting point for judge advocates in building scenario training.

**OOTW #135:** As a Battalion Task Force Commander you have been given the mission to provide convoy escort as needed to various UN recognized relief agencies operating in Bosnia and Herzegovina. Although the UNPP has been signed by the leaders of the three (3) warring factions, many rebellious splinter groups and bandits continue to harass the humanitarian relief efforts. In addition, under the UNPP, the regular forces of the warring factions have the authority to operate checkpoints at the borders of and within their respective provinces; however, they may only stop UN convoys to identify the parties--they may not search UN vehicles or U.S. escort vehicles. (CONVOY OPS, CHECKPOINTS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

**OOTW #136:** Outline how your Task Force will accomplish this convoy escort mission given the ROE in effect, the requirement to pass through lawful check points run by the regular forces, the threat of raids by hostile forces, and the likelihood of unauthorized check points. Make assumptions as necessary and appropriate.

**SPECIFICALLY ADDRESS:**
- Size, makeup, and deployment of force to provide convoy escorts.
- Further restriction on Division ROE, if any. Define the measures of success for a convoy escort mission.
- Your command guidance for convoy escort commanders who encounter resistance at checkpoints.
Address all relevant considerations and application of Division ROE in the following related scenarios:

**OOTW #137-139:** You have given one of your units the mission of escorting a UNHCR aid convoy to a Muslim enclave that had been under siege for a number of months prior to the deployment of U.S. forces. The convoy encounters a checkpoint manned by Bosnian Croat regulars IAW the UNPP whose commander demands to search all convoy and escort vehicles prior to passage. (FORCE TO PROTECT NGO’s/PVOs, CONVOY OPS, CHECKPOINTS)

**OOTW #137:** What should your escort commander do?

**OOTW #138:** If all else fails, may he resort to force to "run" the checkpoint? Should he? Why or why not? Assume the escort commander has contacted you for guidance--what do you advise and what factors influence your decision?

**OOTW #139:** What should your escort commander do if the UNHCR civilian head demands that he be allowed to negotiate with the Croat checkpoint commander?

**OOTW #140-142:** Your escort commander is in the middle of negotiating his right to pass without inspection. In assessing the situation he notes that the Croats have a fortified bunker, with anti-armor weapons visible, strategically located about 50 meters from the checkpoint. How should U.S. soldiers respond under the Division ROE, if during the negotiations: (CONVOY OPS, CHECKPOINTS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

**OOTW #140:** The Croats bring up two vehicles mounted with recoilless rifles, which they train on the lead M2A2.

**OOTW #141:** A Croat in the fortified bunker is seen loading a 44mm anti-tank grenade on his M-57 grenade launcher and aiming at the lead vehicle.

**OOTW #142:** A Croat soldier charges his AK-47 and aims it at the escort commander when the commander raises his voice in anger and waives his arms during heated negotiations.

**OOTW #143-144:** Assume the Theater Commander has directed that a 15 person CBS news team, led by their evening news
anchor man on special assignment, be allowed to film, interview, and report from some of our U.S. checkpoints. They arrived with a public affairs officer at the checkpoint described in the "situation" paragraph above and they intend to stay for about 20 hours. (MEDIA RELATIONS, CHECKPOINTS)

OOTW #143: What guidance do you give your checkpoint commander concerning what controls, if any, he should put on this media crew to ensure no interference with the assigned mission?

OOTW #144: Assume a fire fight erupts at the check point and several camera men disobey the orders of the check point commander to stay in place in order to gain a better camera advantage. What immediate steps, should the commander take?

OOTW #145: One day after arrival into your Task Force Assembly Area you receive the mission to establish a checkpoint NLT 48 hours from now at the intersection of two gravel secondary roads, vicinity of Grid AB123456. Your mission at the checkpoint is to establish the identification of all persons using the roads and to stop the unauthorized transporting of weapons between hostile factions. A reconnaissance of the road junction for the last 24 hours reflects that the road is being used by: civilians on foot, in horse/oxen carts, and in POVs and commercial vehicles. At least three lightly armored, tracked vehicles, believed to belong to irregular forces operating in your area have also passed. Current Division ROE are in effect. (CHECKPOINTS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

Outline how your Task Force will accomplish this mission given the ROE in effect, the terrain, and the limited intelligence. Make assumptions as necessary and appropriate.

Specifically Address:

- Size, makeup, and deployment of force to run a checkpoint.
- Stop and search procedures for persons and vehicles.
- Plans for reinforcements and counter attacks.
- Use of indirect fire weapon, and CAS.
- How you will conduct rehearsals for this operation.
- Any issues you need guidance on from higher headquarters.

OOTW #146-148: Two weeks after establishing the checkpoint a convoy of vehicles driven and occupied by Bosnian Serb Regulars approaches the checkpoint. All soldiers are carrying personal weapons. Two vehicles have mounted and manned automatic weapons. The Serbian officer in charge says he is simply taking his men to link up with his parent unit to return to their assigned province IAW the UNPP; however, he refuses to submit his vehicles for search before proceeding through the checkpoint. Your unit on the ground has intelligence of continued fighting between some Serbian forces and Muslims in an area 30 km on the other side of the checkpoint. (CHECKPOINTS, CONVOY OPS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

OOTW #146: What should your officer in charge do at this point?

OOTW #147: What should he do if the Serbian soldiers manning the mounted automated weapons make preparatory movements to ready weapons for fire?

OOTW #148: What should your soldiers do if one Serbian soldier, who had wandered 10 meters away from his vehicle to urinate, pulls out a small caliber pistol and fires a shot in the direction of one of our fortified crew served weapons. No other Serbs make any effort to fire.

OOTW #149-151: Your checkpoint has been operating for three weeks. A group of 25 women, children and elderly men approach both on foot and with ox driven carts. About 300 meters out the group is confronted by a band of armed irregulars who emerged from the treeline. There is shouting between the lead irregular and the woman at the head of the group of refugees. (CHECKPOINTS, FORCE TO PROTECT OTHERS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

OOTW #149: What, if anything, should your forces do at this point?

OOTW #150: What should your forces do if the lead irregular simply seizes a basket of food from the woman and retreats to the wood line?

OOTW #151: What if the lead irregular shoots the woman?
OOTW #152-153: Assume the Theater Commander has directed that a 15-person CBS news team led by their evening news anchor man on special assignment be allowed to film, interview, and report from some of our U.S. checkpoints. They arrive with a public affairs officer at the checkpoint described in the "situation" paragraph above; they intend to stay for about 20 hours. (CHECKPOINTS, MEDIA RELATIONS)

OOTW #152: What guidance do you give your checkpoint commander concerning what controls, if any, he should put on this media crew to ensure no interference with the assigned mission?

OOTW #153: Assume a firefight erupts at the checkpoint and several cameramen disobey the orders of the checkpoint commander to stay in place in order to gain a better camera advantage. What immediate steps should the commander take?

Note: Normally, scenarios should be based on specific ROE established by a command for a particular operation. Complete ROE for Operations RESTORE HOPE and CONTINUE HOPE are not itemized in this newsletter because ROE are for internal use within a command rather than external consumption by potential antagonists (although antagonists may figure out the gray areas of ROE over time). These scenarios reflect a common-sense approach to typical situations or confrontations that can occur during peacekeeping and peace enforcement missions. They have proven effective in training leaders and soldiers in Somalia.

OOTW #154: While flying a daytime mission over a sparsely populated area, your aircraft receives small arms fire. You see the person who is shooting at you standing in a roadway below. You can easily break contact and move out of danger. Can you engage? (AIR OPS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: Yes. You may return fire and report the incident. The person firing at your aircraft is engaged in a hostile act. However, assess the potential for collateral damage to private property, livestock, or risk of harm to innocent bystanders in the area. The option of simply breaking contact and leaving the area may be the best choice, especially if you have a more urgent post-mission debriefing.
OOTW #155: While flying a night patrol, you see a flash near “Sword Base.” As you fly toward Sword to investigate, you see two individuals approximately 1,000 meters from the base, walking away with an RPG launcher between them. Can you engage? (AIR OPS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT, TARGETING)

SOLUTION: Yes. The RPG is a crew-served weapon and may be engaged without provocation. You do not need to obtain permission from height headquarters to engage the target. You are also required to minimize collateral damage.

OOTW #156: While flying a night patrol, you spot a pickup truck in the city with three men in it (two in the front and one in the back), all dressed in white robes. The truck is not near any coalition base, nor is it moving toward one. It is driving with its lights off. Each occupant is armed with an AK47. Can you engage? (AIR OPS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: No, unless provoked by hostile act or they exhibit hostile intent toward coalition forces. Report the situation by radio and in your post-mission debriefing. (It may be possible for ground forces to go out, stop, question the individuals, and search the vehicle.) This may be a nongovernmental organization (NGO) guard vehicle or the local criminal police, both of which are authorized to carry weapons.

OOTW #157: Same situation as above, except the vehicle is moving from a known militia staging area toward a coalition compound. (AIR OPS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: Report the situation to your operations base. ROE may only allow engagement of this vehicle with the command approval at a certain level (such as the brigade command level). You may be directed to fire warning shots or to use CS or rotor wash to stop or turn back the vehicle. Again, the danger of casualties is high and this could still be a NGO vehicle or the local criminal police. Also, consider the potential danger of your airborne fire to friendly forces or innocent bystanders.

OOTW #158: Same situation as above but you have not received permission to engage the vehicle. As you keep the vehicle under observation, you see it drive near a coalition compound. The vehicle occupants do not raise
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

their weapons, but the course they are on will take them right by the front gate of the compound. Can you engage? (AIR OPS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: No. Continue to observe the vehicle. Train your weapons at the target and be ready to fire the instant the occupants exhibit hostile intent or engage in hostile action toward the compound or your aircraft. Update your reporting.

OOTW #159: Same situation as above. As you continue to track the vehicle, you see the individual in back raise his rifle and point it at the aircraft or you see one of them raise what you conclude to be an RPG in your direction. Can you engage? (AIR OPS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: Yes. The men have exhibited hostile intent, and you can respond with deadly force.

OOTW #160: Your are flying a night patrol when a spotlight is suddenly activated and trained on your aircraft. The spotlight tracks your aircraft as you continue to fly. Can you engage? (AIR OPS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: Yes. The use of a spotlight to track your aircraft is considered hostile intent. Use minimum force to destroy or neutralize the target. A sniper bird would be best for this and would minimize collateral damage.

OOTW #161: Same as above, except that as you circle to engage the target (and before you engage), the spotlight is turned off. However, you can still see the target. Can you engage? (AIR OPS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: Yes. Update your report to your operations base. Consider whether to recommend the use of a ground patrol to recover the light. Also, keep in mind that other coalition forces may have spotlights. The spotlight, having been used in a hostile manner, although turned off, still constitutes a threat. If your decision is to engage the target, bring the sniper aircraft in, if possible, to engage the light - but be certain the crew of the sniper aircraft can positively identify the proper target. Use the minimum force necessary and minimize collateral damage.

OOTW #162: While flying a day patrol, you spot a ZU-23-4 on top of a building. There is no one around the weapon. You
are certain the weapon was not on top of the building the day before. Can you engage? (AIR OPS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: Yes. This is a crew-served weapon and may be engaged without provocation. Normally, you would not need permission from your headquarters to engage this target. However, since no one is manning the weapon, you may choose to report the information to your operations base. A patrol may be sent out to confiscate or demilitarize the weapon or you may be instructed to engage the target to disable the weapon system if there will be little or no collateral damage. In this circumstance, it is the pilot's discretion as to whether to first report or engage the weapon, depending upon the degree of immediate threat to your aircraft, coalition forces or compounds and the likelihood or extent of collateral damage if engaged from the air.

OOTW #163: Same as above, except you are on a night patrol mission and you see five men on and around the ZU-23-4 weapon systems. Can you engage? (AIR OPS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: Yes. In this situation, the weapon system is an immediate threat. The ROE (should) allow immediate engagement as it is a crew-served weapon. Always consider collateral damage and use minimum force to destroy the target.

OOTW #164: While flying a daytime patrol mission, you notice a technical vehicle with a 106mm recoilless rifle about 500 meters from "Hunter Base," in a position that provides a clear field of fire on the base. No one is around the vehicle. Can you engage? (AIR OPS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: Yes. It may be engaged without provocation. However, since it is not being manned, you may want to report the situation to your operations base before engaging to see if a ground force should be sent out to capture it. Again, always consider the possibility of collateral damage if you engage.

OOTW #165: While flying a daytime mission, you receive a radio call from a convoy indicating they have just been ambushed on 21 October Road and have taken casualties. You fly to the area and arrive on station within 90 seconds
after receiving the call. About 300 meters away, you see three males apparently walking away from the ambush site. They all have AK47s. There are no other people near them. Can you engage them? (AIR OPS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT, FORCE TO PROTECT OTHER U.S. FORCES)

SOLUTION: Maybe. Although some Somalis are authorized to carry weapons (e.g., NGO guards and Somali Police), the group of three individuals may be considered organized, armed militia. If the ROE permit you to engage organized, armed militia without provocation, but you are not certain the three men constitute such a group, radio your observation to the convoy leader to see if convoy members can describe or identify the ambushing element. If they cannot confirm the three men as being those (or among those) who ambushed the convoy, report your observation to your operations base for guidance. Try to keep the three men under surveillance until a decision is made whether to engage them.

OOTW #166: Again, you are on guard duty at the front gate of your compound. A large crowd gathers outside the gate. You notice that women and children are at the front of the crowd. Suddenly, you notice armed men in the rear of the crowd pointing weapons in the direction of the compound. Are you authorized to apply deadly force? (CHECKPOINTS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

SOLUTION: Yes. You may use deadly force to defend against this hostile threat. Target those individuals possessing weapons and, to the extent possible, avoid targeting unarmed civilians. If possible, use lesser forms of force, such as shouted warnings, warning shots, or pepper spray, to disperse the crowd, especially the unarmed civilians, before engaging the armed individuals. However, if you do not have time to disperse the crowd or if it is not practical under the circumstances, engage the threat using weapons that will minimize collateral damage to unarmed civilians, such as your individual weapon.

OOTW #167: Still on guard duty at the front gate of your compound, you see a local national, brandishing a knife, rush toward one of your fellow gate guards. Are you authorized to use deadly force to stop him? (CHECKPOINTS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT, FORCE TO PROTECT OTHER U.S. FORCES)
SOLUTION: Yes. This is clearly an act of hostile intent. You may fire at the individual with the knife. The fact that the threatening person is using a knife rather than a firearm does not mean a soldier cannot use his individual weapon. The point to be made here is that if a person exhibits hostile intent, whether it is done with a knife, sword, grenade, or firearm, the U.S. soldier may use his or her weapon to engage and stop the attacker.

OOTW #168:

1a. SITUATION CHECK POINT (CHECKPOINTS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

TASK
Respond to checkpoint confrontation.

CONDITIONS
Your mission is to conduct a foot patrol and secure an area of downtown Glamoc.

a. Elements of a local militia have established checkpoints throughout the city. At one checkpoint the militia angrily confronts your platoon, informing you that they have successfully secured the area. They order your platoon to leave the area. How do you respond?

STANDARDS
(   ) Unit approaches checkpoint
(   ) Recognizes checkpoint is interfering with mission
(   ) Recognizes that only non-deadly force is authorized
(   ) Responds without hesitation
(   ) Utilizes non-forceful options
(   ) Reports to higher
(   ) Seeks guidance from higher
(   ) Requests passage
(   ) Withdraws/avoids
(   ) Utilizes necessary and appropriate non-deadly force
(   ) Orders group to cease and desist
(   ) Calls in reserves
(   ) Shows weapon/challenges
(   ) Disarms and detains if necessary
(   ) Proceeds with mission
(   ) Documents detainees, if any, and reports to proper authorities
(   ) No use of excessive of force
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

Other strategies actually used:

General observations of grader:

TEACHING POINTS:
Necessary and appropriate force is authorized to stop, disarm, or detain hostile personnel who interfere with your mission. Deadly force not authorized if no hostile intent/act. No hostile intent/act if no immediate threat of harm to self/others.

OOTW #169:

1b. SITUATION CHECK POINT  (CHECKPOINTS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

TASK
Respond to a checkpoint confrontation.

CONDITIONS
Same situation, however, the armed militia starts to become more hostile and refuses to leave the area. They inform you that the area is already secure and that your platoon's presence is a breach to security and that it is mandatory for your platoon to surrender their weapons.

STANDARDS
(    ) Unit approaches checkpoint
(    ) Recognizes checkpoint is interfering with mission
(    ) Recognizes that non-deadly force is authorized
(    ) Responds without hesitation
(    ) Utilizes non-forceful options
(    ) Reports to higher
(    ) Seeks guidance from higher
(    ) Requests passage
(    ) Withdraws/avoids
(    ) Utilizes necessary and appropriate non-deadly force
(    ) Orders group to cease and desist
(    ) Calls in reserves
(    ) Shows weapon/challenges
(    ) Disarms and detains if necessary
(    ) Proceeds with mission
(    ) Documents detainees, if any, and reports to proper authorities
(    ) No excessive use of force
Other strategies actually used:

General observations of grader:

**TEACHING POINTS:**
Same as situation 1(a)

**OOTW #170:**

1c. SITUATION CHECK POINT (CHECKPOINTS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

**TASK**
Respond to checkpoint confrontation that has escalated in degree of threat.

**CONDITIONS**
Same situation, however, members of the militia become increasingly belligerent and, upon being told that your platoon will pass through the checkpoint, one militia member abruptly reaches for his weapon. What do you do in this situation?

**STANDARDS**

( ) Unit approaches checkpoint
( ) Recognizes checkpoint is interfering with mission
( ) Recognizes that non-deadly force is authorized upon initial contact; considers/commences appropriate responses, as outlined in 1(a) and (b)
( ) Responds without hesitation
( ) Recognizes that aggressive move for weapon is hostile intent/act
( ) Recognizes that deadly force is authorized
( ) Utilizes warning, if practical (i.e., "SFOR! Stop or I'll shoot," or "SFOR! STANI ILI PUSCAM")
( ) Uses (non-deadly)(deadly) force
( ) If firing, observes target and uses deliberate, directly-aimed fire
( ) Shoots to kill not wound
( ) No use of excessive force

Other strategies actually used:

General observations of grader:
TEACHING POINTS:
Deadly force is authorized in cases of hostile intent/act. Nothing in the ROE prevents you from using self-defense to protect your own life or the lives of others. IMMEDIATELY DOCUMENT WHAT HAPPENED AND REPORT THE INCIDENT.

OOTW #171:

2a. SITUATION CONVOY (CONVOY OPS, UNARMED HOSTILE ELEMENTS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

TASK
React to a large unarmed mob that is approaching your convoy.

CONDITIONS
You are in a convoy traveling through the Glamoc market area. Due to traffic congestion your vehicle must halt. A mob of unarmed individuals is pressing towards your vehicle. You have in your possession, individual weapons, (M16, 9mm), M60, and grenades. How do you respond to this mob?

STANDARDS
( ) Convoy approaches market area
( ) Recognizes mob is interfering with mission
( ) Recognized that non-deadly force is authorized
( ) Responds without hesitation
( ) Utilizes non-forceful options
( ) Reports to higher
( ) Seeks guidance from higher
( ) Withdraws/avoids
( ) Utilizes necessary and appropriate non-deadly force
( ) Orders group to cease and desist
( ) Calls in reserves
( ) Shows weapon/challenges
( ) Proceeds with mission
( ) Accelerates through area if possible
( ) Assumes defensive posture
( ) Fires warning shot
( ) No excessive use of force

Other strategies actually used:

General observations of grader:

TEACHING POINTS:
Deadly force not authorized if there is no hostile intent/act. There is no hostile intent/act when there is no immediate threat of harm to self/others. Communication and coordination is key

**OOTW #172:**

2b. **SITUATION CONVOY (CONVOY OPS, UNARMED HOSTILE ELEMENTS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)**

**TASK**
React to an individual within the mob who poses a potential threat.

**CONDITIONS**
Same situation, however you spot a woman in the mob with a liquid filled glass bottle with a rag stuffed into its neck. The woman continues to hold the bottle at her side but is now raising her other arm, shaking her first and angrily screaming at you.

**STANDARDS**

- Convoy approaches market area
- Recognizes mob approaching vehicle
- Observes woman with bottle
- Recognizes that the bottle with liquid is a potential weapon
- Recognizes that until bottle becomes a weapon, no hostile intent/act
- Recognizes that non-deadly force is authorized
- Utilizes non-forceful options
- Reports to higher
- Seeks guidance from higher
- Shouts warnings/orders
- Withdraws/avoids
- Utilizes necessary and appropriate non-deadly force
- Takes action to inspect/disarm
- Calls in reserves
- Shows weapon
- Proceeds with mission
- Accelerates out of area
- Assumes defensive posture
- No excessive use of force

Other strategies actually used:

General observations of grader:
TEACHING POINTS:
Deadly force is not authorized if there is no hostile intent/act. There is no hostile intent/act when there is no immediate threat of harm to self/others. Communication and coordination are key.

OOTW #173:

2c. SITUATION CONVOY  (CONVOY OPS, UNARMED HOSTILE ELEMENTS, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

TASK
Respond to a deadly force situation within the mob.

CONDITIONS
Same situation, however, the woman now lights a match and prepares to light the rag sticking in the bottle. What force may be used?

STANDARDS
( ) Unit approaches market area
( ) Recognizes the mob is interfering with mission
( ) Recognizes that non-deadly force is authorized upon initial contact; considers/commences appropriate responses, as outlined in 2(a)
( ) Observes woman lighting fuse on bottle
( ) Recognizes that aggressive move is hostile intent/act
( ) Recognizes that deadly force is authorized
( ) Utilizes warning, if practical (i.e., "SFOR! Stop or I'll shoot," or "SFOR! STANI ILI PUSCAM")
( ) Uses (non-deadly)(deadly) force
( ) If firing, observes target and uses deliberate, directly aimed fire
( ) Upon recognition of hostile act, then shoots to kill not wound
( ) No use of excessive force
( ) Documents what happened and reports to higher

Other strategies actually used:

General observations of grader:

TEACHING POINTS:
Deadly force is authorized in cases of hostile intent/act.
Nothing in the ROE prevents you from using self-defense to protect your own life or the lives of others

**OOTW #174:**

3a. SITUATION RESTING PERIMETER (PATROLLING, FORCE TO PROTECT PROPERTY)

**TASK**
Respond to an invasion of your perimeter.

**CONDITIONS**
You are on foot patrol on the suburban outskirts of Mostar. You have set up a tactical perimeter for your platoon to rest. You see a civilian run through the perimeter and grab an M16 from an unsuspecting Marine. What force can you use to recover the weapon?

**STANDARDS**
- (  ) Unit sets up a tactical resting perimeter
- (  ) Observes civilian run through perimeter, responds with non-deadly actions
- (  ) Attempts to warn/order to stop
- (  ) Attempts to tackle, trip, individual
- (  ) Recognizes that taking of inherently dangerous weapon authorizes use of deadly force.
- (  ) Uses (non-deadly)(deadly) force
- (  ) If firing, observes target and uses deliberate, directly-aimed fire
- (  ) Shoots to kill, not wound
- (  ) No excessive use of force

Other strategies actually used:

General observations of grader:

**TEACHING POINTS:**
Deadly force is authorized for recovery of inherently dangerous or mission-essential property. Only the MEU Commander has authority to designate property as mission essential.

**OOTW #175:**

3b. SITUATION RESTING PERIMETER (PATROLLING, FORCE TO OTHER U.S. FORCES, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

TASK
Respond to an attack upon a Marine on the perimeter.

CONDITIONS
Same situation, however, a civilian brandishing a knife rushes toward one of your fellow perimeter guards. What force can your use to stop this act?

STANDARDS
( ) Unit sets up a tactical resting perimeter
( ) Observes civilian rush forward with knife
( ) Recognizes hostile intent/act
( ) Recognizes that deadly force is authorized
( ) Considers non-deadly force options if it does not endanger lives of fellow Marines
( ) Warning/order
( ) Show weapon
( ) Uses (non-deadly) (deadly) force
( ) If firing, observes target and uses deliberate, directly-aimed fire
( ) Shoots to kill, not wound
( ) No excessive use of force
( ) Document and report

Other strategies actually used:

General observations of grader:

TEACHING POINTS:
Deadly force is authorized in cases of hostile intent/act. Nothing in the ROE prevents you from using self-defense to protect your own life or the lives of others.

OOTW #176:

3c. SITUATION RESTING PERIMETER (PATROLLING, FORCE TO PROTECT OTHER U.S. FORCES, FORCE TO PROTECT PROPERTY, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

TASK
Respond to an invasion of your perimeter.

CONDITIONS
Same situation however, a civilian runs up to your fellow perimeter guard, grabs an item his personal property and runs away. What force can you use to stop him as he runs away?
STANDARDS
( ) Unit sets up a tactical resting perimeter
( ) Observes civilian stealing personal property
( ) Recognizes no hostile intent/act exhibited
( ) Recognizes that non-deadly force is authorized
( ) Issues warning/order
( ) Shows weapon
( ) Attempts to tackle/trip individual
( ) No excessive force
( ) Avoids endangering lives of fellow Marines during recovery

Other strategies actually used:

General observations of grader:

TEACHING POINTS:
No hostile intent/act
No inherently dangerous/mission essential property
No deadly force authorized

OOTW #177:

4a. SITUATION CRIMINAL ACT AGAINST FELLOW CITIZEN (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT, FORCE TO PROTECT NGOs/PVOs)

TASK
Your mission is to protect the welfare of humanitarian relief workers

CONDITIONS
You are a Marine deployed to Mostar, Bosnia-Herzegovina. Your mission includes the protection of a food distribution site and Red Cross Aid site. Three armed Serbians go through the food line at the food distribution site. They become increasingly hostile and verbally threaten the relief workers in order to obtain more food.

STANDARDS
( ) Unit establishes proper security procedures for food distribution/Red Cross site
( ) Recognizes that three armed Serbians are interfering with mission
( ) Recognizes that no hostile intent/act is exhibited
( ) Recognizes that non-deadly force is authorized
( ) Utilizes non-forceful options
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

(    ) Reports to higher
(    ) Seeks guidance from higher
(    ) Utilizes necessary and appropriate non-deadly force
(    ) Orders to cease and desist
(    ) Show weapon
(    ) Disarms and detains
(    ) Documents detainees, if any, and reports to proper authorities
(    ) No excessive use of force

Other strategies actually used:

General observations of grader:

TEACHING POINTS:
No hostile intent/act, therefore no deadly force is authorized. May use necessary and appropriate force to stop, disarm, and detain hostile interference with mission. Always document.

OOTW #178:

4b. SITUATION CRIMINAL ACT AGAINST FELLOW CITIZEN (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT, FORCE TO PROTECT NGOs/PVOs)

TASK
Same as above.

CONDITIONS
Same situation, however, this time the three armed Serbians draw their weapons and point them at the relief workers. What force can you use to stop this act?

STANDARDS

(    ) Unit establishes proper security procedures for food distribution/Red Cross site
(    ) Recognizes that three armed Serbians are interfering with mission
(    ) Recognizes that hostile intent/act is exhibited
(    ) Recognizes that deadly force is authorized
(    ) Uses (non-deadly) (deadly) force
(    ) If firing, observes target and uses deliberate, directly aimed fire
(    ) Shoot to kill/not wound
(    ) Documents detainees, if any, and reports to proper authorities
(    ) No excessive use of force

Other strategies actually used:

General observations of grader:

TEACHING POINTS:
Deadly force is authorized in cases of hostile intent/act. Nothing in the ROE prevents you from using self-defense to protect your own life or the lives of others.

OOTW #179:

4c. SITUATION CRIMINAL ACT AGAINST FELLOW CITIZEN (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT, FORCE TO PROPERTY)

TASK
Same as 4(a).

CONDITIONS
Same as situation, however an unarmed Serbian steals a carton of food from the Red Cross storage area and begins running away. What force can you use to stop this act.

STANDARDS
(    ) Unit sets up a tactical resting perimeter
(    ) Observes unarmed civilian stealing carton of food
(    ) Recognizes no hostile intent/act exhibited
(    ) Recognizes that non-deadly force is authorized
(    ) Utilizes non-deadly force options
(    ) Issues warning/order
(    ) Shows weapon
(    ) Attempts to tackle/trip individual
(    ) No excessive force
(    ) Avoids endangering lives of fellow Marines during recovery

Other strategies actually used:

General observations of grader:

TEACHING POINTS:
No hostile intent/act
No inherently dangerous/mission essential property
No deadly force authorized

OOTW #180:
5a. SITUATION CIVILIAN PROVOCATION (PATROLLING, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

TASK
Respond to a confrontation by local civilians.

CONDITIONS
You are on a foot patrol in the suburb of Mostar when you encounter a group of Serbian men who appear to have been drinking alcoholic beverages. Upon initial contact with the Serbians they begin to taunt you and yell racial slurs.

STANDARDS
(    ) Unit approaches group of Serbians
(    ) Recognizes Serbians are not interfering with mission
(    ) Recognizes that no hostile intent/act exhibited
(    ) Responds without hesitation
(    ) Utilizes non-forceful options
(    ) Reports to higher
(    ) Seeks guidance from higher
(    ) Withdraws/avoids
(    ) Utilizes necessary and appropriate non-deadly force
(    ) Proceeds with mission
(    ) No excessive use of force

Other strategies actually used:

General observations of grader:

TEACHING POINTS:
Deadly force is not authorized if there is no hostile intent/act. There is no hostile intent/act if there is no immediate threat of harm to self/others.

OOTW #181:

5b. SITUATION CIVILIAN PROVOCATION (PATROLLING, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

TASK
React to a threat by local civilians.

CONDITIONS
Same situation, however, this time the group of men have begun to encircle your platoon.
STANDARDS
(    ) Unit approaches group of Serbians
(    ) Recognizes that Serbians are interfering with mission
(    ) Recognizes that non-deadly force is authorized
(    ) Responds without hesitation
(    ) Utilizes non-forceful options
(    ) Reports to higher
(    ) Seeks guidance from higher
(    ) Requests passage
(    ) Withdraws/avoids
(    ) Utilizes necessary and appropriate non-deadly force
(    ) Orders to cease and desist
(    ) Disarms and detains
(    ) Proceeds with mission
(    ) Assumes defensive posture
(    ) Documents detainees and reports to proper authorities
(    ) No excessive use of force

Other strategies actually used:

General observations of grader:

TEACHING POINTS:
Necessary and appropriate force is authorized to stop, disarm, or detain hostile personnel who interfere with mission. Deadly force is not authorized if there is no hostile intent/act. There is no hostile intent/act if there is no immediate threat of harm to self/others.

OOTW #182:

5c. SITUATION CIVILIAN PROVOCATION (PATROLLING, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

TASK
React to a hostile confrontation with civilians.

CONDITIONS
Same situation; however, now the group of men have become very angry with you and begin throwing rocks, bottles, and sticks taken from the surrounding environment.

STANDARDS
(    ) Unit approaches Serbians
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

( ) Recognizes Serbians are interfering with mission
( ) Recognized that non-deadly force is authorized
( ) Responds without hesitation
( ) Utilizes non-forceful options
( ) Reports to higher
( ) Seeks guidance from higher
( ) Withdraws/avoids
( ) Utilizes necessary and appropriate non-deadly force
( ) Orders to cease and desist
( ) Disarms and detains if necessary
( ) Proceeds with mission
( ) Assumes defensive posture
( ) If situation becomes immediate threat to own life, life of others, deadly force is authorized
( ) Force used? (deadly) (non-deadly); deadly force appropriate? (yes) (no)
( ) If detainees, documents and reports to proper authorities
( ) No excessive use of force

Other strategies actually used:

General observations of grader:

TEACHING POINTS:
Necessary and appropriate force is authorized to stop, disarm, or detain hostile personnel who interfere with mission. Deadly force is not authorized if there is no hostile intent/act. There is no hostile intent/act if there is no immediate threat of harm to self/others.

OOTW #183:

6a. SITUATION APPREHENSION OF A CRIMINAL (APPREHENSION, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

TASK
Apprehend a local criminal hiding within a private residence.

CONDITIONS
Your platoon has been ordered to apprehend a leader of a local violent gang. The leader is accused of having personally ordered the deaths of several Milosevic backers. Upon approaching the front entrance of the house you encounter a woman who angrily tells you to leave her
property as she swings wildly with a broom in your general direction. What should you do?

STANDARDS
(    ) Unit approaches house for apprehension
(    ) Unit tactically deploys, covers by fire, and guards rear entrance
(    ) Recognizes woman is interfering with mission
(    ) Recognizes that no hostile intent/act exhibited
(    ) Recognizes that non-deadly force is authorized
(    ) Responds without hesitation
(    ) Utilizes necessary and appropriate non-deadly force
(    ) Orders to cease and desist
(    ) Disarms and detains
(    ) Proceeds with mission
(    ) If detained document and report to proper authorities
(    ) No excessive use of force

Other strategies actually used:

General observations of grader:

TEACHING POINTS:
Necessary and appropriate force is authorized to stop, disarm, or detain hostile personnel who interfere with mission. Deadly force is not authorized if there is no hostile intent/act. There is no hostile intent/act if there is no immediate threat of harm to self/others.

OOTW #184:

6b. SITUATION APPREHENSION OF A CRIMINAL (APPREHENSION)

TASK
Respond to an individual evading apprehension.

CONDITIONS
You have now disarmed and detained the angry women and placed her into a designated location where she will be kept out of your way. As you approach the house, an unknown person dashes out the back door, in what appears to be an attempted escape.

STANDARDS
(    ) Unit approaches house for apprehension
(    ) Recognizes escapee is interfering with mission
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

(    ) Recognizes that no hostile intent/act exhibited
(    ) Recognizes that non-deadly force is authorized
(    ) Responds without hesitation
(    ) Utilizes necessary and appropriate non-deadly force
(    ) Orders to stop
(    ) Tackle, trip or otherwise detain if possible
(    ) Proceeds with mission
(    ) Documents and reports to higher
(    ) If detained document and report to proper authorities
(    ) No excessive use of force

Other strategies actually used:

General observations of grader:

TEACHING POINTS:

Necessary and appropriate force is authorized to stop, disarm, or detain hostile personnel who interfere with mission. Deadly force is not authorized if there is no hostile intent/act. There is no hostile intent/act if there is no immediate threat of harm to self/others.

OOTW #185:

6c. SITUATION APPREHENSION OF A CRIMINAL (APPREHENSION, HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT, SNIPER)

TASK
Respond to sniper fire coming from the private residence.

CONDITIONS
Same situation, however, upon reaching the house your platoon begins to receive sniper fire from a window in the house.

STANDARDS
(    ) Unit approaches house for apprehension
(    ) Receives sniper fire
(    ) Recognizes that hostile intent/act exhibited
(    ) Recognizes that deadly force is authorized
(    ) Responds without hesitation
(    ) Reports to higher
(    ) Utilizes necessary and appropriate force
(    ) Disarms and detains
(    ) Proceeds with mission
(    ) Assumes defensive posture
(    ) Utilizes (non-deadly) (deadly) force
(    ) If firing use direct and deliberately aimed fire
(    ) Shoot to kill not wound
(    ) If detained document and report to proper authorities
(    ) No excessive use of force

Other strategies actually used:

General observations of grader:

TEACHING POINTS:

Deadly force is authorized if there is hostile intent/act. You can always use self-defense to protect lives of self and others.

OOTW #186-189:

I. Soldiers have been given the following ROE card by the BDE SJA. It is tailored for the low intensity conflict on the island of Aragon.

1. Engage only those forces declared hostile by your chain of command or any individual who displays HOSTILE INTENT—that is, any individual who threatens the use of force against any U.S. citizen or soldier. Currently, the Cortinian Liberation Front (CLF) is a hostile force; engage its members on sight without provocation.
2. Use the minimum amount of force necessary to accomplish the mission.
3. Do not engage anyone who has surrendered or is out of battle due to wounds or sickness.
4. Minimize collateral damage to civilians and civilian property.
5. Do not attack churches, shrines, cultural sites, or hospitals unless they are being defended by the enemy.
6. Do not use riot control agents (RCA) unless authorized by your commander.
7. Employ only observed fires. Observed fires are those which can be seen by an observer or by use of an acquisition asset with a target location error of 50 meters or less.

CIVILIANS
1. Treat all Cortinian civilians with dignity and respect.
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

2. Stop and search all unidentified persons in your AO. Detain and disarm any suspicious actor until his status is determined by higher authority. Treat all detainees humanely.
3. Do not intervene in Cortinian on Cortinian violence. Report any such incidents through the chain of command and, if possible, notify Cortinian law enforcement.
4. Stop any vehicle which is attempting to enter your AO. Search the vehicle and its occupants. Require the occupants to furnish proper identification. Only search females with other female soldiers if possible.
5. Do not take property from Cortinian civilians unless authorized by your commander.

OOTW #186: (COLLATERAL DAMAGE)

FROM      TO      TIME      SYNOPSIS

Co A,      BDE     H+___   1st Plt is conducting a linear ambush along an unimproved road
1/325      SJA      leading to Karnas Village to destroy a small element of the CLF that has terrorized and pillaged the Karnas marketplace daily since the arrival of U.S. forces. Co A CDR reports that a rancher has moved his livestock into the pasture beyond 1st Platoon’s ambush; about one-half of the herd is in an area approximately 100 meters beyond the kill zone. The CDR reports that moving the ambush will likely compromise the mission and could jeopardize soldiers at a TCP outside Karnas Village, but he is also concerned about angering the local Cortinian population. The rancher left the area.

Issue: Collateral damage to livestock.

Possible COA: (1) Allowing the ambush is supported by military necessity—the CLF is a hostile force and the TCP outside Karnas is not as well equipped as the infantry platoon to destroy the CLF element. (2) Cautioning against the ambush is supported by the ROE disseminated to the troops, the proportionality of the direct military advantage to be gained from the ambush relative to the property damage, and the importance of maintaining support among the local Cortinians. (3) An alternative COA for the infantry platoon may be available; e.g., moving to reinforce the TCP if supported by METT-T or requesting that soldiers from the TCP clear the livestock.
OOTW #187: (COLLATERAL DAMAGE, APPREHENSION, CLAIMS)

FROM TO TIME SYNOPSIS

Co A, BDE H+__ Same as above, with the following additions.
1/325 SJA

Yesterday, the CLF fired on U.S. soldiers at the Traffic Control Point in the vicinity of Karnas Village. Two men remain with the livestock. Each man is dressed as a rancher, one is carrying a hunting rifle. CO A CDR wants to approach the ranchers for two purposes. First, to detain the suspicious actors during the ambush and, second, to inform the ranchers that any livestock harmed by the U.S. troopers will be subject to compensation by the BDE SJA if the ranchers file a claim.

Issues: Collateral damage to livestock; detaining ranchers; claims.

Possible COA: (1) Collateral Damage. The military necessity is a stronger justification following the “shots fired” at the TCP. Advise SJA DIV of action and request civil affairs assistance to deal with the fallout from killing livestock and detaining civilians. Utilize SOFA provisions, if applicable. (2) Claims. Claims arising out of combat activities are not compensable (AR 27-20). Advise the CDR to refer claims issues to the SJA or civil affairs. (3) Detainees. The commander is following the ROE by stopping the armed ranchers and suspending them if suspicious—their appearance at the ambush site is sufficient. Detainees must be treated humanely. Note: Detaining the civilians may affect the proportionality and military necessity.

OOTW #188: (COLLATERAL DAMAGE)

FROM TO TIME SYNOPSIS

1/325 BDE H+__ 1/325 mission is to secure northern half of FLS NLT ___.
SJA Livestock have wandered onto FLS. BN CDR seeks guidance.

Issue: collateral damage.
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

Possible COA: Clearing the FLS is a military necessity, but the method is important here. Collateral damage can be reduced by chasing the livestock off the FLS instead of shooting them (and dragging them off if assets and time are available).

OOTW #189: (MILITARY JUSTICE)

FROM TO TIME SYNOPSIS

1/325 BDE H+__ A SPC butt-stroked his TEAM LEADER during reconnaissance patrol.

Possible COA: Advise CDRs of available charges; recommend Court-martial.

OOTW #190-193:

I. Soldiers have been given the following ROE card, tailored for mid-intensity conflict.

1. Engage only those forces declared hostile by your chain of command or any individual who displays HOSTILE INTENT, that is, any individual who threatens the use of force against any U.S. citizen or soldier. Currently, the Cortinian Liberation Front (CLF) and the People’s Democratic Republic of Atlantica (PDRA) Army are hostile forces; engage their members on sight without provocation.
2. Use the minimum amount of force necessary to accomplish the mission.
3. Do not engage anyone who has surrendered or is out of battle due to wounds or sickness.
4. Minimize collateral damage to civilians and civilian property.
5. Do not attack churches, shrines, cultural sites, or hospitals unless they are being defended by the enemy.
6. Do not use riot control agents (RCA) unless authorized by your commander.
7. Treat all Cortinian civilians with dignity and respect.
8. Stop and search all unidentified persons in your AO. Detain and disarm any suspicious actor until his status is determined by higher authority. Treat all detainees humanely.
9. Do not intervene in Cortinian-on-Cortinian violence. Report any such incidents through the chain of command and, if possible, notify Cortinian law enforcement.
10. Stop any vehicle attempting to enter your AO. Require the occupants to furnish proper identification. Search the vehicle and its occupants.

11. Do not take property from Cortinian civilians unless authorized by your commander.

12. Do not enter Atlantica without JTF approval.

13. Employ only observed fires. Observed fires are those which can be seen by an observer OR observed by use of an acquisition asset with a target location error of 50 meters of less.

**OOTW #190: (CROSS BORDER OPS, INDIRECT FIRE)**

**FROM TO TIME SYNOPSIS**

1/325 BDE H+__ 1/325 BN CDR reports that MP PLT tasked with establishing TCP 3

SJA in AO HEN has a disabled vehicle with injured soldiers approximately 500 meters inside Atlantica.

1st PLT has an OP that can call for fire. BN CDR reports that BN 81mm mortars can provide support for CO A in order to recover the disabled vehicle and soldiers.

Issue: International border and indirect fire.

Possible COA: (1) Advise DIV SJA that U.S. soldiers have entered Atlantica. (2) Request approval for CO A to enter Atlantica. (3) Request approval to use indirect during the recovery.

**OOTW #191: (EPW HANDLING, AMBUSH)**

**FROM TO TIME SYNOPSIS**

1/325 BDE H+__ A squad from CO A captured two CLF soldiers that were placing trip-wire detonated anti-personnel mines along a stream used by CO A for water resupply. After placing flex-cuffs on the prisoners wrists, the squad was hit with indirect fire. The squad executed the break contact battle drill, releasing the prisoners without removing the flex-cuffs.

Issue: Treatment of Prisoners; handling potential violations of PW treatment under GPW.

Possible COA:
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

OOTW #192: (PROTECTED PLACES)

FROM TO TIME SYNOPSIS

BDE SJA H+ During a meeting with the Mayor of Karnas Village, the BDE CDR was informed that the CLF was using the town church to store fuel and ammunition. The BDE CDR wants to search the church.

Issue: Churches are protected places

Possible COA: Because the church is being used by the enemy

OOTW #193: (CLAIMS, SOFA, HOST NATION LAW)

FROM TO TIME SYNOPSIS

C Co BDE H+ The Company First Sergeant was using the company vehicle and the company trailer to drop off trash at a Cortinian landfill. Use of the landfill had been approved by BDE following a meeting with the local Mayor. While returning from the landfill, the company vehicle collided with a bus. Although no passengers were injured, the bus was destroyed. Many of the passengers claim that the company vehicle was travelling “very fast” and it was “sliding sideways” before it hit the bus. The C Co CDR wants to know what to tell the bus driver. The driver wants compensation for the damage.

Issue:

Possible COA:

OOTW #194: Two V-150 armored cars are spotted heading down a high-speed avenue of approach towards the dock where the ECC is located, can a Cobra gunship immediately engage the two V-150s? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

OOTW #195: While you are patrolling a street in Port au Prince, an unarmed Haitian jumps and blows voodoo dust in your face. What is your response? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

OOTW #196: A truck with two Haitians in it drives by your guard post, fires a couple of rounds from a rifle at you, and then speeds off down a street crowded with civilians.
Can you return fire? With what weapons? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

OOTW #197: You are a Cobra pilot escorting a pair of CH-53D's over Port au Prince when a sniper on top of a school fires his rifle at you. How do you respond? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

OOTW #198: Your fire team is patrolling a street in Port au Prince when an attaché jumps out from behind a car and shoots two of our fire team members. Before you can react, he throws his weapon down and raises his hands in the Air. What do you do? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT, EPW HANDLING/TREATMENT)

OOTW #199: Your squad is blocking a street which is an avenue of approach to the ECC. You spot a mob of 200 Haitians coming at you carrying sticks, rocks, and bottles and chanting "Yankee, Go home". They are 100 yards away. What course of action should you take? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT, UNARMED HOSTILE ELEMENTS)

OOTW #200: You are guarding the ECC which is protected by a fence. A group of Haitians walks up to and starts throwing rocks at you. What do you do? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT, UNARMED HOSTILE ELEMENTS)

OOTW #201: You are a LAV (Light Armored Vehicle) Commander guarding several intersections from your position in a parking lot. A V-150 drives into one of the intersections and stops. The V-150 Commander spots your LAV. He then drops down into the turret which starts traversing in your direction. Can you engage the V-150? What if there are civilians in the intersection? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

OOTW #202: You are a fire team leader leading a patrol through streets of Port au Prince. The whole fire team is armed with the M16A2 rifles and your fire team is at Weapons Condition Three. You do not have a radio. A group of attaches begins firing at you from a rooftop. Can you order your fire team to go to Weapons Condition One and return fire? (WEAPONS CONDITIONS)

OOTW #203: You are the ECC Commander. A group of 100 Haitians begins to approach the ECC. They are armed with sticks and rocks and some are carrying rifles. You have used all lesser means of force up to the use of Riot
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

Control Agents (RCAs). CITF 120 has retained sole authority to grant the use of RCAs. However, you cannot get communications with CJTF 120. Can you authorize the use of RCAs? (RIOT CONTROL AGENT’S)

OOTW #204: You are commanding a convoy composed of two HMMWVs armed with M2 machine guns and two 5-ton trucks carrying U.S. citizens back to the ECC. You are driving down a street in Port au Prince when your path is blocked by a group of Haitians. As soon as you stop, you are surrounded by a mob of Haitians who are yelling, throwing rocks, swinging sticks, and trying to climb up on your vehicles. What do you order the convoy to do? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT, UNARMED HOSTILE ELEMENTS)

OOTW #205: You are a Dragon team leader guarding a high-speed avenue of approach to the ECC; you start taking effective machine gun fire from a group of Haitians in an apartment building 200 meters away. You are armed only with M9 pistols and the Dragon. Can you engage the group with the Dragon? (PROPORTIONALITY)

OOTW #206: You are the Platoon Commander for 1st Platoon, Echo Co. 2/8. Your platoon is engaged in a firefight with a platoon of the Fad'H and you have cornered them in a tree line. They are armed with pistols and M1 Garand rifles. You have a machine gun squad attached and the 60mm mortars are in direct support of your platoon. What Weapons can you use against the Fad'H platoon? (PROPORTIONALITY)

OOTW #207: Your squad is manning a checkpoint in front of the ECC. You observe a group of Haitians in a truck stop in an intersection about 500 meters away. You grab your binoculars to observe them and you see them pulling mortar tubes out of the truck. One of the Haitians points in your direction and the others begin setting up the tubes facing in your direction. You advise your Platoon Commander of the situation and he tells you that based on the Peacetime ROE, you cannot do anything until they fire at you. Is the Platoon commander correct? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

OOTW #208: In the above scenario, when do you perceive that hostile intent is being directed at you? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

OOTW #209: You are the pilot of a CH-53E carrying a group of U.S. citizens to the ECC. While over Port au Prince,
you are taken under effective heavy machine gun fire from a rooftop. Your crew chief is about to return fire when he sees a Red Cross on the rooftop where the fire is coming from. Can your crew chief return fire? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT, PROTECTED PLACES)

OOTW #210: Your fire team and a squad of Haitian soldiers are engaged in a firefight on a street in Port au Prince. The Haitians begin to withdraw down the street and have stopped firing at you. Can you continue to fire at them? (PURSUIT)

OOTW #211: You are a member of the security team at the ECC. Your job is to guard persons entering the ECC before they are searched and while they are being searched. A third-country national is being searched and he is visibly nervous. Suddenly, he pulls a knife but just stands there in a threatening manner. You are the closest person to him and you are 5m away. What do you do? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

OOTW #212: You are the pilot of a CH-53D responding to the reported crash of another CH-53D in the outskirts of Port au Prince. It is unclear what mission the helo was performing before it crashed and whether the helo was shot down or crashed as a result of mechanical problems. You spot the helo burning in a field. You also spot a group of what appears to be Haitians in civilian clothes near the helo. You remember from Intel briefs that attaches wear civilian clothes. Two of them appear to be leaning over an air crewman about 50ft from the helo. Four others are running towards the helo. Your door gunner requests permission to fire at the people as you begin your approach to the LZ, What is your response? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT, UNARMED HOSTILE ELEMENTS)

OOTW #213: You are a sniper stationed on a rooftop in Port au Prince. Your mission is to observe an anti-aircraft gun on another rooftop 500m away. If you see the gunfire at U.S. helicopters or Marines on the ground, you are to kill the gun crew. There have been sporadic firefights between Marines and the Fad'H but things are quiet at the moment. You are surprised to see LtGen Cedras having a conversation on the steps of the building. Can you shoot him? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)
OOTW #214: You are a Cobra pilot escorting a pair of CH-53D's which are going to extract a group of Americans from a soccer field. As the helos circle the LZ on their final approach, you spot a group of attaches who open fire on the American evacuees. No fire is directed at any of the helos. Can you fire on the attaches? (FORCE TO PROTECT OTHERS)

OOTW #215-216: U.S. soldiers are on a routine patrol in the town of Doboj. They come upon a small crowd of angry civilians. These civilians are surrounding a small abandoned building. The civilians set fire to the building and begin cheering.

OOTW #215: What is the proper response by these soldiers? (FORCE TO PROTECT PROPERTY)

SOLUTION: The ROE explicitly states that only certain property may be protected through the use of minimum required force. That property is either “force property” or other “property with special status” that will be specifically identified to any soldier guarding it. Force property is “any military property belonging to friendly forces including personal weapons, weapon systems, classified documents or equipment, and military vehicles, UN vehicles and property, to include real property.” “Property with special status” is property or information which, if lost, would increase the risk of grave injury or death to friendly forces or persons with designated special status. This includes essential public utilities, medical facilities, and other mission-essential structures, facilities, or properties specifically so designated by COMSFOR or other authorized commanders. It also includes areas under the responsibility of friendly forces including property vital to the implementation of the GFAP. The house that the crowd is attacking does not fall into the above categories; therefore, force may not be used against the civilians to prevent its destruction.

OOTW #216: As the soldiers continue to watch the situation develop, they notice a group of two or three men down the street who appear to be beating a man with rocks and pieces of lumber. What should the soldiers do in response to this civilian-on-civilian assault? (FORCE TO PROTECT OTHERS)

SOLUTION: Soldiers may use minimum force against an individual who unlawfully commits or is about to commit an
act which endangers life, or is likely to cause serious bodily harm, in circumstances where there is no other way to prevent the act. In this situation, the soldiers may intervene to protect the life of the man being beaten. They should use the minimum amount of force necessary. The decision to use force in this situation rests with the senior leader present. They should follow the acronym VENS:

- **V**erbal warnings,
- **E**xhibit their weapons,
- use **N**on-lethal means, and
- **S**hoot their weapons as a last resort.

The soldiers should also immediately report the situation up their chain of command and ensure that the local police are notified. The civilians assaulting the man should be detained and turned over to the local police or IPTF as soon as possible.

**OOTW #217-218:** Several U.S. soldiers are on guard duty at the gate to Camp Commanche. Several hours into their shift, they notice four men walking about 500 meters away. Each man is carrying a rifle. The men do not appear to be heading for the gate, but are generally heading toward the camp. They do not appear to pose an immediate threat.

**OOTW #217:** What should the soldiers do? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

**SOLUTION:** The soldiers should report the situation up their chain of command immediately. There is no evidence of any hostile intent from these men; therefore, deadly force is not authorized. Local police officials should be notified immediately and should respond to the situation. SFOR members have no jurisdiction outside of the base camps and these soldiers should not try to detain these men based on this situation. If the men continue toward the camp, the soldiers should anticipate an attack and seek cover if necessary.

**OOTW #218:** The men change course and begin to walk toward the gate. How should the soldiers react at this point? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

**SOLUTION:** Minimum force may be used to prevent the men from carrying weapons within effective range of the base camp if the senior leader present feels this necessary based upon a
perceived threat. The soldiers should use VENS. The soldiers should give verbal warnings to stop and lay down their weapons exhibit their weapons (which may include charging the weapons to display the intent to protect the base camp). If the men do not stop and approach the camp, the soldiers may escalate to the use of Non-lethal means (warning shots) to convince them to stop and put down their weapons. Finally, shoot to kill if the men try to enter the base camp or display any hostile intent or commit a hostile act. U.S. forces should always attempt to use minimum force and prevent unnecessary escalation of the situation. Contact the local authorities immediately in order to have them and the IPTF respond to any situation outside of SFOR-controlled property.

OOTW #219: A Russian staff officer requests U.S. aviation support to transport a Russian pay officer with a large amount of cash to go to a Russian base camp in the Multinational Division-North (MND(N)) area. They are unable to transport him by air themselves and are concerned with sending him on the ground with such a large amount of cash. What should the U.S. unit do? (SUPPORT TO COALITION FORCES

SOLUTION: Use of U.S. equipment in theater by our allies is possible but must be done on a reimbursable basis. Many of the countries involved in SFOR operations have Acquisition and Cross-Servicing Agreements (ACSA) with the United States. These agreements allow for the simplified acquisition and transfer of routine logistic support, supplies, and services between the countries. This allows for much easier mutual support in combined operations with allies. In this case, there is no ACSA with Russia; therefore, any support must be on a strictly reimbursable basis. Any U.S. soldier who receives this type of request, must coordinate with the unit S-4/G-4 and the servicing judge advocate to ensure compliance with U.S. law.

OOTW #220-221: A soldier is conducting a search of personnel at the entry point to Camp Commanche. While searching an individual, he discovers a hunting knife with a blade approximately 5 inches long in a sheath taped to the man’s leg.

OOTW #220: When the knife is discovered, the individual does nothing except to say that he was bringing it on the Camp to trade it for cigarettes, and allows the soldier to
take it from him. What should the soldiers at the gate do? (CONTRABAND)

SOLUTION: The soldier conducting the search should recognize that this knife is contraband and may present a threat to SFOR. He should immediately inform the search point NCOIC. The individual in this case has a knife, but does not appear to present any immediate threat. He continues to cooperate in the search and allows the knife to be confiscated. The individual should be processed in accordance with the SOP for the checkpoint. This will likely consist of taking the individual into custody and turning him/her over to the Military Police for an investigation. No escalation in the use of force is appropriate here despite finding a knife on the individual. Use of verbal warnings is enough to remain in control of the situation.

OOTW #221: When the knife is discovered, the individual reacts by trying to hit the soldier and run away from the camp. What should the soldiers at the gate do? (HOSTILE ACT, UNARMED HOSTILE ELEMENT)

SOLUTION: In this scenario, the individual reacts to the discovery and attempts to injure a U.S. soldier. Use of the minimum necessary force to control the individual and detain him is authorized. The soldiers should use VENS. Issue Verbal warnings to get the person to submit to SFOR control. Exhibiting weapons by security personnel. In this case based upon the individual’s physical reaction, use of non-lethal force is likely and may need to be the immediate response. This may consist of physical force by one or more members of the checkpoint to take the individual into custody. Unless the individual is able to take the knife out of the sheath and lunges at a soldier, actually shooting a weapon is not appropriate in this case.

OOTW #222: A squad of soldiers is on a routine patrol of an area near the Zone of Separation. While moving along a road, they come upon a checkpoint manned by local police officers. What should the squad do? (CHECKPOINTS)

SOLUTION: A “checkpoint” is defined as one or more local police officers who for any length of time remain at a location for the purpose of stopping vehicles/people. All civilian checkpoints must have permits from the IPTF. The squad leader should check to verify if this is an
authorized checkpoint by either looking at the list of IPTF approved checkpoints or calling his higher HQs. All approved checkpoints are included in the daily FRAGO.

a. If the checkpoint is authorized, the squad may do nothing and continue the mission, stop and verify that these police officers have the required permits, or observe the checkpoint from a distance to ensure that it is operating properly (non-discriminatory, no unnecessary restriction of civilian movement, etc.)

b. If the checkpoint is unauthorized, the squad should ensure that their higher headquarters informs the IPTF of the illegal checkpoint before breaking up the checkpoint. Illegal checkpoints will only be removed by certified combat patrols trained for checkpoint removal. These certified patrols will act as necessary in conjunction with the IPTF to remove the illegal checkpoint. If the patrol is not certified, they should simply report the location using a SALUTE report and await further instructions.

**OOTW #223:** A team is conducting a daytime patrol of the perimeter fence for Camp Demi. On the main road next to the camp they see a man taking pictures of the installation in a way that attempts to hide what he is doing. He sees you and begins to run away. What should the soldiers do? (DETENTION/APPREHENSION)

**SOLUTION:** SFOR is authorized to detain any person conducting surveillance or suspicious, repetitive behavior that might indicate surveillance against Multinational Division-North (MND(N)) forces, base camps, and convoys. SFOR is also authorized to confiscate any film from persons conducting unauthorized surveillance. In this case, the soldiers may not be able to detain the individual themselves unless there is a gate nearby. They should immediately report this up their chain of command. The higher HQ may either send SFOR troops to apprehend the individual or get the assistance of the local police/IPTF.

**OOTW #224-226:** A squad had established a routine SFOR-directed checkpoint on a road just west of Brcko. The checkpoint has been operating smoothly with no signs of any threat to the soldiers.

**OOTW #224:** A sedan with license plate 15 - A - 002 approaches the checkpoint. The driver states that the
occupants have important business to conduct and must be
allowed to proceed immediately. What should the soldier
do? (CHECKPOINTS)

SOLUTION: In this scenario, the soldier should quickly
verify their identification and if valid, they should be
allowed to proceed without any search or other delay.
There are many different types of identification for the
various organizations in BiH (Bosnia-Herzegovina) which SFOR
soldiers must know. One of the most readily identifiable
markings on vehicles is the letter "A" in the middle of the
license plate. This identifies the vehicle as registered
with the Diplomatic Corps and leads to the assumption that
the passengers are diplomatic personnel. All diplomatic
personnel should also carry a diplomatic passport or other
diplomatic identification. SFOR soldiers should expedite
the passage of all diplomats after confirming their
identity. Do not search diplomatic personnel unless there
is clear evidence of unauthorized arms or ammunition, clear
evidence of commission of a serious crime, or you have good
reason to suspect that their license or identification
documents are counterfeit, etc. Suspected misconduct
should be reported and the person allowed to proceed unless
there is a threat to force protection.

OOTW #225: Another sedan approaches the checkpoint
containing four men. They are all in military uniforms and
all have pistols in holsters on their belts. The driver
informs the soldier that the occupants are Brigadier
General Josef Slobodon, Commander of V Corps, Army of
Bosnia and Herzegovina and presents a Commander’s ZOS
permit. What should the soldier do? (CHECKPOINTS)

SOLUTION: A faction commander’s ZOS permit authorizes
commanders and their body guards (up to three) to carry
side arms while on SFOR business, to include in the ZOS.
These persons will not be searched unless there is some
suspicious activity that warrants a search.

OOTW #226: At the same SFOR checkpoint as above, a man
dressed in civilian clothes drives up and presents his
identification. The soldier recognizes this individual
from the poster of Persons Indicted for War Crimes (PIFWCs)
that had been distributed to the squad the day prior. What
should the soldier do? (PERSONS INDICTED FOR WAR CRIMES)
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

SOLUTION: When the soldier identifies someone he feels is a PIFWC, he should immediately contact his supervisor without unduly alerting the individual. SFOR policy is to detain PIFWCs encountered in the execution of normally assigned duties, but not to search for them. The checkpoint should immediately notify higher headquarters. The MSC commander will decide whether to attempt detention. At all times, the soldiers will follow the rules of engagement and exercise prudent military judgment. The Commander, MND(N) will contact COMSFOR (Commander, Stabilization Forces), who will decide whether to detain or release the individual. At no time will any soldiers question the person. As soon as practicable after they are detained, they must be read their rights as printed in the JMC Handbook.

OOTW #227: While on a patrol near Camp Comanche, a squad sees a band of four men in civilian clothes carrying rifles. These men are walking in a clearing approximately 200 meters down the road. This is a relatively remote area. These men do not seem to pose any threat to the U.S. soldiers. When they see the patrol, they just continue walking towards a wooded area. What should the soldiers do? (CONTRABAND)

SOLUTION: All persons carrying weapons in BiH must have a valid permit. SFOR commanders may confiscate unauthorized weapons. Under the GFAP (General Framework Agreement for Peace) and subsequent agreements, armed civilian groups will be disarmed and disbanded. The Vienna Agreement (which is a later agreement that supplements the GFAP) defines an armed civilian group as “any group of 3 or more armed persons not wearing uniforms.” U.S. policy, however, is that the on-scene commander may decide whether the group needs to be disbanded. In this situation (which is not within the ZOS (Zone of Separation)), the senior person may stop the group and require the men to show their identification and weapons permits. If they have all the required documents, the senior soldier may determine that they are not a threat, (e.g., a hunting party), and allow them to proceed without disarming or disbanding them. If they do not have the required permits or use the weapons in a threatening or negligent manner, the weapons should be confiscated and a report must be made to your higher headquarters describing the incident.

OOTW #228: While examining a possible UXO on the roadside, a rapidly approaching truck swerves toward two of your
soldiers. The soldiers dive out of the way and are not hurt. The truck speeds down the road past the last of your vehicles. How do you respond? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

OOTW #229: While on patrol in the countryside, your squad takes a single burst of fire from an AK-47. Your soldiers can identify the section of bushes from where the fire came, but cannot see the person or weapon. How do you respond? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT)

OOTW #230: While guarding a radio tower during the Task Force Commander’s radio show, your soldiers start getting harassed— but not threatened— by some locals. One of the locals grabs a loaded magazine and runs away. How do you respond? (HOSTILE INTENT/HOSTILE ACT, FORCE TO PROTECT PROPERTY)

NOTE: DO NOT RELY ON THE SOLUTIONS ACCOMPANYING THESE VIGNETTES. The vignettes and solutions above were devised by various Judge Advocates and units to meet their specific needs. Their inclusion does not constitute endorsement. Their facts and solutions may not be appropriate under the JCS SROE, your ROE or to your mission and situation. Vignettes and their solutions should always be tailored to the applicable situation, mission and rules of engagement.
LOW VIGNETTES

LOW #1: You as company/troop/battery commander have received a command from the Battalion Commander to retake a certain German Village, where anti-NATO villagers are believed to be hiding a few of the enemy. The command is to flush out the few hidden enemy and destroy the village so that the villagers will be taught a lesson. What do you do? (PROTECTED PERSONS/PLACES, NONCOMBATANTS)

LOW #2: Private Jones tells you that he saw three of your troops gang rape one of the village girls while they were going through a newly occupied village. What do you do? (WAR CRIMES)

LOW #3: While bringing some POWs back to the rear, you encounter a gas attack. Your best platoon sergeant discovers that his gas mask is malfunctioning. He takes one of the POWs' gas masks for his own use. What do you do now? Would it make any difference if the PW was exposed to the gas once his mask was taken? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #4: Your unit has captured 20 enemy soldiers. It will be at least 36 hours before you can transfer the POWs to the battalion detainment facility. Two of the POWs have attempted to escape but were subsequently recaptured. You will not tolerate any further attempts to escape. As punishment and as a deterrent you are considering an order that the entire contingent of POWs have their rations reduced to bread and water until they are sent to rear PW camps. Are you authorized to do this? Why? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #5: Two of your platoons stumbled upon a large enemy stockpile of ammunition, weapons, grenades, and medical supplies hidden in a barn. They suggest that you take what can be used and destroy the rest. What do you tell them? (CAPTURED PROPERTY)

LOW #6: Your company/troop/battery, while in NBC gear, along with two POWs, enters a town where you see several dead bodies. However, there are live animals in the area. You suspect biological agents. Can you direct one of the POWs to remove his mask and see if the area is now clear? (BIOLOGICAL WEAPONS)
LOW #7: Chemical agents have not been employed by enemy forces. Your company has occupied a deserted village where you find a large stockpile of chemical agents. Due to an enemy armored column approaching, you must withdraw. Can you booby-trap or destroy the agents? (CHEMICAL WEAPONS, BOOBY TRAPS)

LOW #8: Enemy soldiers have been engaged in battle and a number of enemy casualties have been left behind. A couple of your soldiers quickly search enemy bodies for valuables and obtain money, watches, rings, wallets, and other items which they place in their own gear. Is this a violation of the law of war? What do you do? What happens to the soldiers? (WAR CRIMES, HORS DE COMBAT)

LOW #9: Several planeloads of enemy paratroopers are dropped over your area and one of the aircraft is also shot down. One of the paratroopers gets hung in a tree and has lost his weapon in the process. Can you fire on him? (PARATROOPERS, HORS DE COMBAT)

LOW #10: You are treating a critically wounded NATO soldier who has a rare blood type and needs a blood transfusion. It has come to your attention that a PW has that particular blood type. Can you take the necessary blood from that PW? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #11: POWs are captured and brought back to the CP. One of them attempts to escape, is unarmed, and is shot and killed while running. What measures should the commander take? (EPW TREATMENT, ESCAPE)

LOW #12: A young boy, 11 or 12 years old, and an old man are seen by your platoon to be changing the direction of road signs and cutting underground cables. They appear to be working for the enemy. The platoon leader directed that they be fired upon, as a warning, and then captured and detained. Did he act lawfully? (NONCOMBATANTS, UNARMED HOSTILE ELEMENTS)

LOW #13: Your unit has approached a small town in enemy territory. This town contains a church with a high steeple. Your forward platoon observes that an enemy artillery observation post is located in the steeple and is responsible for directing fire on your unit. To the best of your knowledge, no other enemy soldiers occupy this
otherwise peaceful town. You are under pressure to remove
the observation post and move on into enemy territory. Can
you direct artillery fire on the church and kill the enemy
forward observer?  (PROTECTED PLACES, PROPORTIONALITY)

**LOW #14:** Your unit is moving forward on the battlefield.
One of your men discovers an abandoned wagon and requests
that he be allowed to retain in his possession a small
religious icon found in the wagon. Can he keep it?  (FOUND
PROPERTY)

**LOW #15:** Your unit has been using tracked vehicles to make
rapid movements toward the flank of the enemy. You capture
several enemy soldiers during your advance. Several of
your tracks break down. Your track crews cannot get them
in running condition without extra help. Two disgruntled
enemy POWs (who you have not been able to return to the
rear detention camps) volunteer to assist your crews. Must
you refuse their assistance because their work would
clearly be of a military nature?  (EPW TREATMENT)

**LOW #16:** An enemy column with civilians located in front
and on the flanks is approaching a command-detonated mine
position. It is your job to explode it. What do you do?  
(PROTECTED PERSONS)

**LOW #17:** You are on patrol with your squad. You engage in
a short firefight with the enemy. You capture a wounded
enemy soldier and begin to treat his wounds. Your squad
leader demands that you move on with the patrol. You
protest. The squad leader shoots the PW before you can
intervene. While pointing the weapon in your direction,
the squad leader orders you to move on with the other men.
What are your responsibilities at this point, and what are
you to do?  (EPW TREATMENT, WAR CRIMES)

**LOW #18:** Your company has captured 15 enemy soldiers.
Before you are able to send them to rear detention camps,
you receive a message from higher headquarters to move
these prisoners to a point in your unit's area of control
and effect an exchange of these POWs for three of our men
who were recently captured. You inform your POWs of your
orders. Two of the men protest and request asylum. What
are your actions?  (EPW TREATMENT)

**LOW #19:** Your company overruns an enemy military supply
depot. You find that they have a supply of bacteriological
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

weapons stored there. Bacteriological weapons were used against your side several weeks ago, but you could not retaliate in kind because you had no bacteriological weapons of your own. Now that the enemy has made first use of such weapons, can you now use them in retaliation? (BIOLOGICAL WEAPONS, REPRISAL)

LOW #20: Your company has occupied a village, which contains an enemy military hospital. One of your platoon leaders took an ambulance from the hospital, partially obscured its protective Red Cross emblem with mud, and used the vehicle to carry out a reconnoitering mission. The First Sergeant brings this to your attention and asks if the platoon leader's actions were proper. What is your answer? (PROTECTIVE SYMBOLS)

LOW #21: Your company has captured 10 enemy soldiers. A message is sent to your unit to move forward without delay. Your company has lost 30% of its personnel. You need every able man to carry out your mission. Your XO suggests that to conserve manpower, you should order your men to bind and gag the POWs, remove their shoes, dispose of the bolts to their weapons, and leave the POWs behind. What is your response? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #22: Your unit has captured several enemy soldiers. You order your First Sergeant to bind their hands and clearly warn them that any attempts to escape will result in the use of deadly force without any further warning. Your First Sergeant asks if he should instruct the guards to this effect. What do you tell him? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #23: An infantry platoon leader has been shot in the back by an unknown enemy civilian in an undefended town. Members of the platoon have rounded up four civilians from the apartment building where the shots came from. They request authority to shoot all four in retaliation for the murder of their commander. They also want to burn down the house. Respond to the situation. (PROTECTED PERSONS)

LOW #24: Proposal is to use 20 POWs to detect and remove land mines. How do you respond? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #25: Civilians suspected of hostile or war-like acts against the U.S. Army have been taken prisoner. Your company commander reports that a patrol has been ambushed by approximately 20 uniformed personnel using small arms
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

and a RPG. Fire was returned and 5 personnel were killed. Ten individuals have been captured and the remainder managed to escape. Request disposition instructions as to the captured personnel. (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #26: Your unit is receiving fire from the enemy, and they are using unarmed civilian women as shields. Can you fire back knowing that you will be killing unarmed civilian women? (PROTECTED PERSONS)

LOW #27: Your unit has been ordered to move from the hill that you have been defending and to take up a new defensive position along a ridge overlooking a known enemy resupply point. You begin to move into the area when you suddenly encounter three wounded enemy soldiers who immediately surrender. Their injuries are extensive and you cannot complete your mission and care for the prisoners at the same time. Can you kill the prisoners to ensure accomplishment of your mission? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #28: Your First Sergeant has ordered you to take a prisoner of war on patrol, dressed as an American soldier. You are instructed that he will be the point man, but is not to be given a weapon. What should you do? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #29: You have been assigned as the NCOIC/CO of a prisoner of war compound. Are your prisoners entitled to receive mail? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #30: Must a prisoner of war be fed on a daily basis? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #31: You have been captured by the enemy. As an American soldier, are you required to tell your captors your name, rank, service number and unit location? (CODE OF CONDUCT)

LOW #32: Is it permissible to circumvent the prohibitions of the Hague and Geneva Conventions by turning prisoners of war over to the allies? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #33: Your commander orders you to poison a well on an abandoned farm, known to be used frequently as an enemy assembly area. Can you obey the order? (NONCOMBATANTS, PROTECTED PLACES)
**LOW #34:** You have just fired upon an enemy soldier who, upon closer examination, appears to be dead. You notice that he is wearing a double identity disc around his neck and has a rifle in his possession. He has no other identification or personal property in his possession, except his uniform. What property may you remove from him? (CONFISCATION OF PERSONAL PROPERTY)

**LOW #35:** You come upon a foxhole and find six enemy corpses which have become badly decomposed during a recent surge of hot weather. Identification tags on the corpses reveal that the dead were all adherents of the Buddhist faith. May you cremate the bodies? (KIA TREATMENT)

**LOW #36:** Your unit has moved into enemy territory, which is rural farming country. There are farm dwellings in the area that your unit presently occupies. Your unit will remain overnight in the farming community and wait for resupply of fuel stocks from rear supply points. Your men have their tents and messing gear. You order your commanders to billet as many personnel as possible in the farm dwellings without expelling family occupants. Farmers protest, contending that such action is confiscation of private property without their consent. You inform the owners that they will be compensated. They still protest. What do you do? (CONFISCATION OF PROPERTY)

**LOW #37:** Your unit has received word from higher headquarters that there is a possibility that enemy forces will employ chemical weapons in your area of operations. You have 30 POWs under your control who have not been able to return to rear detainment camps. Several of your company commanders report that some of their personnel have defective gas masks and request your permission to confiscate enemy PW gas masks to be used by their personnel. What is your response? (EPW TREATMENT)

**LOW #38:** You issue a directive to your subordinate unit commanders that all enemy POWs will be relieved of all military equipment and individual rank. However, POWs will be allowed to retain helmets and gas masks. Is this a problem? (EPW TREATMENT)

**LOW #39:** Your unit presently occupies a small town in enemy territory. Prior to your occupation, artillery was used to soften enemy opposition in the town. As a result, sections of the town water distribution system were damaged. Upon
your occupation, you capture 30 enemy soldiers—2 officers, 6 NCOS, and 22 lower enlisted personnel. You want to use PW labor to repair the water system for the town's populace. May you order all POWs to begin manual repair work under supervision of the town's civilian water works maintenance supervisors? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #40: Your unit has captured 50 POWs. In the past week, your men have had problems with POWs attempting to escape during their transfer to rear detainment camps. You are unable to put a heavy guard on POWs that you transfer to the rear. Furthermore, precious man hours and personnel are consumed in efforts to recapture escaping POWs. Your Sergeant Major urgently suggests that all POWs being transferred to rear camps be required to remove their shoes. The weather is relatively warm. Do you agree? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #41: Your unit has received a load of ammunition, which has been brought up by three trucks. Most of your men are defending the perimeter assigned to you. You have 5 POWs that you have not been able to move to the rear. You want to use the 5 POWs, who are lower enlisted personnel, to unload ammunition trucks. Is this possible? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #42: Your unit has occupied a small town. During the operation to remove enemy forces from the town, your men captured 20 enemy soldiers. You will remain in the town 72 hours and then you must move forward. The town has a civilian confinement facility equivalent to a county jail. This jail contains 50 civilian prisoners and has room for your POWs. You order their temporary detention in this county jail pending their evacuation to a PW camp in the rear. Is this permissible? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #43: Your unit has captured 15 POWs. Your First Sergeant supervises the disarming and search of the POWs. After the POWs are secured, your First Sergeant relates to you that 2 of the POWs are men who successfully escaped two weeks ago after your unit captured them. It will be 48 hours before you can send the POWs to the rear. You decide to punish the POWs whom you have recaptured. What disciplinary action can you take against these two escapees? (EPW TREATMENT)
LOW #44: Your unit has occupied a small town and captured 10 enemy soldiers. All identify themselves as lower enlisted soldiers. One of the POWs refuses to provide his name, rank, and date of birth. The town officials request the use of the PWs/PW labor to restore electricity to their hospital. You order all POWs to assist. The one PW who refused to provide the identity information insists that he is an officer and does not have to work. What do you do? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #45: Your unit is occupying a small town. The Brigade Commander orders you to occupy the town for two weeks. During your occupation, civilians who are angered by the occupation kill three of your men. Accordingly, may you respond by ordering the closing of all entertainment facilities for the time your unit occupies the town? (OCCUPATION, NONCOMBATANTS)

LOW #46: You have a medical treatment tent set up in an area, which enemy troops will soon overrun. You have been told to retreat. However, there are several soldiers in critical condition who cannot tolerate being moved and who may not survive anyway. What do you do? (TREATMENT OF WOUNDED)

LOW #47: Your unit has surrounded an enemy unit for days, trying to force it to surrender. The enemy commander asks you to agree to allow him to take a medical evacuation helicopter flight over your lines. Assuming the 1977 Protocols to the Geneva Conventions are ratified (not yet done) and Article 27 below applies, what is your response? (Article 27 states: The medical aircraft of a party to the conflict shall continue to be protected while flying over land . . . physically controlled by an adverse party, provided that prior agreement to such flights has been obtained from . . . adverse party.) (PROTECTIVE SYMBOLS)

LOW #48: You have received command of an attached mobile medical unit. You know that medical personnel have a right to defend themselves. You think it is a good idea to mount a machine gun on one of your medical vehicles for defense purposes. Can you do this? (MEDICAL PERSONNEL)

LOW #49: Your battalion has been moving rapidly into enemy-held territory. During your advance, your men seized twelve (12) privately owned vehicles, which had been used by the enemy for transportation of soldiers and enemy
military material. You are moving through the town where the owners of these vehicles reside. They approach you, present to you their certificates of title and demand that you return their vehicles or compensate them for their loss. What do you do and why? (CONFISCATION OF PROPERTY)

LOW #50: Vehicles in your unit are running very short on gasoline and diesel fuel. It is imperative that you refuel and move on with your mission. You order your men to requisition needed stocks of fuel from the Flying Horse Oil Company storage depot. The company sends a representative to you as, commander of the area occupied demanding compensation for the fuel stocks requisitioned by your troops. What do you do and why? (CONFISCATION OF PROPERTY)

LOW #51: One of your company commanders informs you that his unit captured a squad of what appears to be enemy soldiers. These men are wearing enemy battle dress, carrying enemy arms, and are demanding treatment as prisoners of war. Several men in this commander's unit state that they believe these particular enemy soldiers are deserters from another battalion in the division. Several of the men of this captured squad were overheard speaking English with a very distinct American accent. Your company commander demands that these men be tried by military courts-martial. What do you do? (EPW TREATMENT, WAR CRIMES)

LOW #52: Your battalion approaches the unoccupied town of Norm, population 3,000, which is located in enemy-held territory. Your mission is to eliminate enemy opposition in Norm and occupy the town. During the battle, your troops capture 15 civilians who were carrying enemy weapons. These civilians were wearing no insignia and apparently had no responsible leader, but had spontaneously taken up arms. There were no reports that these civilians violated the laws of war. They demand treatment as prisoners of war. What is your decision? Why? (EPW TREATMENT, IRREGULAR FORCES)

LOW #53: Your unit has occupied an abandoned residential area. Several company commanders have reported to you that personnel have been injured because of booby traps placed in some of the homes. Your unit captured two enemy soldiers in the act of setting up a booby trap in one of the homes. Your company commanders want to use these two
captured enemy soldiers to assist in the location of other suspected booby traps and require them to dismantle them. What is your response? (EPW TREATMENT)

**LOW #54:** Enemy forces are crossing the river at Objective Alpha. The proposal from your subordinates is to saturate the area with artillery containing proximity fuses (VT). Assuming Part IV Article 51 of the 1977 Protocols to the Geneva Conventions— not yet ratified by the U.S. —is applicable, do you grant or deny this request? Indiscriminate attacks are prohibited. Indiscriminate attacks are: (a) those that are not directed at a specific military objective; or (b) those that employ a method or means of combat which cannot be directed at a specific military objective. (INDISCRIMINATE ATTACKS)

**LOW #55:** You have been informed that you may request artillery fire or call for air strikes if you discover any operational facilities producing ammunition, war materials for enemy forces. Your S2 informs you that there is such a plant in the town of Steelville. This plant is run entirely by civilians under the guard of enemy soldiers. Assuming the provision below, extracted from the 1977 Protocols to the Geneva Conventions which are not yet ratified by the U.S., is applicable, what do you do? Protocol I, Art 51 paragraph 3. Civilians . . . enjoy the protection afforded by this Section, unless . . . they take direct part in hostilities. (PROTECTED PERSONS, NONCOMBATANTS)

**LOW #56:** One of your platoons has surrounded an enemy soldier suffering from a mental problem. He is firing shots at treetops one minute, and then throwing his arms and weapon in a position above his head stating he surrenders. What do you do? Assume the provision below in the 1977 Protocols to the Geneva Convention not yet ratified by the U.S. is applicable: Part 1, Art 41, para 2(C): A person is hors de combat if: (c) he has been rendered unconscious or incapacitated by wounds or sickness, and incapable of defending himself provided . . . these cases he abstains from any hostile act and does not attempt to escape. (EPW TREATMENT)

**LOW #57:** Your S3 is discussing plans to provide a defensive perimeter for night security. He wants to call in helicopter-dropped anti-personnel mines and order H&I fire for nighttime security. Assuming the provision below, in
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

the 1977 Protocols to the Geneva Convention (not yet ratified by the U.S.) is applicable, what do you do? Part IV, Art 51, para 4: Indiscriminate attacks are prohibited. Indiscriminate attacks are (a) those which are not directed at a specific military objective; (b) those which employ as method of combat which cannot be directed at a specific military objective. (INDISCRIMINATE ATTACKS)

LOW #58: To favor your defensive military operations and to protect the town of Dudville, your Brigade Commander has ordered you to evacuate the town of all civilians. Assuming the provision below in the 1977 Protocols to the Geneva Convention is applicable, and not yet ratified by the U.S., what do you do? Part I, Art 51, para 7: The presence or movements of the civilian population or individual civilians shall not be used to render certain points or areas immune from military operations, in particular in attempts to favor or impede military operations. (NONCOMBATANTS)

LOW #59: An enemy armored division is presently one mile from an enemy fuel depot, and two miles from an enemy airfield. You must decide whether to treat these as one or three. Assuming the provision below, in the 1977 Protocols to the Geneva Convention, is applicable, not yet ratified by the U.S., what do you do? Protocol 1, Art 51, para 5a: The following types of attacks are indiscriminate: (a) an attack by bombardment by any method or means which treats as a single military objective a number of clearly separated distinct military objectives . . . located in a town . . . other area containing a similar concentration of civilians . . . (INDISCRIMINATE ATTACKS)

LOW #60: One of your PFCs reports to you that he and two other soldiers were separated from their unit while in enemy territory. They hid in a civilian barn. An enemy vehicle happened to arrive. The two other soldiers decided to grab an elderly woman and a young boy and threaten to kill them if the enemy soldiers did not let them have the vehicle to escape. The PFC did not like the idea but had no choice but to go along. The woman and boy were released once the three soldiers were out of enemy territory. Should this incident be reported? (NONCOMBATANTS)

LOW #61: Ten enemy soldiers have been captured, and upon initial search, it was discovered each was carrying $5,000 in U.S. currency. Can this money be collected and used to
support the U.S. war effort? Can the Staff Sergeant in charge collect the money on his own authority? (EPW TREATMENT, CONFISCATION OF PROPERTY)

LOW #62: A squad of enemy soldiers approaches one of our forward units with white flags and surrenders. They now ask for temporary refuge. Request is made for instructions on what status they should be given and how they should be treated. What do you do? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #63: A forward unit approaches a village displaying "white flags" flying from the buildings. The commander requests permission to fire into the village to ascertain the presence of enemy troops. What is your response? (PROTECTIVE SYMBOLS)

LOW #64: As a Battalion Commander during hostilities, may you impose disciplinary punishment on a PW? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #65: Friendly forces are taking heavy losses from an enemy bombardment. An enemy artillery observation post has been spotted on the tower of a monastery. The monastery contains valuable art treasures. The monastery is listed in an international register for cultural objects that have a special protected status. Can the monastery be attacked? (PROTECTED PLACES)

LOW #66: An infantry company commander has captured an enemy colonel. The prisoner is wounded and in pain. The company commander believes if medical care is presently withheld, but offered in return for information, the colonel will provide valuable intelligence. What is your advice to the company commander? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #67: Your unit, while preparing to cross the River Styx, encounters fire from an enemy gunboat. In the firefight, the gunboat is sunk. Unarmed enemy were shot as they tried to swim to shore. What do you do next? (HORS DE COMBAT)

LOW #68: Two U.S. infantry platoons have infiltrated behind enemy lines. Their mission is to destroy military storage depots. Upon crossing a river, a platoon leader sees a dam, which holds a large reservoir. No military targets lie below the dam. The platoon leader orders the dam blown; 3,000 civilians die from the flooding. A member of
the platoon reports this to the battalion S1. What is your response? (MILITARY NECESSITY, PROTECTED PLACES)

**LOW #69:** An infantry battalion has had 100 enemy soldiers in custody for six hours. U.S. troop strength is diminishing. U.S. counter-attack plans necessitate that a large minefield in the line of attack be cleared. Fifty of the enemy soldiers are well trained to do the mine clearing. Provide instructions to the company commanders regarding the use of enemy POWs to clear mines. (EPW TREATMENT)

**LOW #70:** One of your company/battery/troop commanders points out that you do not have much firepower left and that your right flank is somewhat unprotected. He suggests putting up dummy guns, laying dummy mines, and planting false information near both that suggests that these items are real. Is this a legitimate course of action? (DECEPTION)

**LOW #71:** An enemy hospital is being partially used by enemy infantry elements for headquarters and billeting purposes. The hospital is continuing to receive and care for wounded. Is the hospital a permissible target? If so, why? Can your unit plan to hit it? (PROTECTED PLACES)

**LOW #72:** Enemy airborne troops are landing in the area. Can you fire on them? (PROTECTED PERSONS)

**LOW #73:** Twenty Orange soldiers are captured with advanced gas masks, flak jackets, and chemical suits. Can you confiscate these items for use by your own troops? (EPW TREATMENT)

**LOW #74:** Two Orange aircraft are disabled and the crews are descending by parachute. Can you fire on these enemy personnel? (PROTECTED PERSONS)

**LOW #75:** In occupying an enemy city, your units are receiving intense sniper fire in a particular quarter of the city. These snipers are perched in buildings and hinder your securing the area as an operations centers. Available to you are riflemen, field artillery, air strikes and mortars. What is your course of action? (PROPORTIONALITY)
LOW #76: Hostilities have begun and a large battle appears to be imminent within a specific area. Your unit has captured two villages in this area, which contain potentially hostile civilians. It is highly likely both villages will be completely destroyed when hostilities resume. Infantry Battalion action has been requested. What is your response to this situation? (PROTECTED PERSONS/PLACES)

LOW #77: After heavy fighting in rough, cold terrain, units entered the village of Dipville yesterday. Some members of the units were seen going through the warehouse of a clothing store looking for the enemy. They were seen exiting the building and carrying warm weather clothing. A civilian, who claims to be the store's owner, demands payment. The company commander calls the Battalion for advice. What do you advise? (CONFISCATION OF PROPERTY)

LOW #78: One of your night patrols stumbled upon a group of eight men in dark civilian clothes. They had no distinctive sign recognizable at a distance, and no emblems or badges that would distinguish them from civilians. They are planting explosives around a fuel depot that belongs to a Blue force unit. Your men surprise, surround, and capture these men, and upon a search of their persons, discover concealed weapons and knives. Do you have to treat these would-be saboteurs as POWs or can you try and sentence them as criminals? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #79: Upon entering a liberated town, a squad of Orange troops were found positioned around a government building with a white flag hoisted. They offered no resistance but refused to yield their ground until an escort could be arranged to return them to their own lines. They maintain that the safeguard was posted after consultation between the heads of both governments. Do you treat them as ordinary PWs (Prisoners of War)? What do you do? (EPW TREATMENT, SAFEGUARDS)

LOW #80: Two Blue soldiers have taken a hostage. What do you do? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #81: The headquarters of an enemy unit is located in a small village. Large amounts of equipment and munitions are also stored there. You begin an artillery barrage of the village and receive a message from the besieged commander to stop the bombardment long enough to allow the
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

women and children to be evacuated. What do you do? (PROTECTED PERSONS/PLACES)

LOW #82: Orange soldiers, weapons, vehicles, and equipment are captured. The Battalion Commander wants one of the vehicle for use behind enemy lines, so that one of his squads, dressed in enemy uniforms and insignia, can see what the enemy positions and troop strength are. The enemy flag is on the vehicle. Do you let the Battalion Commander proceed with the operation? (RUSE)

LOW #83: You have been notified that at 1800 hours, a friendly nuclear attack, using a tactical nuke of 1 kiloton, will take place on a significant military target near you. Your wind drift computations indicate that contamination will cover a small unoccupied but unevacuated village in the area. Do you warn the civilians since it may alert the enemy of the attack? (PROTECTED PERSONS)

LOW #84: A company has captured 78 enemy soldiers. May they be used to construct reserve fortifications in the rear of the company defensive position? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #85: Two individuals who fired upon U.S. troops are captured. One claims to be a civilian and not an Orange soldier. The other was dressed in a field uniform shirt of the enemy with civilian pants. He carried an AK-47 but refuses to give his name, rank, serial number and date of birth (DOB). Should they be given PW status? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #86: Two Orange soldiers escape from U.S. control. A unit commander below General Court-Martial Convening Authority level desires to discipline them. Is he authorized to do so? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #87: Local security forces report a body with two large bottles near a local water supply. Death is apparently caused by a chemical (poison) from the bottles. As a result, the water supply is believed to be poisoned. Should this be reported? (CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL WEAPONS)

LOW #88: In accordance with CINCUSAREAU (Commander in Chief, United States Army EAU) Field SOP, area jurisdiction has been terminated. As a division commander, do you have General Court-Martial jurisdiction? (MILITARY JUSTICE)
LOW #89: Orange has used chemical agents (non-persistent). Will your request to retaliate with riot control agents be granted? (CHEMICAL WEAPONS)

LOW #90: Your units have captured two enemy helicopters. Your S-3 recommends that they be used to reconnoiter locations and terrain for OPLAN purposes. He further recommends that you leave the enemy markings on the aircraft to deceive the enemy and to increase your safety factor. Is this a permissible ruse? (RUSE)

LOW #91: There has been a great deal of fighting and shelling close to a large village and a number of your men have been wounded. A number of civilian women, children, and elderly (wounded and dying) are coming to your treatment tent. Who do you direct to be treated first, the civilians or your soldiers? (NONCOMBATANTS)

LOW #92: Recent attacks in your sector have resulted in the capture of over 20 Orange prisoners. The G-2 proposes to keep the POWs from having any food or water for as long as necessary, in order to facilitate the gathering of intelligence from them. What do you decide? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #93: 200 Orange prisoners have been captured in your sector. All but five have been identified as enemy soldiers. Some of these appear to be civilians and some appear to be medical personnel. Proposal is to treat all of them as POWs. Is this permissible? Are there any alternatives? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #94: Hostilities have commenced. The transportation battalion wants to use gas grenades, in rear echelon areas outside the combat zone, to protect convoys from civil disturbances and terrorists because the Blue police have said that they can no longer control disturbances. The enemy has not yet used riot control agents. What is your response? (CHEMICAL WEAPONS)

LOW #95: An enemy aircraft flies over our airfield and drops leaflets urging our soldiers to surrender. Shortly thereafter, the enemy aircraft is shot down and the pilot captured. The commander wants to punish the pilot immediately for disseminating leaflets. What is your response? (EPW TREATMENT)
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

LOW #96: A forward unit desires to use artillery on a large optical plant located in the city of Dipville. This plant, according to G-2, has been converted to produce telescopes and sighting instruments. The factory is undefended. Can this plant be a valid target? (TARGETING)

LOW #97: Enemy artillery has heavily bombarded civilian residential areas in allied territory. U.S. field artillery battalions are within easy striking distance of enemy civilian villages. These villages often assist enemy troop columns as they pass through. Can these enemy villages be targeted by our artillery? (PROTECTED PLACES)

LOW #98: A field artillery battalion is tasked to destroy potential enemy rail supply routes near the city of Dunceburg. Key railheads are located near a local civilian hospital. A battery commander desires to saturate the entire area to ensure mission completion. Advise the battery commander. (PROTECTED PLACES)

LOW #99: One of your subordinates has requested a train to on-load at Dumbville and to off-load at Dipburg, in order to transport wounded Blue and Orange personnel and repairable military vehicles. What is your response? (CAPTURED PROPERTY)

LOW #100: Proposed plans for artillery bombardment of entire city of Denseville, although only the south sector (enemy troop billets) and the east sector (military munitions) are legal military targets. Do you agree with the plans? (TARGETING)

LOW #101: Orange forces are crossing the river at Dopeberg. A field artillery group proposes to blanket the area with projectiles containing proximity (VT) fuses. The local legal advisor has determined that the 1977 Protocols to the Geneva Convention prohibit this. Is this correct? (TARGETING)

LOW #102: Extensive enemy munitions and equipment are stored around a nuclear power plant in enemy territory. Several villages are near the plant. The plant also provides a significant energy source for equipment and munitions factories in the area. Should the area and the plant be bombarded? (TARGETING)
LOW #103: Two of our divisions are approaching the city of Dunceberg, population 300,000. G2 informs the CG that outside the city is a nuclear power plant which provides electricity not only for a portion of the populace, but also for several munitions factories within the city. The division commander requests an air strike on the plant to destroy its capacity to feed power to the munitions factories. What is your decision? Why? (TARGETING)

LOW #104: You have captured an enemy battalion commander. You are certain he has information critical to the success of your mission. You realize that during the interrogation of this PW he cannot be tortured or physically abused. One of your men removes the uniform from a dead enemy sergeant and dresses himself in it. During the interrogation of the battalion commander, your men pretend to abuse your man in the enemy uniform within sight and hearing of the enemy battalion commander. You are confident that this ruse will soften your enemy officer's resistance to interrogation without inflicting any illegal abuse. Can you use this ruse? Why? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #105: A particular enemy general officer is a key person in the enemy's war effort. Without him, the enemy would be at a distinct disadvantage. The decision is made to send infiltrators in to kill this general by whatever means necessary or by putting a price on his head. Is this operation legitimate? (TARGETING)

LOW #106: Your command has established a temporary PW detention center in the rear of your area of operation. During a previous weeklong battle, your forces captured 1,500 enemy soldiers, 40 of who are lower enlisted female personnel. Must you direct your Provost Marshal to ensure that all female POWs have separate quarters from male POWs? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #107: Two of your divisions are engaged in heavy combat. Casualties are heavier than expected. Additional medical personnel have been transferred from less active divisions to assist in aid and evacuation. Because of the geographic location of the two divisions now in battle, precious time during air evacuation will be saved if air ambulances fly across the territory of a neutral nation to the rear line mobile hospitals. Is this possible? (MEDICAL PERSONNEL, PROTECTIVE SYMBOLS)
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

**LOW #108**: An Orange force company is camped beside a nuclear power plant. A field artillery group requests permission to fire. If granted, the loss of civilian life will be great. What do you do? (TARGETING)

**LOW #109**: The local populace wants you to define "safe" areas and enter into an agreement to protect civilians and children. Can you do this? (NONCOMBATANTS)

**LOW #110**: Orange chemical weapon storage areas are identified in a camouflaged area next to a civilian refugee camp. Artillery fire has been requested to destroy the storage area. What is your response? (TARGETING)

**LOW #111**: Assume that in accordance with Annex 5 to the USAREUR and Seventh Army (WAR) Field SOP, area court-martial jurisdiction has been terminated. As a corps commander, do you have general court-martial jurisdiction? (MILITARY JUSTICE)

**LOW #112**: As corps commander near the city of Dipville, you have decided to defend this city. The civilians residing there must be evacuated. Although the 1977 Protocols to the Geneva Convention are not ratified, assume they apply to your situation. One provision, Art 51, para 7 reads: The presence or movements of the civilian population or individual civilians shall not be used to render certain points or areas immune from military operations, in particular in attempts to favor or impede military operations. May you still evacuate the civilians in light of this provision? (NONCOMBATANTS)

**LOW #113**: As corps commander, you have to decide whether civilians operating an ammunition plant may be subject to attack. Assume the 1977 Protocols to the Geneva Convention, not yet ratified, are applicable and one provision therein reads: Art 51, para 3. Civilians ... enjoy the protection afforded by this Section, unless ... they take direct part in hostilities. Are these civilians taking direct part and hence subject to attack by artillery? (NONCOMBATANTS, TARGETING)

**LOW #114**: Blue forces plan to locate an NBC detoxification unit in a tent marked with Red Cross emblems near troop billets. Is this a reasonable plan? (PROTECTIVE SYMBOLS)
LOW #115: While commanding a mobile medical unit, you provide a hiding place for an allied spy and some stolen enemy documents. The enemy troops overrun your medical unit and start searching for the spy and documents without your permission. Should this action by the enemy troops be reported as a violation of the Law of War? (PROTECTED PERSONS/PLACES)

LOW #116: An engineering unit, while preparing to cross a river with its floating bridge, encounters fire from an enemy patrol boat. In the firefight, the gunboat is sunk. Unarmed enemy crewmen are trying to swim to shore, and one appears to be drowning. Some American troops, without orders, open fire and hit several enemy swimmers. How do you respond? (HORS DE COMBAT)

LOW #117: American transportation assets are rapidly depleting. Infantry units have captured enemy medical vehicles marked with the Red Cross. Present logistical needs are to move heavy ammunition to the front as soon as possible. Many of the captured medical vehicles contain enemy wounded. What do you advise to the transportation battalion commander? (EPW TREATMENT, PROTECTIVE SYMBOLS)

LOW #118: Reports show Orange forces being captured as EPWs have no NBC protection gear. The EPW collection point is unable to issue NBC gear to both EPWs and our own forces. Moreover, because of a shortage of warm clothing for Blue forces, EPWs have been stripped of field jackets and shirts. However, the enemy insignia is replaced with Blue forces insignia. Any problems with these two shortages from a legal viewpoint? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #119: During an enemy artillery attack, your commanding officer refuses to allow POWs to use metal helmets and other protective gear. Do you report this? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #120: You, the trial observer, have been detailed to the robbery trial of PFC Duke being held in a local Urep criminal court. At the trial, you note that he was not given an opportunity to confront and cross-examine three of the five witnesses against him. Does this trial meet the fair trial standards of AR 27-50? (MILITARY JUSTICE)

LOW #121: The 12th MI Detachment has landed at El Suntan Airport. On landing, the C-130 overshot the runway and crash-landed. All U.S. military personnel survived, but a
local farmer, on the way to the market with eight pigs, was killed along with the pigs. The Commander calls his SJA and asks who is going to pay the claims for the wrongful death of the farmer and his pigs. The commander also wants to know who has jurisdiction to try the pilot for negligent homicide, an offense under both U.S. and Urep law. (MILITARY JUSTICE)

**LOW #122:** Recent ULA attacks have been on police stations, banks and post offices. Local police captured three ULA fighters. All three demand the protections of the Geneva Conventions, specifically Common Article 3. The Chief of Police calls you, the legal advisor to the 4th Division, and asks if he should extend the protections of Common Article 3 to the captives. (EPW TREATMENT, STATUS)

**LOW #123:** The ULA is intensifying its attacks, thus triggering imminent U.S. involvement in the conflict. You, the lst Division trial counsel, are directed to teach U.S. forces a class on their responsibilities under the law of war. What must you cover? (LOW INSTRUCTION)

**LOW #124:** As part of its operations, the Urep lst Brigade Commander intends to use captured enemy vehicles and equipment to infiltrate enemy lines. What is your advice, Legal Advisor, concerning the legality of the proposed course of action? (RUSE)

**LOW #125:** The Urep lst Brigade has been very successful in crushing the ULA. The rebels urgently request the assistance of the Abcu government. The Abcu government is reluctant to commit regular forces at this stage, but authorizes the formation of a People’s Volunteer Force. The force moves into Urep and attacks the regular Urep forces armed with tracer ammunition (all clips contain nothing but tracer ammunition). The Urep government files a protest. Is this a law of war violation? (LEGAL JUSTIFICATION FOR THE USE OF FORCE)

**LOW #126:** The ULA, augmented by the People’s Volunteer Force, has routed the regular Urepian Army. It now has control of 31% of the territory. The Abcu government recognizes the ULA as the de jure government of Urep and dispatches two brigades of Abcu regular troops to assist the ULA in the conflict. The commanding general of the Urepian forces asks you, his SJA, what effect this latest
development has on the law of war applicable to the conflict. (LEGAL JUSTIFICATION FOR THE USE OF FORCE)

**LOW #127:** The 3d Battalion of the Abcu Army captures a person in civilian clothes taking part in the hostilities. How should he be treated under the Law of War? (EPW TREATMENT/STATUS)

**LOW #128:** You are the person who was detained in the previous question. You are held in the Ciudad Domingo city jail. Is your detention legal? (EPW TREATMENT/STATUS)

**LOW #129:** U.S. forces are going to conduct an operation into enemy-held territory. The engineer company commander receives a request for explosives. His 1st Platoon leader plans to use them to shut down the Jagville tire factory. The plant cannot function without water, so the platoon leader wants to destroy the water works that supply it. Jagville has no troops in it. It has a population of 3,000, most of who work in the tire plant, the city's main industry. The water works is the only source of water for the civilian population. Do you issue the explosives? (TARGETING)

**LOW #130:** You are the commander of the Abcu EPW camp. In the latest group of prisoners are a doctor, two nurses, and a veterinarian. What is the status of each, and what do you do with them? (EPW TREATMENT/STATUS)

**LOW #131:** U.S. forces are preparing a surprise assault on Mount Benito. On Mount Benito, a strongly fortified area, is the historic shrine of the national religion, Krakpotism. Intelligence reveals that enemy activity is taking place in the vicinity of the shrine. The 4th Division commander asks you, his SJA, if a preparatory artillery bombardment of Mount Benito is legal. (TARGETING, PROTECTED PLACES)

**LOW #132:** A PW private refuses to board a truck for labor in the local orange groves. The U.S. EPW camp commander demands that you, the senior ranking officer (SRO) of the Abcu EPWs, order the private to go to work. What do you do? (EPW TREATMENT)

**LOW #133:** The enemy EPW private who refused to work escapes from the EPW camp. In effecting his escape, he kills an EPW camp guard. He reaches his own lines and rejoins his
APPENDIX E: VIGNETTES

unit, but U.S. forces subsequently recapture him. What options are open to you, the EPW camp commander? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #134: U.S. and Urepian forces have invaded Abcu. During the invasion, an Abcu civilian is picked up while participating in the hostilities. He is not in uniform and is armed with a .22 caliber game rifle. What is his argument for EPW status? (EPW TREATMENT/STATUS)

LOW #135: A U.S. Army private understands that there are symbols recognized under the Geneva Conventions that designate protected property or persons. He asks his first sergeant what they are and if there are any others. What do you say as the first sergeant? (PROTECTIVE SYMBOLS)

LOW #136: A Company, lst Battalion, is ordered to establish a PW collection point several kilometers behind the FEBA (Forward Edge of the Battle Area). Large numbers of captured personnel will be processed. These U.S. EPWs all have gas masks, helmets, blankets, shelter halves, watches, rings, and money. What instructions do you issue to your troops concerning the disposition of this property? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #137: The Urepian EPW camps are filled to capacity. The Urepian EPW camp commander in the 5th Division area asks his Division SJA if the excess EPWs can be transferred to the U.S. for custody, and, if so, under what conditions. (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #138: Many U.S. soldiers and local civilians have been injured by stepping on punji sticks. These sticks have been placed by the rebels in many heavily traveled trails and paths. The sticks were dung-dipped. The U.S. commander of the 3d Brigade, 5th Division, wants to use similar punji sticks in reprisal. He asks you, his brigade trial counsel, about the legality of this reprisal. (REPRISAL)

LOW #139: The 2d Abcu Brigade commander is informed that the soldiers of Company B, 1st Battalion, have summarily executed 27 American EPWs. Investigation shows that the company commander ordered the execution and that 3d platoon carried it out. At the time of the incident, the battalion commander was in his command helicopter, flying above the village where the incident occurred. The 2d Brigade
commander asks his trial counsel about the legal ramifications of the incident and what he should do. (EPW TREATMENT, WAR CRIMES)

LOW #140: D Company, 4th Battalion, 1st Urebian Division, is engaged in a firefight. The right flank platoon leader notices a white flag raised opposite his platoon. The enemy is continuing to fire. He radios you, the D company commander, for instructions. What is your response? (PROTECTIVE SYMBOLS)

LOW #141: An Urebian airborne company is forced to abandon its aircraft before reaching the DZ. The aircraft was hit by a SAM (Surface-to-Air Missile). The airborne troops and the crew are coming down in the vicinity of the 2d Division. The 2d Division commander asks his SJA to advise him as to which individuals are lawful targets. (HORS DE COMBAT)

LOW #142: E Company, 6th Battalion, has taken 17 prisoners. En route to the EPW collection point, they encounter an Abcu minefield. The company commander orders the prisoners to clear the minefield. Upon arrival at the PW collection point, this is reported to the 6th battalion (your) commander. What do you do? (EPW TREATMENT)

LOW #143: The commander of U.S. Forces Urep, who has operational control of EPWs, wants to know what might happen if Abcu EPWs do not wish to be repatriated. He asks you, his Chief of International Law, what to do. (EPW TREATMENT)
APPENDIX F: WEAPONS INFORMATION

Note: This information is for familiarization purposes, only. More precise and, where appropriate, classified weapons data should be consulted for planning and operations.

Crew Served Guns and Mortars

**M2 .50 Caliber Machine Gun**
Builder: Saco Defense
Length: 61.42 inches (156 centimeters)
Weight:
- Gun: 84 pounds (38 kilograms)
- M3 Tripod (Complete): 44 pounds (19.98 kilograms)
Total: 128 pounds (58 kilograms)
Bore diameter: .50 inches (12.7mm)
Maximum effective range: 2000 meters with tripod mount
Maximum range: 4.22 miles (6.8 kilometers)
Cyclic rate of fire: 550 rounds per minute
Unit Replacement Cost: $14,002

**MK19 40mm Machine Gun, MOD 3**
Manufacturer: Saco Defense Industries
Length: 43.1 inches (109.47 centimeters)
Weight:
- Gun: 72.5 pounds (32.92 kilograms)
- Cradle (MK64 Mod 5): 21.0 pounds (9.53 kilograms)
- Tripod: 44.0 pounds (19.98 kilograms)
Total: 137.5 pounds (62.43 kilograms)
Muzzle velocity: 790 feet (240.69 meters) per second
Bore diameter: 40mm
Maximum range: 2200 meters
Maximum effective range: 1600 meters
Rates of fire:
- Cyclic: 325-375 rounds per minute
- Rapid: 60 rounds per minute
- Sustained: 40 rounds per minute
Unit Replacement Cost: $13,758

**M252 81mm Medium Extended Range Mortar**
Length: 56 inches (142.24 centimeters)
Weight:
- Mortar Assembly: 35 pounds (15.89 kg)
- Bipod: 26 pounds (11.80 kilograms)
- Baseplate: 25.5 pounds (11.58 kilograms)

F-1
Sight Unit: 2.5 pounds (1.14 kilograms)
Total: 89 pounds (40.41 kilograms)
Bore diameter: 81mm
Maximum effective range: 5700 meters
Rates of fire:
Maximum: 33 rounds per minute
Sustained: 16 rounds per minute
Elevation: 45 to 85 degrees
Unit Replacement Cost: $24,717

**M224 60mm Lightweight Mortar**
Length: 40 inches (101.6 centimeters)
Weight: 46.5 pounds (21.11 kilograms)
Bore diameter: 60mm
Maximum effective range: 2.17 miles (3490 meters)
Rates of fire:
Maximum: 30 rounds/minute
Sustained: 20 rounds/minute
Unit Replacement Cost: $10,658

**Notes on Mortars**
- The fire support officer (FSO) should plan and control your mortar fires to ensure they are integrated into the overall fire plan. The maneuver S3 should reposition them on the basis of the recommendations of the FSO, the execution matrix, and the tempo of the battle.
- Mortars are very effective against lightly protected personnel and for obscuration, illumination, and close-in defensive fires.
- Mortar considerations include the following:
  - They are the most responsive FS assets of the battalion. Therefore, they are ideal for responding to immediate suppression and immediate smoke missions.
  - They provide highly responsive white phosphorus (WP) and illumination to the task force (TF) commander. Planning and using mortars for WP and illumination at critical times on the battlefield allow more cannon artillery to shoot killing munitions.
  - They are easily detected by counter-battery radar.
  - The range differences between the various munition types (high explosive [HE], WP, illumination) necessitate different positioning considerations. For example, the difference in range between HE and illumination for the 107-mm mortar is approximately 1,800 meters. This can be a significant factor, depending on the tactical situation.
• They can carry only limited amounts of ammunition. The FSO must consider the required supply rate (RSR) and unit basic load (UBL) for the mortars for each mission.

• Clearance of fires, to include company mortars, must be addressed in the commander's guidance and maneuver rehearsal process
## Artillery

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type Weapon</th>
<th>Range (Meters)</th>
<th>Max Range RAP (Meters)</th>
<th>Max FPF Width (Meters)</th>
<th>Weight (Pounds)</th>
<th>Rate of Fire</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Minimum</td>
<td>Maximum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105-mm (M119A1)</td>
<td>14,000</td>
<td>19,000</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>4,520</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105-mm (M102)</td>
<td>11,500</td>
<td>15,000</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>3,338</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105-mm (M101A1)</td>
<td>11,270</td>
<td>15,000</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>4,980</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>155-mm (M114A1/A2)</td>
<td>14,600</td>
<td>19,400</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>12,700</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>155-mm (M109A3/A4)</td>
<td>18,100</td>
<td>23,500</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>55,000</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>155-mm (M109A5/A6)</td>
<td>22,200</td>
<td>30,000</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>55,000 (A5)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>155-mm (M109A5/A6)</td>
<td>22,200</td>
<td>30,000</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>53,000 (A6)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLRS (M270) ATACMS</td>
<td>8,000+</td>
<td>100,000+</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>54,600</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLRS (M270) ATACMS</td>
<td>8,000+</td>
<td>100,000+</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>54,600</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLRS (M270) ATACMS</td>
<td>8,000+</td>
<td>100,000+</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>54,600</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ATACMS: Army Tactical Missile System
MLRS: Multiple Launch Rocket System
ERDPICM: Extended Range Dual-Purpose Improved Conventional Munitions
RAP: Rocket Assisted Projectile
M119A1 105mm Light Howitzer, Towed
Primary function: Light, towed, general purpose field artillery weapon used as a contingency weapon during Marine Air Ground Task Force deployments which are not conducive to mobility deficiencies of the 155mm.

Primary Function: Light, towed, general purpose field artillery weapon.
Manufacturer: Royal Ordnance, Nottingham, Great Britain; Rock Island Arsenal, USA (under license)
Length: 21.75 feet (6.63 meters)
Width: 5.92 feet (1.78 meters)
Height: gun forward 8.63 feet (2.63 meters)
Weight: 4,520 pounds (2055 kilograms)
Bore diameter: 105mm
Maximum effective range: 8.68 miles (14 kilometers)
Rates of fire:
Maximum: 10 rounds per minute
Sustained: 3 rounds per minute

M198 155mm Howitzer
Primary function: Provides field artillery fire support for all Marine Corps Air Ground Task Force organizations.
Manufacturer: Rock Island
Contractor: AMCCOM
Length:
In tow: 40 feet, 6 inches (12.30 meters)
Firing: 36 feet, 2 inches (11.01 meters)
Width in tow: 9 feet, 2 inches (2.79 meters)
Height in tow: 9 feet, 6 inches (2.89 meters)
Weight: 15,758 pounds (7.154 kilograms)
Bore diameter: 155mm
Maximum effective range:
conventional ammunition: 22,400 meters (13.92 miles)
rocket-assisted projectile: 30,000 meters (18.64 miles)
Rate of Fire:
Maximum: 4 rounds per minute
Sustained: 2 rounds per minute
Crew: 9 enlisted
Unit Replacement Cost: $527,337
Notes on Artillery Support

- The mission of the field artillery is to destroy, neutralize, or suppress the enemy by cannon, rocket, and missile fire and to assist in integrating all fire support into combined arms operations. Normally, one FA battalion is assigned a direct support (DS) mission to a committed maneuver brigade. However, additional FA units may be assigned as reinforcing (R) or general support reinforcing (GSR) by the force FA commander.

- Field artillery considerations include the following:
  - It provides first round fire-for-effect (FFE) capability.
  - It is an area fire weapon. However, point targets can be destroyed by using Copperhead (Cphd), a terminal guidance munition (TGM).
  - It has a limited ability to survive enemy ground, air, and artillery attacks. Weapons can be detected because of their large communications and firing signature. Artillery survivability is enhanced by dispersion, hardening of positions, and various positioning and displacement techniques.
  - It is best employed when massed on observed targets.
  - It must be integrated with the maneuver plan and not be considered as an afterthought.
  - Early in the decision-making process, the brigade staff must identify and coordinate position areas for firing units.

- Tactical Missions
  - The artillery normally is assigned one of four tactical missions to support your operation effectively. It can instantly shift support to a different maneuver organization in a particular battle scenario by using these missions. These tactical missions are listed from the most decentralized to most centralized. They do not complicate your operation order (OPORD). They are as follows:
    - Direct support—an FA unit provides close and continuous fire support to your units. An FA unit usually is placed in direct support of a specific maneuver brigade.
    - Reinforcing—an FA unit augments the fires of another FA unit and yet is almost as responsive to your units as DS artillery. An FA unit can reinforce only one other FA unit.
• General support reinforcing - a unit furnishes fires for the entire force within its range and reinforces the fires of another FA unit as a second priority.

• General support (GS) - a unit provides fires in support of the entire force within its range capability.

• In the offense, FS assets provide continuous fire support for all phases of the attack. Control is more decentralized to be more responsive to forward units. Therefore, in addition to your DS artillery, other artillery with R and GSR missions may be available. Your main attack will be weighted by extra fire support, and on-order missions will be assigned to facilitate future operations.

• During defensive operations, it is more desirable to keep fire support centralized and under the FA commander's control because of the uncertainty of the enemy's main thrust. This centralized control results in flexibility throughout your sector. Therefore, GS and GSR missions are used most often in the defense. Do not rely extensively on GS and GSR units because they may be given missions in support of other units at any time.

• REMEMBER: Once the battle begins, FA missions can change, depending on your situation. You may start with four battalions supporting an attack and then change to one or two battalions supporting an exploitation or a pursuit. Also, you may have only one or two battalions in the main battle area (MBA); but as the battle matures and the thrust of the main attack is known, you may receive two to four battalions.

• Equipment: The Digital World

• Initial Fire Support Automated System (IFSAS) is the newest FS automation software. Running on a lightweight computer unit (LCU), this proven software allows all artillery and FS cells to network with each other (brigade and battalion fire support elements [FSEs], battalion fire direction centers [FDCs], brigade and division artillery [divarty] counterfire cells, and division and corps FSEs). IFSAS permits your FSOs to actively plan, execute, and clear fires from their terminals, thus eliminating bottlenecks at the DS battalion. It also allows them to rapidly disseminate large amounts of information through message of interest (MOI) routing and artillery target intelligence (ATI) processing. IFSAS can communicate with the forward entry device (FED) and the fire
support team (FIST) digital message device (DMD) at the company level, with future upgrades to allow FSOs to communicate with the mortar ballistic computer (MBC).

- **Lightweight Tactical Fire Direction system (LTACFIRE)** provides light forces the same capabilities that IFSAS provides mechanized forces. The brigade FSEs and battalion FDCs will continue to use briefcase terminals (BCTs), and the battalion FSEs will use LCUs with the IFSAS to complete the FS chain. LTACFIRE has the same functionality as IFSAS. Future equipment upgrades will involve replacing BCTs with LCUs.

- **The Advanced Field Artillery Tactical Data System (AFATDS)** is the automated FS system being developed as the replacement to IFSAS and LTACFIRE. AFATDS is fire support's piece of the Army tactical command and control system (ATCCS) and will fully interoperate with the maneuver control system (MCS), all source analysis system (ASAS), forward area air defense command and control (FAADC²), and the combat service support control system (CSSCS). AFATDS provides joint FS capabilities to the maneuver commander through management of his allocated NGF and CAS in addition to the unit's FA and mortar assets. All these FS systems are influenced by your guidance. You must Decide, Detect, Deliver and Assess: tell the systems what to attack, who you want to attack the target, when to attack the target, where to attack, and why to attack. If all this information is clearly articulated by you and correctly input into the computers, then the systems will automatically do the following:
  - Analyze targets for method of attack and priority.
  - Select optimal fire unit(s).
  - Transmit fire orders.
  - Request additional fire units (if necessary).
  - Accept, store, process, and pass critical ATI information. Targeting information from artillery sources can help you gain a clearer picture of the battlefield. Therefore, a fluid exchange of information within your tactical operations center (TOC) is important. In many instances, the FSE will have a better picture of the battlefield than your operations and intelligence (O&I) section.
• Artillery Target Intelligence. Artillery target intelligence can come from many sources such as the following:
  • Scouts (air and ground), combat observation/lasing teams (COLTs), OH-58Ds, and company FSOs, and forward observers (FOs).
  • Electronic intelligence (ELINT) sources such as low-level voice intercept (LLVI) and remotely monitored battlefield sensor system (REMBASS).
  • Human intelligence (HUMINT) sources such as enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) and local nationals.
  • Weapons-locating radars (AN/TPQ-36 and AN/TPQ-37).
  • Unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs).
  • Division and corps FSEs.
  • Higher HQ sources (joint surveillance target attack radar system [J-STARS], area security information center).

• The bottom line is that you must clearly explain to your FSO your guidance for fire support. Your FSO then can advise you on the best way to effectively use the automated FS systems at your disposal.
**Naval Weapons**

**Mark 45 ~ 5-inch, 54-caliber lightweight gun**

General Characteristics
Primary Function: Fully-automatic, lightweight gun mount.
Range: 13 nautical miles (14.9 statute miles)
Type of Fire: 16-20 rounds per minute automatic
Magazine Capacity: 475-500 rounds per magazine.
Caliber: 5 inch (12.7 cm)
Date Deployed: 1971 (Mark 45)

**Mark 75 ~ 76mm/62 caliber 3" gun**

General Characteristics
Primary Function: Single barrel, lightweight, water-cooled, rapid fire, remote controlled, dual purpose automatic enclosed naval gun
Contractor: Designed by OTO Melara, Italy
Manufactured by FMC Naval Systems Division and OTO Melara
Range: 10 nautical miles (11.5 statute miles, 18.4 km)
Guidance System: Remotely controlled
Type of Fire: 80 rounds per minute automatic
Caliber: 76 mm (3 inch)
Date Deployed: 1978 (USS Oliver Hazard Perry)

**Aegis Combat System**

Description
Mark 38 ~ 25 mm machine gun system
General Characteristics
Primary Function: Single barrel, air cooled, semi- and full-automatic, manually trained and elevated machine gun system
Contractor: Designed and assembled by Crane Division, Naval Surface Warfare Center; components procured from various contractors
Range: 2700 yards (2,457 meters)
Guidance System: Unstabilized, manually trained and elevated
Type of Fire: Single shot; 175 rounds per minute automatic
Caliber: 25 mm (1 inch)
Date Deployed: 1986
**Notes on Naval Gunfire**

Naval gunfire provides large volumes of immediately available, responsible fire support to land combat forces operating near coastal waters. Naval gunfire considerations include the following:

- The only US NGF weapon system available now is the 5-inch/54 found primarily on destroyers.
- It is generally coordinated and executed through the support of liaison personnel organic to the air and naval gunfire liaison company (ANGLICO).
- It can deliver a high volume of fire in a short period of time.
- It has a flat trajectory that makes it effective against vertical-face targets but ineffective against rear-slope targets.
- It has a large range error. Always try to avoid firing over or near friendly units. Fire parallel to the forward line of own troops (FLOT).
- It may provide precision guided munitions.
- It is less accurate in rough seas.

It has limited communications between ship and shore. Ship radios are high frequency (HF) amplitude modulated (AM) and are not compatible with the standard Army frequency modulated (FM) radios.
This Page Intentionally Left Blank
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The Center for Law and Military Operations—while assuming full responsibility for any errors contained in this handbook—gratefully acknowledges the assistance of the following individuals in preparing the ROE Handbook:

CDR BRIAN J. BILL, USN
CPT MARK A. BLEVINS
MAJ PAUL BOUGHMAN, USMC
MS. PHYLLIS BOWMAN
MAJ JIM CARBERRY, USMC
SSG ROD CELESTAIN
MAJ GEOFFREY S. CORN
CAPT ELIZABETH CRAIL, USMC
MAJ TOM DAMISCH, USMC
CAPT CARLOS DE LA ROCHA, USMC
MR. BYRD EASTHAM
MAJ TODD ENGE, USMC
LTC RENN GADE
CPT JESSICA GARCIA
COL DAVE GRAHAM
CPT STEVE L. HARMS
LTC KATHLEEN HENDERSON, USMCR
CPT ERIC JENSEN
MAJ MICHAEL C. JORDAN, USMC
MAJ KENT KEITH, USMC
CPT NICHOLAS KING
MAJ RANDY KIRKVOLD
SGT JEROME KLEIN
MAJ PATRICK KOEPP
CPT JOE KREBS
MAJ MICHAEL O. LACEY

MAJ DAN LECCE, USMC
CPT RODENRY R. LEMAY
MAJ RICK MARTIN
LTC MARK MARTINS
LTC JOHN W. MILLER, II
LTC MICHELLE M. MILLER
LTC RON MILLER
MR. BEN MORGAN
MAJ STEVE NEWMAN, USMC
MAJ TIM OTT, USMC
MR. W. HAYS PARKS
CPT KEITH PULS
MAJ BILL RIGGS, USMC
BG TOM ROMIG
1LT LESLIE C. ROGALL
MAJ JERRY RUPERT, USMC
MR. JOE RUTIGLIANO
CPT MATTHEW P. RUZICKA
MAJ MICHAEL L. SMIDT
MAJ WENDY STAFFORD, USMC
LTC BRAD STAI
LTC TABOR TRITSCHLER
CAPT CODY WESTON, USMC
MAJ PAUL S. WILSON
CPT ERIC YOUNG
Center for Law and Military Operations